

**CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
AND
SPECIFICATIONS
FOR
PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01
STORMWATER MAINTENANCE
AND OPERATIONS BUILDING**

ATTENDANCE AT PRE-BID CONFERENCE IS MANDATORY

PREPARED BY:
BKL
1623 E. 6th St.
Tulsa, OK 74120
918-835-9588
Jenni Hammock



WATER AND SEWER
Engineering Design

ERIC LEE, DIRECTOR

Account Numbers: 2431F00013.buildings.Bldgs.5619N.56193303-541101
2534B00001.Buildings.Bldgs.5621.56213303-541104

Public Works Department
175 East 2nd Street, Suite 261
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74103
(918) 596-9637

CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01
STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION BUILDING

PUBLIC WORKS DEPARTMENT

<u>INDEX TO BIDDING DOCUMENTS</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
NOTICE TO BIDDERS	NTB-1-2
INSTRUCTION TO BIDDERS	IB-1-6
RESOLUTION 18145 PROVIDING FOR THE EMPLOYMENT OF RESIDENTS OF THE METROPOLITAN STATISTICAL AREA	R-1-3
SBE UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS	UI-1-11
AFFIDAVIT FOR SBE UTILIZATION GOALS	SBE-1-5
RESOLUTION NO. 7404 AFFIDAVIT OF COMPLIANCE	RAC-1
AFFIDAVIT FOR 50% RESIDENT RESOLUTION	RRA-1
NONCOLLUSION AFFIDAVIT	NA-1
BUSINESS RELATIONSHIP AFFIDAVIT	BR-1
INTEREST AFFIDAVIT	IA-1
PROPOSAL	P-1-8
CERTIFICATE OF SECRETARY	CS-1
CONSENT OF MEMBERS	CM-1
SALES TAX EXEMPTION DOCUMENT	STED-1
EXTENSION OF TIME REQUEST	ETR-1
CONTRACT	C-1-4
PERFORMANCE BOND	PB-1-2
STATUTORY BOND	SB-1-2
MAINTENANCE BOND	MB-1-2
AFFIDAVIT FOR CONTRACT/CLAIM	AC-1
GENERAL CONDITIONS	GC-1-15

SPECIFICATIONS

CITY OF TULSA ENGINEERING SERVICES CONSTRUCTION
SPECIFICATIONS – March 2022

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

SUPPLEMENTAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS	SCR-1
INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS	IR-1
SPECIAL PROVISIONS GENERAL	G-1-4
TIME FOR COMPLETION	TC-1-3
ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES	EI-1
HOT MIX ASPHALT	HMA-1
GEOTECHNICAL REPORTS	GR-1
OWNER ALLOWANCE	OA-1
PROJECT SECURITY	PS-1
REMOVAL OF CASTINGS	RC-1
SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION	SC-1
URBAN RIGHT OF WAY RESTORATION	URWR-1-4
UTILITY RELOCATIONS AND DESIGN ISSUES	URDI-1
COT PROJECT SIGN	PS-1

Published in the Tulsa World:
June 27, 30, July 1, 2, and 3, 2025.

**NOTICE TO BIDDERS
SEALED BIDS FOR
PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01**

Notice is hereby given that pursuant to an order by the Mayor of the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, sealed bids will be received in Room 260 of the Office of the City Clerk, City of Tulsa, 175 E. 2nd Street, Tulsa, Oklahoma 74103 until **8:30 a.m. the 1st day of August, 2025** for furnishing all tools, materials and labor and performing the work necessary to be done in the construction of the following:

**PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01 STORMWATER MAINTENANCE
AND OPERATIONS BUILDING**

The entire cost of the improvement shall be paid from
Account No.

2431F00013.buildings.Bldgs.5619N.56193303-541101

2534B00001.Buildings.Bldgs.5621.56213303-541104

A **MANDATORY** Pre-Bid Conference is scheduled for **Tuesday, July 8, 2025 at 9:30 a.m.** and will be held through video conferencing with Microsoft Teams, invitation presented on the City of Tulsa's website at this link:

<https://www.cityoftulsa.org/government/departments/engineering-services/construction-bids/>

Attendance at the Pre-Bid Conference is MANDATORY. Bids will not be received from contractors who did not attend the Pre-Bid Conference.

Bids will be accepted by the City Clerk from the holders of valid pre-qualifications certificates from the City of Tulsa in one or more of the following classifications: **A or B.**

Drawings, specifications and contract documents for construction of said public improvements of the said project have been adopted by the Mayor of said City. Copies of same may be obtained at the Office of Contract Administration, 175 E. 2nd St., 13th Floor, Tulsa, OK 74103 for a non-refundable fee in the amount of **\$50.00** made payable to the City of Tulsa by check or money order.

Contract requirements shall include compliance as required by law pertaining to the practice of non-discrimination in employment.

The overall aspirational Small Business Enterprise utilization goal for this project is **ten (10)** percent.

Attention is called to Resolution No. 18145 of August 23, 1988, requiring bidders to commit to the goal of employing on the project at least fifty percent bona fide residents of the City of Tulsa and/or MSA in each employment classification.

Attention is called to Resolution 7404 of November 8, 2006, requiring bidders, their subcontractors and their lower-tier subcontractors to hire only citizens of the United States.

The City of Tulsa itself is exempt from the payment of any sales or use taxes, and pursuant to Title 68 O.S. Section 1356(10), direct vendors to the City are also exempt from those taxes. A bidder may exclude from his bid appropriate sales taxes, which he will not have to pay while acting for and on behalf of the City of Tulsa.

A Certified or Cashier's Check or Bidders Surety Bond, in the sum of 5% of the amount of the bid will be required from each bidder to be retained as liquidated damages in the event the successful bidder fails, neglects or refuses to enter into said contract for the construction of said public improvements for said project and furnish the necessary bonds within thirty days from and after the date the award is made.

The bidder to whom a contract is awarded will be required to furnish public liability and workmen's compensation insurance; Performance, Statutory, and Maintenance bonds acceptable to the City of Tulsa, in conformity with the requirements of the proposed contract documents. The Performance, Statutory, and Maintenance bonds shall be for one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

All bids will be opened and considered by the Bid Committee of said City at a meeting of said Committee to be held in the City Council Room of City Hall in said City at 9:00 a.m. on the 1st day of August, 2025.

Dated at Tulsa, Oklahoma, this 27th day of June, 2025.

(SEAL)

Christina Chappell
City Clerk

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

B-1. BIDS

Each bid Proposal shall be completed, signed, and submitted. No alterations, additions, or erasures shall be made on the Proposal. Erroneous entries shall be lined out, initialed by the bidder, and the correct entry inserted. The unit price bid must cover all expense for furnishing the labor, materials, tools, equipment, and apparatus of every description to construct, erect, and furnish all work required by and in conformance with the Drawings and Specifications.

Each bid shall be enclosed in a sealed envelope addressed to the City of Tulsa, 175 E. 2nd Street, Room 260, City Hall, Tulsa, Oklahoma, identified on the outside with the words:

PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01 STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING

Pre-qualification Certificate Number _____.

And shall be filed with the City Clerk in Room 260, City Hall.

All addenda to the contract documents should be denoted on the last page of the Proposal in the space provided.

B-2. BID SECURITY

Each bid shall be accompanied by a cashier's check, a certified check, or bidder's bond, in the amount of five percent (5%) of the total amount bid.

The bid security shall be made payable, without condition, to the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma. The bid security may be retained by and shall be forfeited to the City as liquidated damages if the bid is accepted, a contract based thereon is awarded, and the bidder fails to enter into a contract in the form prescribed, with legally responsible sureties, within thirty (30) days after such award is made by the City.

B-3 RETURN OF BID SECURITY

The bid security of each unsuccessful bidder will be returned when his bid is rejected. The bid security of the bidder to whom the contract is awarded will be returned when he executes a contract and files satisfactory bonds. The bid security of the second lowest responsible bidder may be retained for a period of time not to exceed sixty (60) days pending the execution of the contract and bonds by the successful bidder.

B-4 WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS

No bidder may withdraw his bid for sixty (60) days after the date and hour set for the opening. A bidder may withdraw his bid any time prior to expiration of the

period during which bids may be submitted by making a written request signed in the same manner and by the same person who signed the Proposal.

B-5 REJECTION OF BIDS

Bids received more than ninety-six (96) hours before the time set for opening bids, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays, as well as bids received after the time set for opening bids, will not be considered and will be returned unopened.

The City of Tulsa reserves the right to reject any and all bids when such rejection is in the best interest of the City of Tulsa. All bids are received subject to this stipulation and the City reserves the right to decide which bidder shall be deemed lowest responsible bidder.

A violation of any of the following provisions by a bidder shall be sufficient reason for rejecting bidder's bid, or shall make any contract between the City of Tulsa and the Contractor that is based on bidder's bid, null and void: divulging the information in said bid before the bids have been opened; submission of a bid which is incomplete, unbalanced, obscure, incorrect, or which has conditional clauses, additions, or irregularities of any kind not in the original proposal form, or which is not in compliance with the Instruction to Bidders and published Notice to Bidders, or which is made in collusion with another bidder. The City shall have the right to waive any immaterial defects or irregularities in any bid received.

B-6 DISQUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS

No contract will be awarded to any person or persons, firm, partnership, company, or corporation which is in arrears to the City upon any debt of contract, or in default as surety or otherwise upon any obligation to the City.

B-7 SIGNATURE OF BIDDERS

Each bid shall be properly signed with the full name of the company or individual submitting the bid, the bidder's address, and the name and title of all persons signing printed below their signature lines. Bids by partnerships shall be signed with the partnership name followed by the signature and title of one of the partners. Bids by corporations shall be signed with the name of the corporation followed by the signature and title of the president, vice president, chairman, or vice chairman of the Board of Directors with attestation by the corporate secretary or assistant corporate secretary. Bids by joint ventures shall be signed by each participant in the joint venture. Bids by limited liability companies shall be signed with the name of the limited liability company followed by the signature and title of the Manager or Managing Member. Bid by limited partnerships shall be signed with the name of the limited partnership followed by the signature of the general partner. Note: The signature requirements listed above are for Oklahoma entities; entities organized in other states must follow the law of the state in which they are organized.

A bid by a person who affixes to his signature the word "President", "Manager", "General Partner", "Agent", or other title, without disclosing the name of the company for which he is signing, may be held to be the bid of the individual signing.

B-8 INTERPRETATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

If any bidder who contemplates submitting a bid is in doubt as to the true meaning of any part of the drawing, specifications, or other proposed contract documents, bidder may submit to Contract Administration and the Engineer a written request for interpretation thereof. The person submitting the request shall be responsible for its prompt delivery. Interpretation of the proposed contract documents will be made only by addendum. The addendum will be posted on the City of Tulsa website and emailed to all the pre-bid attendees. The City will not be responsible for any other explanations or interpretations of the proposed contract documents.

B-9 LOCAL CONDITIONS AFFECTING WORK

Each bidder shall visit the site of the work and shall completely inform himself relative to construction hazards and procedure, labor, and all other conditions and factors, local and otherwise, which would affect prosecution and completion of the work and its cost. Such considerations shall include the arrangement and condition of existing structures and facilities, the procedure necessary for maintenance of uninterrupted operation of existing structures and facilities, the availability and cost for labor, and facilities for transportation, handling, and storage of materials and equipment. All such factors shall be properly investigated and considered in the preparation of the bid. There will be no subsequent financial adjustment for lack of such prior information.

B-10 TIME OF COMPLETION

The time of completion is an essential part of the contract and it will be necessary for each bidder to satisfy the City of his ability to complete the work within the allowable time set forth in the Bid Form. For all projects that will impact the public, a public meeting is required before any work is done. In this connection, attention is directed to the provisions of the General Conditions and Special Conditions relative to delays, extension of time, and liquidated damages.

B-11 QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS

No bid will be received and filed by the City Clerk of the City of Tulsa unless the person submitting the bid has been pre-qualified as provided by ordinance, and is the holder of a current certificate of Pre-qualification in force and effect on the date such bid is to be submitted and filed.

B-12 TAXES AND PERMITS

Attention is directed to the requirements of the General Conditions regarding payment of taxes and obtaining permits. Contractor shall comply with all zoning ordinances of the City, as provided in the Tulsa Zoning Code, Title 42 Tulsa Revised Ordinances and conform with all zoning requirements established by the Tulsa Metropolitan Area Planning Commission and the Board of Adjustment.

Contractor can call the Indian Nations Council of Governments (INCOG) at (918) 584-7526, to determine if any zoning requirements must be met.

B-13 OKLAHOMA LEGAL REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor must comply with the Oklahoma Scaffolding Law, 40 Oklahoma Statutes, Sections 174 - 177, which cover erection and use of scaffolds, hoists, cranes, stays, ladders, supports, or other mechanical contrivances.

In accordance with Oklahoma Statutes, Title 68, Section 1701-1707, before commencing any work pursuant to this contract, any nonresident contractor shall give written notice by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the Oklahoma Tax Commission, the Oklahoma Employment Security Commission, the Workers Compensation Court, and the county assessor of each county in which work will be performed. The notices shall comply with the requirements set forth in said statute.

B-14 BONDS

The bidder to whom a contract is awarded will be required to furnish bonds as follows:

- a. Performance Bond – A Performance Bond to the City in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract price.
- b. Statutory Bond – A Statutory Bond to the State of Oklahoma in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.
- c. Maintenance Bond – A Maintenance Bond to the City in an amount equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

The bonds shall be executed on the forms included in the contract documents by a surety company authorized to do business in the State of Oklahoma and acceptable as Surety to the City of Tulsa.

Accompanying the bonds shall be a "Power-of-Attorney" authorizing the attorney-in-fact to bind the Surety Company and certified to include the dates of the bonds.

B-15 BOUND COPY OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Bound contract documents are no longer required.

B-16 EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY REQUIREMENTS

Each bidder agrees to comply with the terms of Title 5, Chapter 1, Section 111, of the Tulsa Revised Ordinances relating to Non-Discrimination.

B-17 BASIS FOR AWARD OF CONTRACT

The basis for award of a contract shall be the total base bid submitted by the lowest responsible bidder unless otherwise directed in the form of proposal. The City of Tulsa reserves the right to withhold the awarding of a contract for a reasonable period of time from the date of opening of bids. The awarding of a contract upon a successful bid shall give the bidder no right or action or claim against the City of Tulsa upon such contract until the same shall have been reduced to writing and duly signed by the contracting parties. The award of a contract will not be completed until the contract is duly executed and the necessary bonds and insurance approved.

B-18 TIME FOR AWARDING OF CONTRACT

The awarding of a contract to the lowest responsible bidder will be made within thirty (30) days after the opening of bids unless the City of Tulsa by formal recorded action and for good cause shown, provides for a reasonable extension to that period, which extension period shall not in any event exceed fifteen (15) days where only state or local funds are involved, or not to exceed ninety (90) days on any award of contract for the construction of public improvements where funds are utilized which are furnished by an agency of the federal government.

B-19 SAFETY AND HEALTH REGULATIONS

Bidders should note that they are subject to "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction", Chapter XVII of Title 29, CFR, Part 1926 and that compliance, review and enforcement are the responsibility of the U.S. Department of Labor.

The Contractor is fully responsible for the safety of the work site and is expected to train their employees in all applicable safety issues. This should include but not be limited to: trench safety, confined space entry, head protection, etc. In accordance with construction contracts with the City, Authority, Board, or Commission, all applicable Labor and OSHA safety regulations must be followed.

Work sites must be monitored by the Contractor and safety provisions enforced. Contractors are asked to ensure that all employees are properly informed and trained in construction, work site safety.

B-20 VENDORS AND SUBCONTRACTOR IDENTIFICATION

Where Vendor and Subcontractor Identification Questionnaires are included in the bid documents, each bidder shall submit the Questionnaire directly to the Engineer no later than 5:00 p.m. on the first working day following the bid opening. Failure to submit the questionnaire may render the bid unresponsive and not eligible for award. The award of the Contract will be subject to the acceptability of the vendors and subcontractors listed. If an award is made, the vendors and subcontractors listed on the questionnaire shall be used on the project. No changes in the vendor and subcontractor list will be permitted unless prior consent is obtained from the Engineer.

B-21 U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY NPDES REQUIREMENTS FOR STORMWATER DISCHARGES

The bidder's attention is directed to U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) NPDES requirements for stormwater discharges. The Contractor shall be responsible for filing a Notice of Intent and development and implementation of a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (PPP).

B-22 AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT

The Contractor shall take the necessary actions to ensure its facilities are in compliance with the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). It is understood that the program of the Contractor is not a program or activity of the City of Tulsa. The Contractor agrees that its program or activity will comply with the requirements of the ADA. Any costs of such compliance will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Under no circumstances will the Contractor conduct any activity, which it deems non-compliant with the ADA.

RESOLUTION NO. 18145

A RESOLUTION REQUIRING THE INCLUSION IN PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC IMPROVEMENT CONTRACTS OF PROVISIONS PROVIDING FOR THE EMPLOYMENT OF BONA FIDE RESIDENTS OF THE CITY OF TULSA; AND/OR THE MSA; ALSO PROVIDING THAT AT LEAST OF FIFTY PERCENT (50%) OF EACH CLASS OF EMPLOYEES USED ON A PROJECT BE BONA FIDE RESIDENTS OF THE CITY OF TULSA AND/OR THE MSA; THAT THE DIRECTOR OF THE DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN RIGHTS IS CHARGED WITH ENSURING THAT ALL BIDS FOR PUBLIC CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS COMPLY WITH THIS RESOLUTION; AND DECLARING AN EMERGENCY.

WHEREAS, City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, desires to achieve a goal of full employment.

WHEREAS, it is necessary for the protection of the health, safety and welfare of all residents of the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, to accomplish this goal.

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF COMMISSIONERS OF THE CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA:

SECTION 1. The City of Tulsa is committed to the policy of achieving full employment of its citizens by encouraging the employment of bona fide Tulsa and MSA residents in public improvement contracts.

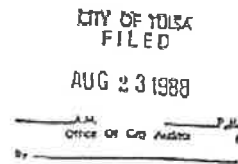
SECTION 2. Definitions. The definitions of certain terms used in this resolution are as follows:

a. "Bidding Documents" or "Bid" means the bid notice, plans and specifications, bidding form, bidding instructions, special provisions and all other written instruments prepared by or on behalf of an awarding public agency for use by prospective bidders on a public construction contract.

b. (i) "Bona Fide Residents" shall include only those persons who are either registered to vote in the City of Tulsa or who have resided within the city limits for at least six months, or who have purchased a permanent residence within the city limits or who have leased a residence for at least a six month term. Residency may be further determined by a valid Oklahoma driver's license, a current Oklahoma license tag, and a valid Oklahoma automobile inspection sticker. (ii) Bona fide residents of MSA shall include only those persons who are registered to vote in outlying MSA areas or who have resided within the outlying MSA area for at least six months, or who have purchased a permanent residence within the outlying MSA areas or who have leased a residence for at least a six month term. Residency may be further determined by a valid Oklahoma driver's license, a current Oklahoma license tag, and a valid Oklahoma automobile inspection sticker.

c. "Public Construction Contract" or "Contract" means any contract exceeding Seven Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$7,500.00) in amount, awarded by the City of Tulsa for the purpose of making any public improvements or constructing any public building or making repairs to the same.

d. "Public Improvement" means any beneficial or valuable change or addition, betterment, enhancement or amelioration of or upon any real property, or interest therein, belonging to the City of Tulsa, intended to enhance its value, beauty or utility or to adapt it to new or further purposes. The term does not include the direct purchase of materials, equipment or supplies by the City of Tulsa.



- e. "MSA". All of the land areas composed of Creek County, Osage County, Rogers County, Tulsa County and Wagoner County.

SECTION 3. Residency Requirements of Contractor's Employees. Every employee and/or agent of the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, charged or involved with the preparation of plans and specifications for any public improvement funded in whole or in part with funds of the City of Tulsa, is hereby charged to include in said plans and specifications the following provisions which shall be binding upon the successful bidders:

- a. Each bid shall be accompanied by a sworn statement that the bidder is committed to the goal of employing at least 50% bona fide residents of the City of Tulsa and/or the MSA in each classification as determined by the Oklahoma Commissioner of Labor.
- b. The successful bidder will be responsible for having like requirements placed upon any subcontractor.
- c. The successful bidder will submit to the Director or his designated representative of the Department of Human Rights any compliance reports involving the bidder and its subcontractors required by Title 31, Chapter 1, Section 9, of the Tulsa Revised Ordinances. The reports shall include information about the residence of each employee in each laboring and trade class applicable to any City project.

SECTION 4. Unresponsive Bids. The failure to submit the documents required by Section 3 shall render a bid unresponsive. Said documents must be submitted prior to the opening of the bids. The Director of the Department of Human Rights Section of City Development is charged with ensuring that all bids comply with Section 3 prior to the bid opening date.

SECTION 5. Duty of Employees and/or Agents of the City of Tulsa. Any employee and/or agent of the City of Tulsa who fails to include the goals for residency requirements found in Section 3 in the plans and specifications for any public improvement may be subject to disciplinary action, including dismissal.

SECTION 6. Severability. The invalidity of any section, subsection, provision or clause or portion of this chapter, or the invalidity of the application thereof to any person or circumstance shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this chapter or the validity of its application to other persons or circumstances.

SECTION 7. Effect Date. This resolution shall take effect as of July 1, 1988.

SECTION 8. Emergency Clause. That an emergency exists for the preservation of the public peace, health and safety, by reason whereof this resolution shall take effect immediately upon its passage, approval and publication.

PASSED, with the emergency clause ruled upon separately and approved this 23rd day of August, 1988.

APPROVED, this 23rd day of August, 1988.

Rodger Randle



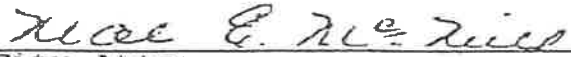
Mayor

ATTEST: Philip W. Wood



City Auditor

APPROVED: Neal E. McNeil



City Attorney

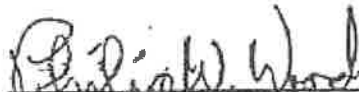
PASSED, with the emergency clause ruled upon
separately and approved this 23 day of August, 1988.

- APPROVED, this 23 day of August, 1988.



Mayor

ATTEST:



City Auditor

APPROVED:



City Attorney

CITY OF YOLLA
FILED

AUG 23 1988

A.M. P.M.
Office of City Auditor
By _____

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

02.21.22

POLICY STATEMENT

The City of Tulsa (hereinafter City) is committed to implementing the City of Tulsa Small Business Enterprise (SBE) Program of the City of Tulsa, hereinafter referred to as SBE Program. The stated objectives of the programs are:

- To ensure the employment of SBE(s) in the award and administration of City agreements and contracts;
- To create a level playing field on which SBE firms can compete fairly for City contracts;
- To ensure that only firms that fully meet the eligibility standards are permitted to participate as SBE participants;
- To help remove barriers to participation in City contracts;
- To assist in the development of SBE firms so that they may graduate from the SBE Program and ultimately compete successfully in the marketplace.

GOALS BY BUSINESS CATEGORY – SBE

There are seven (7) Business Categories for the City of Tulsa: Construction Contractors (Prime and Subcontractor), Architecture / Engineering (Consultant and Subconsultant), Professional Services, Other Services, and Goods and Supplies. A general description of each category follows:

Construction

- General building contractors engaged primarily in the construction of commercial buildings.
- Heavy construction such as airport runways, bridges, plants, grading and drainage, roadways, and other municipal infrastructure.
- Light maintenance construction services such as carpentry work; electrical work; installation of carpeting; air-conditioning repair, maintenance, and installation; plumbing; and renovation.
- Other related services such as water and sewer lines and maintenance, asbestos abatement, drainage, dredging, grading, hauling, landscaping (for large construction projects such as boulevards and highways), paving, roofing, and toxic waste clean-up.

Architecture and Engineering

- Licensed Architect
- Landscape Architect
- Professional Engineer
- Professional Land Surveyor
- Construction observation
- Other professional design / construction related services

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

Professional Services

- Financial Services
- Legal services
- Medical services
- Educational services
- Real Estate services
- Planning services.
- Other professional services

Other Services

- Janitorial and maintenance services
- Uniformed guard services
- Computer services
- Certain job shop services
- Graphics, photographic services
- Landscaping
- Other non-technical professional services

Good and Supplies

- Office goods
- Medical supplies
- Miscellaneous building materials
- Computers

The goals are to reflect resource availability and capability. The City of Tulsa's goal is to mitigate and close the disparity between the availability/capability versus actual utilization of SBE firms in Creek, Okmulgee, Osage, Pawnee, Rogers, Tulsa, and Wagoner counties in Oklahoma.

The City enters various agreements and contracts with the private sector for services, goods and supplies, and construction activities. The agreements or contracts may have a specific or primary deliverable associated with one of the Business Categories. However, supplementary efforts may exist to fulfill the agreement or contract. Therefore, the table below is provided to show goals for all Business Categories. Good faith efforts shall first be focused on the Business Category or Categories that relate directly to the deliverables. Additional good faith efforts shall be in supplementary efforts from other categories to assist in meeting the overall project goal.

The project goals will be monitored and periodically adjusted to address the disparity between the available / capable / willing SBE firms versus actual utilization of SBE firms. The **overall project goal is 10%.**

SBE firms identified for utilization in an agreement or contract must be paid from the proceeds from that agreement or contract.

**CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA
SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS
BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM**

<i>Business Category</i>	<i>SBE Goal (%)</i>
Construction (Prime Contractors)	10
Construction (Subcontractors)	10
Architecture / Engineering (Consultant)	10
Architecture / Engineering (Subconsultant)	10
Professional Services	10
Other Services	10
Goods and Supplies	10

BIDDER'S ACTIONS

For a:

- A. **GENERAL / PRIME CONTRACTOR Contract:** When the City has established SBE contract goals (hereinafter referred to as "goals"), the City will award a contract only to a bidder who makes good faith efforts to meet the goals.
- B. **CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT AT-RISK (CMAR) Contract:** When the City has established SBE contract goals (hereinafter referred to as "goals"), the City will recommend award to the Construction Management (CM) firm the bidder who makes good faith efforts to meet the goals. **However, Bidder(s) who are SBE(s) are not required to solicit other SBE firms but are encouraged.**

The following summary outlines the procedures

Summary:

- 1. **RECORD OF SOLICITATION FOR SBE form:**
These forms **MUST** be submitted with the bid documents. These documents establish the initial good faith, outreach efforts. In the event the bidder submitted the lowest bid, the SBE firms identified on these forms submitted with the bid are the only SBE firms that will be considered for establishing the bidder's projected utilization percentages for consideration of the award of bid.
- 2. **LETTER OF INTENT TO CONTRACT WITH SBE form:**
The bidder that submits the apparent lowest bid will be notified by City staff no later than the Monday following bid opening. The apparent low bidder **MUST** submit these forms and the associated attachments by close of business on Thursday following bid opening. Only SBE firms documented on the RECORD(s) OF SOLICITATION FOR SBE forms submitted with the bid will be considered for establishing the bidder's projected utilization percentages for consideration of the award of bid. If Letters of Intent are not submitted, the projected utilization will be 0% and the apparent lowest bidder is subject to being deemed non-responsive.

**CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA
SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS
BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM**

3. ADMINISTRATIVE RECONSIDERATION:

If the City determines that a bidder failed to meet the requirements above, City staff will contact the bidder by phone to define the issue and clarify any miscommunications and/or inadvertent actions. If issue was not due to miscommunication and/or inadvertent actions, the bidder will be notified per the Administrative Reconsideration process defined below. If the apparent low bidder is deemed non-responsive, City staff will notify the next lowest bidder to submit their LETTERS OF INTENT TO CONTRACT WITH SBE by close of business of the 6th day following notification or may exercise its right to reject any and all bids.

4. CITY OF TULSA SBE UTILIZATION form:

This form is completed by the contractor (successful bidder) and submitted as part of the contract to perform the project. This form documents the “projected” utilization for the project. At the end of the project, this form is submitted with the final pay request documenting the “actual” utilization. The “actual” utilization must meet or exceed the “projected” utilization. Any change in the “projected” utilization must be documented, submitted to the City on the CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form, and approved by the City. Approval of the change must occur at the time of the change. If the change is a reduction and not submitted and approved per the instructions, the amount will be deducted from the contractor’s final pay request.

5. CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form:

This form documents any change to the “projected” utilization for the project. Change in utilization includes reduction, substitution, and/or increase. Utilization shall be checked with the submission of partial pay requests, but not longer than 30 day intervals throughout the project. The contractor’s acknowledgement that they have verified changes in his/her utilization is required as part of partial pay request documents. Reductions in utilization not approved prior to the final pay request will result in pay reduction to the contractor. If, at the completion of the project, the contractor has failed to meet the SBE contract goals, does not have an approved change request, and has not demonstrated good faith efforts to meet the contract goal, the contractor will be assessed liquidated damages for the difference between the contract goal and the actual SBE participation achieved.

Record of Solicitation

All bidders shall, **with the submissions of their bids**, show their RECORD(s) OF SOLICITATION FOR SBE that demonstrates the good faith outreach effort to meet or exceed the SBE goals established for the project.

If bidders cannot meet the established SBE goals, the bidders shall document and submit with their bid proposal, justification stating why they could not meet the established SBE goals. To demonstrate good faith efforts to meet the SBE goals, the bidders shall document their efforts to obtain SBE participation. City will review and determine that the information is complete, accurate and adequately documents the bidder’s good faith efforts before committing to the award of the contract to the bidder. In the event that the City awards a contract to a bidder who cannot meet the established SBE goals,

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

the findings of the City's review shall be in written form and shall be incorporated into and become part of the contract documents.

If the bidder to whom City proposes to award the contract is able to demonstrate good faith efforts, City may accept the bidder's proposed goal. Acceptance by the City of the bidder's proposed goal does not release the bidder from its contractual obligation to continue to make efforts throughout the duration of the project to utilize SBE firms on the project.

All bidders shall submit with their bid the completed and signed RECORD OF SOLICITATION FOR SBE form.

Letter of Intent

The bidder must submit to the Engineering Contract Coordinator written confirmation from the SBE firms on the form LETTER OF INTENT TO CONTRACT WITH SBE that it is participating in the contract as provided in the contractor's bid commitment. This may be submitted with the bid, but not later than the City's close of business of the Thursday following the bid opening. The signed forms will define the contractor's final proposed utilization and will be the basis of a final evaluation. If inadequate utilization is proposed, the bid shall be considered non-responsive.

The SBE firms submitted on the LETTER OF INTENT TO CONTRACT WITH SBE forms shall be considered binding and changes of committed SBE firms may only be made after the contract is fully executed, and may only be changed through the submission, review and approval of form CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION.

Failure to make the written assurance (City form LETTER OF INTENT TO CONTRACT WITH SBE), which includes the names of the SBE firms to be used, the work they will perform, and the price for the work, or failure to demonstrate good faith efforts that is deemed acceptable to the City to meet or exceed the SBE goals, shall render a bid non-responsive.

It is the contractor's responsibility to submit the information necessary for the City to ascertain compliance with the good faith efforts requirement. Extra cost involved in finding and utilizing SBE firms shall not be deemed adequate reason for the bidder's failure to meet the project SBE goals unless such costs are grossly excessive.

In instances where a successful bidder's SBE commitment exceeds the actual SBE contract goals, the submitted goals of the bidder become the contractual obligation.

In instances where a successful bidder's SBE commitment is below the SBE contract goals, the submitted utilization goals become the contractual obligation.

Good Faith Efforts

The steps taken by the bidder to obtain SBE participation shall be documented in writing and shall include, but are not limited to, the following good faith efforts:

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

A. Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising and/or written notices) in the interest of all certified SBE firms capable to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within sufficient time to allow the SBE firms to respond to the solicitation. The bidder must determine with certainty if the SBE firms are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow-up on the initial solicitation.

B. Selecting portions of the work to be performed by SBE firms in order to increase the likelihood that the SBE goals will be achieved. This includes, where appropriate, breaking out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate SBE participation, even when the contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.

C. Providing interested SBE firms with adequate information about the plans, specifications and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.

D. Negotiating in good faith with interested SBE firms:

(1) It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to SBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available SBE subcontractors and suppliers, to facilitate SBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of SBE firms that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for SBE firms to perform the work. RECORD OF SOLICITATION FOR SBE form will be submitted.

(2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including available SBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using SBE firms is not sufficient justification for a bidder's failure to meet the contract SBE goals, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire of a contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from SBE firms to fulfill the SBE contract requirements if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable. Documentation of quotes shall be submitted to the City with the bid as part of the bidder's record of solicitation.

E. Thoroughly analyzing the capabilities of SBE firms before determining a firm's qualification for a project. The following shall not be legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of SBE quotes in the efforts of the contractor to meet the project goal: (1) the subcontractor's standing, unrelated to job performance, within the industry; (2) membership in specific groups or organizations; or, (3) association with certain political and/or social organizations.

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

Administrative Reconsideration

If City determines that a bidder fails to meet the requirements stated above, the bidder will be provided an opportunity for administrative reconsideration. City staff will contact the bidder by phone to define the issue and clarify any miscommunications or inadvertent actions. If issue was not due to miscommunication and/or inadvertent actions, the following process will be followed:

1. The bidder will be notified by fax/email within ten working days following the bid opening.
2. The bidder will have 2 working days from time of notification to schedule a meeting for the purpose of administrative reconsideration with a City of Tulsa Attorney. Reconsideration meetings will generally be held within 7 days of notification of a bidder being determined non-responsive.

As part of this administrative reconsideration, the bidder will have the opportunity to meet in person with a City of Tulsa Attorney to present arguments concerning whether it met the goal or made adequate good faith efforts to do so. Submittal of additional information documenting solicitation, which was due with the original bid submission, will not be accepted or considered.

3. The decision on reconsideration will be made by a City of Tulsa Attorney who did not take part in the original determination that the bidder failed to meet the goal or make adequate good faith efforts to do so.
4. No awards will be made until all administrative reconsiderations as outlined herein are complete. A City of Tulsa Attorney will provide a written decision on reconsideration to the bidder. This decision will explain the basis for finding that the bidder did or did not meet the goal or make adequate good faith efforts to do so. The determination is copied to the Contract Administrator, City Engineer, and the Director of Human Rights.

CONTRACTOR ACTIONS AFTER AWARD OF THE CONTRACT:

Counting SBE Participation Toward the Goal

When a SBE participates in a contract, only the value of the work actually performed by the SBE is counted toward the contract goal.

The entire amount of that portion of a contract that is performed by the SBE firm's own forces is counted, including the cost of supplies and materials obtained by the SBE for the work on the contract, including supplies purchased or equipment leased by the SBE (except supplies and equipment the SBE purchases or leases from their Prime Contractor).

When a SBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the portion of the total dollar value of the contract equal to the clearly defined portion of the work that the SBE performs with its own forces may be counted toward the goal.

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

Only expenditures to a SBE contractor who performs a commercially useful function may be counted toward a SBE goal.

Commercially Useful Function

A SBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for the execution of the work of its contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing and supervising the work involved. The SBE must be responsible, with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material, and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself.

To determine whether a SBE is performing a commercially useful function, City will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the SBE credit claimed, and other relevant factors.

A SBE does not perform a commercially useful function if its role is limited to that of an extra participant in a transaction through which funds are passed in order to obtain the appearance of SBE participation. In determining whether a SBE is acting as a pass-through, City will examine similar transactions, particularly those in which SBE firms do not participate.

Manufacturers and Material Suppliers

If the materials or supplies are obtained from a certified SBE manufacturer, 100 percent of the cost of the materials or supplies will be counted toward the SBE goals. A manufacturer is a firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces, on the premises, the materials required under the contract as described by the specifications.

If the materials or supplies are purchased from a certified SBE regular dealer, 100 percent of the cost of the materials or supplies will be counted toward the SBE goals. A regular dealer is a firm that owns, operates or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials, supplies, articles, or equipment described by the specification and required under the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold or leased to the public in the usual course of business.

To be a regular dealer, the firm must be an established, regular business that engages, as its principal business and under its own name, in the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A person may be a regular dealer in such bulk items as petroleum products, steel, cement, gravel, stone, or asphalt without owning, operating or maintaining a place of business as provided for in the above paragraph if the person both owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Any supplementing of regular dealers' own distribution equipment shall be by a long-term lease agreement and not on an ad-hoc or contract-by-contract basis.

In order for a firm to qualify as a SBE supplier of metal and/or concrete pipe, the firm must also fabricate the pipe. Metal or concrete pipe is specialty pipe which is project specific and is inspected

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

during the manufacturing process. This arrangement provides for no warehousing of metal or concrete pipe and essentially requires the manufacturer to be the supplier. Merely ordering pipe from the fabricator and in turn selling it to contractors is not consistent with normal industry practice. Contractors normally purchase pipe directly from the manufacturer, thus eliminating the middleman. Supplying metal or concrete pipe is viewed as brokering and is considered inconsistent with SBE program requirements.

Change Request for SBE Participation

Substitution or replacement of a SBE firms will only be permitted or allowed after award and execution of the City contract.

A contractor may not terminate for convenience a SBE listed in their contract (or an approved substitute SBE firm) and then perform the work of the terminated subcontract with its own forces or those of an affiliate, without City's prior written consent.

When a SBE is terminated, or fails to complete the work of the contract for any reason, the contractor must make good faith efforts to find another SBE to substitute for the original SBE. These good faith efforts shall be directed at finding another SBE to perform at least the same amount of work (not necessarily the same work) under the contract as the SBE that was terminated, to the extent needed to meet the SBE goals established in the contract.

When the contractor obtains a substitute SBE, the contractor shall provide the Engineering Contract Coordinator with copies of the CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form and supporting documentation.

If the contractor is unable to replace the SBE with another SBE, then the contractor must provide City with evidence in writing that they have made a good faith effort. The contractor must submit to the Engineering Contract Coordinator a CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form along with documentation to support they have made a good faith effort. City may adjust the goal as appropriate.

In the case where a contractor cannot meet the SBE goals of a contract, he or she should request a change of that portion of the SBE goal, which cannot be met. The request will be subject to the following:

- A written request for change will be initiated by the contractor at the time he or she reasonably knows that despite good faith efforts the contract goal cannot be achieved. The request will be included on the CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form and will contain written document all good faith efforts made to meet the goal as well as the reason for the change.
- The request for change, CHANGE REQUEST FOR SBE PARTICIPATION form, will be submitted for review to the Engineering Contract Coordinator. The City will make the decision on the approval or denial of the change request and inform the contractor.

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

- If, at the completion of the project, the contractor has failed to meet the SBE contract goals, does not have an approved change request, and has not demonstrated good faith efforts to meet the contract goal, the contractor will be assessed liquidated damages for the difference between the contract goal and the actual SBE participation achieved. The City shall deduct the liquidated damages from the final payment. In the event insufficient earnings remain for the reduction of liquidated damages, the City may claim against the contractor's bond, suspend the contractor under performance suspension, withhold further proposals, suspend prequalification and/or other remedies available under the law.
- In those instances when the goal is not met due to a change in quantity, which occurs through no fault of the contractor, but due to City and/or changed site conditions, a change request will be recommended by Field Engineering at the time the change becomes known, but not later than the next progressive payment application from the contractor which covers the work identified for the SBE firm. The change request will include the statement of quantity change(s). The contractor shall endeavor, with good faith efforts, to mitigate underruns by utilizing other SBE firms.

Change in utilization includes reduction, substitution, and/or increase. Utilization shall be checked with the submission of each partial pay request, but not longer than 30 day intervals throughout the project. The contractor's acknowledgement that they have verified changes in his/her utilization is required as part of partial pay request documents. Reductions in utilization not approved prior to the final pay request, will result in pay reduction to the contractor.

If a contractor fails to comply with this section, appropriate administrative remedies may be taken including, but not limited to:

- No additional progressive payments may be processed
- Refusal to issue proposals
- Liquidated damages
- Suspension of work on the project
- Suspension of prequalification
- Termination of the contract

Prompt Payments

To ensure that contractors' obligations under City contracts are met, the contractor shall endeavor to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than fifteen (15) calendar days after receipt of each progressive payment from City. The contractor must further endeavor to make prompt release of retainage held to the SBE within thirty days after the work is satisfactorily completed, whether the contractor's work is complete or not. The term "satisfactorily completed" is defined as when; 1) City finds the work completed in accordance with the Plans and Specifications; 2) any required paperwork, including material certification, payrolls, etc., have been received and approved by City; 3) Field Engineering has determined the final quantities on the subcontractor's portion of the work; and 4) Contractor has received progressive payments from City which includes subcontractors' work.

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEM

In an effort to accelerate payments to subcontractors, the City may pay the Contractor for acceptable material stockpiled or delivered to the project, at other approved or designated locations, or at a plant site required for Contractor's operations as approved by the City. This is governed by Oklahoma Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Highway Construction 2009 or latest edition.

Contractor shall endeavor to include invoices from SBE for materials on hand, partially completed work, or complete work on the earliest partial payment request submitted to the City. It is incumbent on the SBE to submit invoices to the Contractor in a timely manner.

Failure to comply with the prompt payment and return of retainage provisions of the contract may result in sanctions under the contract, as listed below:

- Refusal to issue proposals
- Liquidated damages
- Suspension of work on the project
- No additional progressive payments may be processed
- Suspension of prequalification

Any delay or postponement of payment among the parties may take place only for good cause, with City written approval. The explanation from the contractor must be made in writing to the City.

Record Keeping Requirements

The contractor shall keep such records as are necessary to determine compliance with the SBE contract obligations. The records kept by the contractor will indicate:

1. The name(s) of SBE firms or other subcontractors, the type of work being performed, and payment for work, services and business.
2. Documentation of correspondence, verbal contracts, telephone calls, etc., to obtain services of SBE firms on the project.

Upon request, the contractor shall submit all subcontracts, purchase orders, contracts, agreements, and financial transactions, including canceled checks, executed with SBE firms with the reference to records referred to in this provision, in such form, manner, content prescribed by City.

The contractor should list all SBE firms in the contract and summarize total amounts paid to SBE firms and the project goal amount for each SBE firm.

Reciprocity

The City will grant reciprocity of membership in the SBE program to certified Oklahoma Department of Transportation Disadvantaged Business Enterprises which are located in the Tulsa Metropolitan Statistical Area.

(Must be submitted with Bid)

**CITY OF TULSA
BIDDER'S AFFIDAVIT FOR
SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION GOALS**

STATE OF)
) ss:
COUNTY OF)

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, says that s(he) is the agent authorized by the bidder to submit the attached bid. Affiant further states that the bidder agrees to fully comply with the City of Tulsa's Resolution requiring that a good faith effort be made to utilize small business enterprises as subcontractors.

Affiant further states that s(he) will document on pages SBE-2BID, -3BID, -4BID, and -5BID for public record, his/her good faith efforts in solicitation.

Affiant further states that s(he) is responsible for having like requirements placed upon any subcontractor of said bidder.

Affiant further states that s(he) has read and agrees to the current CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS FOR BID OPENING AND AWARD SYSTEMS.

BIDDER (Company Name)

SIGNED

TITLE

SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES:

SBE-1BID



RECORD OF SOLICITATION FOR SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE)
(MUST BE SUBMITTED WITH BID)

- Project Name:	
- Project Number:	
- Prime Contractor:	
- Prime Contractor Representative:	
Consultants, Subcontractors, Service, Regular Dealers, Material Suppliers, & Fabricators:	
- Contact Date(s):	
- Name of Company:	
- Address (Street, City, County, State):	
- City of Tulsa SBE: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
- City of Tulsa SBE Certificate Number:	
- Other SBE Certificate Number(s):	
- Company Contact Person:	
- Phone No.:	Email:
- Description of Work:	
- Contract Documents provided to and/or reviewed by Company: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
- Will City of Tulsa SBE be utilized? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
- If Yes, Estimated Agreement Amount: \$	
- If No, description of reasons why agreement could not be reached for City of Tulsa SBE to perform work:	



LETTER OF INTENT
TO CONTRACT WITH SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE)
(Must be submitted by close of business on Thursday following bid opening)

Public Works Department, Attn: Contracts Coordinator
CITY OF TULSA
2317 South Jackson, N-103
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74107
Ph.: 918.596.9637
Fax: 918.596.1299

Project Name: _____
Project Number: _____
Submittal Date: _____

Prime Contractor

HEREBY, intends to subcontract items of work generally described as

to:

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

Total amount of participation by City of Tulsa SBE: \$ _____
(City of Tulsa SBE, quote must be attached)

City of Tulsa SBE: ☐ Yes ☐ No

City of Tulsa SBE Certificate Number: _____

Other SBE Certificate Number(s): _____

SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

Signature: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

PRIME CONTRACTOR

Signature: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Signatures of Authorized representatives of the Prime Contractor and the City of Tulsa SBE firm above represent the written commitment by the Prime Contractor to subcontract with the City of Tulsa SBE firm and a written commitment by the City of Tulsa SBE firm to subcontract for work as described in the attached quote.

This form, along with the City of Tulsa SBE firm's quote must be submitted to the City with the executed Contract documents. If this form is not received, the proposed utilization will NOT be counted as part of the Prime Contractor's agreement. This may cause the agreement to be considered non-compliant and be rejected by the City of Tulsa.

SBE – 3BID



CHANGE REQUEST
FOR SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) PARTICIPATION

Project Name: _____

Project Number: _____

Prime Contractor: _____

CHANGE: From / To (fill in both sides)
FROM:

OR

ADD: To (fill in this side only)
TO:

Name: _____

Name: _____

City of Tulsa SBE: ☐ Yes ☐ No

City of Tulsa SBE: ☐ Yes ☐ No

City of Tulsa SBE Certificate Number: _____

City of Tulsa SBE Certificate Number: _____

Other SBE Certificate Number(s): _____

Other SBE Certificate Number(s): _____

Change in service to be performed: _____

Change in amount of participation by City of Tulsa SBE: \$ _____

Reason for Change: _____

NOTE: Attach a copy of the Letter of Intent for the original City of Tulsa SBE and a new Letter of Intent for the proposed City of Tulsa SBE.

PRIME CONTRACTOR

SBE SUBCONTRACTOR

Signature: _____

Signature: _____

Date: _____

Date: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

Approved / Disapproved: _____ Date: _____

Public Works Design Engineering Manager
(Planning, Design, or Field)

Approved / Disapproved: _____ Date: _____

Public Works Contracts Coordinator

Distribution: Tulsa Authority for Economic Opportunity
Public Works Design/Public Works Department (Planning, Design, or Field)



CITY OF TULSA
SMALL BUSINESS ENTERPRISE (SBE) UTILIZATION

Project No.	Contractor	
Project Name		

Name	Business Category	Projected Dollars	Actual Dollars

Projected Contract % _____ Actual Contract % _____ Total _____

PROJECTED:

ACTUAL (Update and Submit with Final Payment):

Contractor Representative	Contractor Representative
Date	Date

NOTE: REFER TO UTILIZATION INSTRUCTIONS

(Must be submitted at time of Bid)
CITY OF TULSA
RESOLUTION NO. 7404
AFFIDAVIT OF COMPLIANCE

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, states that
s(he) is the authorized agent of the Company set forth below.

Affiant further states that the Company, in compliance with City of Tulsa Resolution No. 7404, shall not hire or knowingly allow any of its subcontractors or lower tier subcontractors to hire anyone who is not a United States citizen or legal immigrant or anyone who does not have legal status as a temporary worker to perform work on any project which is the subject of a contract between the Company and the City of Tulsa.

Affiant further states that the Company shall not fail to comply with and shall not knowingly allow any of its subcontractors or lower tier subcontractors to fail to comply with all applicable laws including, but not limited to, labor, employment and taxation laws, in the performance of any work on any project which is the subject of a contract between the Company and the City of Tulsa.

Affiant further states that the Company shall make available to the City of Tulsa, at the City's request, sufficient information and/or affirmations to allow the City to confirm Company's compliance with Resolution No. 7404 relating to the performance of any contract between the Company and the City of Tulsa.

Company: _____

Signed: _____

Title

SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me, this ____ day of _____, 20__.

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES:

COMMISSION NO.:

Resolution No. 7404
RAC-1

(Must be submitted at time of Bid)
CITY OF TULSA
50% RESIDENT RESOLUTION
AFFIDAVIT FOR BID

STATE OF)
) ss:
COUNTY OF)

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, states that s(he) is the agent authorized by the bidder to submit the attached bid. Affiant further states that the bidder, in compliance with City of Tulsa Resolution No. 18145, is committed to the goal of employing at least 50% bona fide residents of the City of Tulsa and/or the Metropolitan Statistical Area (composed of Creek, Okmulgee, Osage, Pawnee, Rogers, Tulsa, and Wagoner counties).

Affiant further states that bidder is responsible for having like requirements placed upon any of its subcontractors.

BIDDER (Company Name)

SIGNED

Title

SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me this ____ day of _____, 20.

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES:

COMMISSION NO.:

(Must be submitted at time of bid)
NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

STATE OF _____)
) ss:
COUNTY OF _____)

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, says that:

1. I am the duly authorized agent of the bidder submitting the competitive bid associated with this sworn statement for the purpose of certifying facts pertaining to the existence of collusion among bidders and between bidders and municipal officers or employees, as well as facts pertaining to the giving or offering of things of value to governmental personnel in return for special consideration in the letting of any contract pursuant to the bid;
2. I am fully aware of the facts and circumstances surrounding the making of the bid and have been personally and directly involved in the proceedings leading to the submission of such bid;
3. Neither the bidder nor anyone subject to the bidder's direction or control has been a party:
 - a. to any collusion among bidders in restraint of freedom of competition by agreement to bid at a fixed price or to refrain from bidding;
 - b. to any collusion with any municipal official or employee as to quantity, quality or price in the prospective contract, or as to any other terms of such prospective contract; nor
 - c. in any discussions between bidders and any municipal official concerning exchange of money or other things of value for special consideration in the letting of a contract.
4. If awarded the contract, neither the bidder nor anyone subject to the bidder's direction or control has paid, given or donated or agreed to pay, give or donate to any officer or employee of the City of Tulsa or of any public trust where the City of Tulsa is a beneficiary, any money or other thing of value, either directly or indirectly, in procuring the contract for which the bid is submitted.

BIDDER (Company Name)

Signed

Title

SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES:

_____, ____
COMMISSION NO.:

(Must be submitted at time of bid)
BUSINESS RELATIONSHIP AFFIDAVIT

STATE OF)
) ss:
 COUNTY OF)

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, says that s(he) is the agent authorized by the bidder to submit the attached bid. Affiant further states that the nature of any partnership, joint venture or other business relationship presently in effect or which existed within one (1) year prior to the date of this statement with the architect, engineer, or other party to the project is as follows:

Affiant further states that any such business relationship presently in effect or which existed within one (1) year prior to the date of this statement between any officer or director of the bidding company and any officer or director of the architectural or engineering firm or other party to the project is as follows:

Affiant further states that the names of all persons having any such business relationships and the positions they hold with their respective companies or firms are as follows:

(If none of the business relationships herein above mentioned exist, affiant should so state.)

Signed: _____

 BIDDER (Company Name)

 Title:

SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

 NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES:

_____, _____
 COMMISSION NO.:

(Must be submitted at time of bid)

INTEREST AFFIDAVIT

STATE OF _____)
)ss.
COUNTY OF _____)

I, _____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, state that I am the agent authorized by Contractor, Engineer, Architect or provider of professional service [“Services Provider”] to submit the attached Agreement. Affiant further states that no officer or employee of the City of Tulsa either directly or indirectly owns a five percent (5%) interest or more in the Services Provider’s business or such a percentage that constitutes a controlling interest. Affiant further states that the following officers and/or employees of the City of Tulsa own an interest in the Services Provider’s business which is less than a controlling interest, either direct or indirect.

By _____
Signature

Title _____

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

Notary Public

My Commission Expires: _____

Notary Commission Number: _____

County & State Where Notarized: _____

The Affidavit must be signed by an authorized agent and notarized.

ELECTRONIC BID PROPOSAL INSTRUCTIONS - EXCEL SPREADSHEET
PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01 STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING

Please read the following instructions carefully.

1. After opening this file re-save it as your company's name.
2. Open the BID FORM Sheet from the tabs below.
3. Input the unit price of the appropriate pay item in the cells highlighted in blue.
4. Review all data input and check calculations to ensure accuracy of Bid.
5. Print 1hardcopy of the "PROPOSAL" tab, BID FORM and the "SIGNATURE PAGE" tab.
6. Complete and sign the "Signature Page" document.
6. Submit hardcopy and electronic disk with Contract Documents and Specifications for Bid opening date.

LEGEND

- \$ 1.00 Cells Requiring Data Input.
- \$ 1.00 Internal Data Transfer.
- \$ 2.00 Calculated Results.

AGREEMENT FOR USING ELECTRONIC BID PROPOSAL

By and Between: _____, (ENGINEER) and RECIPIENT, The enclosed electronic media is provided pursuant to your request and is for your limited use in connection with your submittal of Bid Proposal for Project No. _____. In no event shall the information be used for any other purpose or be released to third parties without the written consent of the ENGINEER. In the event of a discrepancy between the hard copy and this electronic media at delivery or in the future, the hard copy shall govern. ENGINEER hereby disclaims any and all liability for the consequences from use of the electronic media and makes no warranty or guarantee of accuracy. RECIPIENT shall assume full responsibility for the uses and consequences of the electronic media. It is agreed that ENGINEER has and retains ownership of the electronic media. ENGINEER does not warrant or guarantee that the electronic data is compatible with RECIPIENT'S computer hardware or software, and ENGINEER'S responsibility for the electronic media is limited to replacement of defective media for a period of thirty (30) days after delivery to RECIPIENT. !!! By opening and using this FILE, You AGREE to these TERMS AND CONDITIONS!!!

**PROPOSAL
PROJECT NO: SW-23-01-01
STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING**

TO: HONORABLE MAYOR
CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA

THE UNDERSIGNED BIDDER, having carefully examined the drawings, specifications, and other Contract Documents of the above project presently on file in the City Clerk, City of Tulsa Oklahoma:

CERTIFIES THAT he has inspected the site of the proposed work and has full knowledge of the extent and character of the work involved, construction difficulties that may be encountered, and materials necessary for construction, class and type of excavation, and all other factors affecting or which may be affected by the specified work; and

CERTIFIES THAT he has not entered into collusion with any other bidder or prospective bidder relative to the project and/or bid: and

HEREBY PROPOSES: to enter into a contract to provide all necessary labor, materials, equipment and tools to completely construct and finish all the work required by the Contract Documents hereto attached and other documents referred to therein: to complete said work within 730 calendar days after the work order is issued; and to accept in full payment therefore the amount set forth below for all work actually performed as computed by the Engineer as set forth in the Contract.

Basis of Award

IT SHOULD BE NOTED THAT THE LOWEST RESPONSIBLE BID SHALL BE DETERMINED BY THE TOTAL BASE BID PLUS ADDITIVE ALTERNATES NO. 1-6. THE ITEMS IN ADDITIVE ALTERNATES NO. 1-6 MAY OR MAY NOT BE INCLUDED IN THE CONTRACT AWARD AT THE SOLE DISCRETION OF THE CITY OF TULSA. ANY PROPOSAL SUBMITTED WITH THE ADDITIVE ALTERNATE 1-6 INCOMPLETE SHALL BE CONSIDERED NON-RESPONSIVE

Note: - Item numbers omitted are not a part of the Contract.

**PROPOSAL FOR
PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01
STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING**

BID ITEM	SPEC NO.	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QTY	UNIT PRICE	TOTAL EACH ITEM
1	DIV 1	GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND MOBILIZATION	LSUM	1		\$ -
2	012100	OWNERS ALLOWANCE	ALLOW	170000	\$ 1.00	\$ 170,000.00
3	033000	CONCRETE SLAB AND SLAB EDGE	CY	411		\$ -
4	032000/033000	ELEVATED CONCRETE SLAB, REINFORCED	CY	15		\$ -
5	032000/033000	REINFORCED CONCRETE FOOTINGS	CY	41		\$ -
6	033543	SCONC - SEALED CONCRETE	SF	1358		\$ -
7	033543	PCONC1 - POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING	SF	8201		\$ -
8	42200	M8 - 8" BURNISHED BLOCK - FULLY GROUTED	SF	1176		\$ -
9	042200	M8 - 8" BURNISHED BLOCK	SF	1386		\$ -
10	042200	M6 - 6" CMU	SF	231		\$ -
11	042613	M4 - 4" BURNISHED BLOCK	SF	357		\$ -
12	051213	STEEL CANOPY STRUCTURE	LB	14430		\$ -
13	064023	WD1 - WOOD BASE	LF	328		\$ -
14	064116	WD1 - CHAIRRAIL	LF	546		\$ -
15	064116	PLYWOOD AT MECH ROOM	SF	361		\$ -
16	064116	6.BSINK SINK BASE CABINET - 36x34x24	EA	3		\$ -
17	064116	6.BWKSFDA-ADA WORKSURFACE BASE CABINET - 30x34x24	EA	1		\$ -
18	064116	6.BWKSF - WORKSURFACE BASE CABINET - 36x34x24	EA	3		\$ -
19	064116	6.BTRSH - TRASH BASE CABINET WITH 8" COUNTER RING- 18x34x24	EA	4		\$ -
20	064116	6.B2DRW - 2 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 24x34x24	EA	3		\$ -
21	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 18x34x24	EA	2		\$ -
22	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 27x34x24	EA	1		\$ -
23	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 28x34x24	EA	1		\$ -
24	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 15x30x24	EA	2		\$ -
25	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 30x24x24	EA	2		\$ -
26	064116	6.B3DRW - 3 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 30x42x24	EA	2		\$ -
27	064116	6.B1DRW2DR - 1 DRAWER + 1 DOOR BASE CABINET - 16x34x24	EA	1		\$ -
28	064116	6.B2DRW2DR - 2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 24x34x24	EA	1		\$ -
29	064116	6.B2DRW2DR - 2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 27x34x24	EA	2		\$ -
30	064116	6.B2DRW2DR - 2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 30x34x24	EA	6		\$ -
31	064116	6.B2DRW2DR - 2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 32x34x24	EA	6		\$ -
32	064116	6.B2DRW2DR - 2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 36x34x24	EA	5		\$ -
33	064116	6.U2DR - 1 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 16x30x15	EA	1		\$ -
34	064116	6.U2DR - 1 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 18x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
35	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 24x30x15	EA	4		\$ -
36	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 30x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
37	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 32x30x15	EA	6		\$ -
38	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 33x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
39	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 35x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
40	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 36x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
41	064116	6.U2DR - 2 DOOR UPPER CABINETS - 36x24x15	EA	5		\$ -
42	064116	6.UCSU - OPEN SHELF - 36x30x15	EA	2		\$ -
43	064116	6.UCSU - OPEN SHELF CORNER UNIT - 30x30x15	EA	1		\$ -
44	064116	6.BM - BENCH UNIT 60"	EA	2		\$ -
45	064116	6.BN - BENCH UNIT SIDE TABLE	EA	3		\$ -
46	064116	6.RECDESK - RECEPTION DESK WITH TRANSACTION COUNTER	LF	14		\$ -
47	064116	6.RECDESK - RECEPTION DESK	LF	5		\$ -
48	064116	6.VAN - RESTROOM VANITY 84x32x22	EA	2		\$ -
49	064116	6.VAN - RESTROOM VANITY 36x32x22	EA	2		\$ -
50	064116	6.VAN - RESTROOM VANITY 33x32x22	EA	1		\$ -
51	072100	THERMAL INSULATION	SF	840		\$ -
52	075423	TPO ROOFING SYSTEM	SF	1890		\$ -
53	079200	JOINT SEALANTS	SYS	1		\$ -
54	081113, 087100, 088000	TYPE A - 36" WOOD DOOR, H.M. FRAME, AND HARDWARE	EA	32		\$ -
55	081113, 087100, 088000	TYPE A -PAIR 36" H.M. DOORS, H.M. FRAME, AND HARDWARE	EA	4		\$ -
56	081113, 087100, 088000	TYPE A -PAIR 36" WOOD DOORS, H.M. FRAME, AND HARDWARE	EA	6		\$ -
57	081113, 087100, 088000	TYPE B - H.M. DOOR, H.M. FRAME, AND HARDWARE - W/LITE	EA	9		\$ -
58	081113, 087100, 088000	FEMA DOOR, H.M. FRAME, AND HARDWARE	EA	2		\$ -
59	081113, 087100, 088000	PAIR AL FRAME DOOR WITH GLASS, AL FRAME, AND HARDWARE	EA	3		\$ -
60	084113/088000	ALUM. STOREFRONT AND GLAZING	SF	962		\$ -
61	083613	OVERHEAD SECTIONAL DOOR	EA	1		\$ -
62	092216/092900	P1 - PARTITION	SF	1327		\$ -
63	092216/092900	P1A - PARTITION	SF	6573		\$ -
64	092216/092900	P1AF - PARTITION	SF	4526		\$ -
65	092216/092900	P1F - PARTITION	SF	409		\$ -
66	092216/092900	P2 - PARTITION	SF	2093		\$ -
67	092216/092900	P2A - PARTITION	SF	305		\$ -

68	092216/092900	P3FT - PARTITION	SF	762	\$	-
69	092216/092900	P4TT - PARTITION	SF	265	\$	-
70	092216/092900	P5A - PARTITION	SF	249	\$	-
71	092216/092900	P5AF - PARTITION	SF	1396	\$	-
72	092216/092900	P6 - PARTITION	SF	6286	\$	-
73	092216/092900	P6A - PARTITION	SF	642	\$	-
74	092216/092900	P6F - PARTITION	SF	1256	\$	-
75	092216/092900	P6AF - PARTITION	SF	42	\$	-
76	092216/092900	P7T - PARTITION	SF	34	\$	-
77	092216/092900	P7AT - PARTITION	SF	142	\$	-
78	092216/092900	P7TAF - PARTITION	SF	183	\$	-
79	092216/092900	P11AF - PARTITION	SF	432	\$	-
80	092216/092900	P12AF - PARTITION	SF	179	\$	-
81	092216/092900	GYP BD CEILINGS	SF	1374	\$	-
82	092216/092900	EXTERIOR GYP BD CEILINGS	SF	1749	\$	-
83	093013	9.CT1 - PORCELAIN TILE (RESTROOM AND ENTRY FLOOR 12X24)	SF	1914	\$	-
84	093013	9.CT2 - PORCELAIN TILE (EXTERIOR PAVERS 30X30)	SF	1249	\$	-
85	093013	9.CT3 - PORCELAIN TILE (FLOORS)	SF	733	\$	-
86	093013	9.CT3 - PORCELAIN TILE (BASE)	SF	367	\$	-
87	093013	9.CT3 - PORCELAIN TILE (RESTROOM WALLS)	SF	1622	\$	-
88	093013	9.CT4 - PORCELAIN TILE (ACCENT AT RESTROOM WALLS)	SF	42	\$	-
89	093013	9.CT5 - PORCELAIN TILE (BACKSPLASHES AND RECEPTION ACCENT)	SF	215	\$	-
90	095123	9.ACT1.2 - ACOUSTICAL CEILING TILES AND GRID	SF	4253	\$	-
91	095123	9.ACT 2.2 - ACOUSTICAL CEILING TILES AND GRID (HIGH ACOUSTICS)	SF	5659	\$	-
92	096513	9.RB1 - RUBBER BASE	LF	2989	\$	-
93	096813	9.CPT1 - CARPET TILES - OFFICES	SY	749	\$	-
94	097200	VINYL WALL COVERING AT MID ROOM	SF	185	\$	-
95	098433	9.AWP1 - ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS	SF	1160	\$	-
96	098433	9.AWP2 - ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS WITH WOOD SLATS	SF	2555	\$	-
97	099100	PAINT - EXTERIOR STEEL CANOPY	SYS	2	\$	-
98	099100	PAINT - GYP WALLS	SF	41738	\$	-
99	099100	PAINT - GYP CEILING	SF	1527	\$	-
100	099100	PAINT - EXP CEILING	SF	5567	\$	-
101	101100	10.MB9648 - MARKERBOARD 96" X 48"	EA	8	\$	-
102	101100	MARKERBOARD MARKER KITS	EA	4	\$	-
103	101416	PLAQUES	EA	1	\$	-
104	101419	BUILDING SIGNAGE - DIMENSIONAL LETTERS	SYS	1	\$	-
105	101419	DECORATIVE CONFERENCE ROOM SIGNAGE	SYS	1	\$	-
106	101423	EVACUATION SIGNAGE	EA	15	\$	-
107	101423	ROOM ID SIGNAGE	EA	13	\$	-
108	101423	ROOM ID SIGNAGE WITH INSERT	EA	23	\$	-
109	101423	CONFERENCE ROOM SIGNAGE	EA	8	\$	-
110	101423	RESTROOM SIGNAGE	EA	5	\$	-
111	101423	REFUGE SIGNAGE	EA	2	\$	-
112	101423	VINYL ON GLASS	EA	2	\$	-
113	102113	10.TP - TOILET PARTITION (STANDARD)	EA	5	\$	-
114	102113	10.TP - TOILET PARTITION (URINAL SCREEN)	EA	1	\$	-
115	102113	10.TP - TOILET PARTITION (ADA)	EA	4	\$	-
116	102239	10.FP - FOLDING PARTITION WALL	SF	420	\$	-
117	102600	10.WP - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION	EA	35	\$	-
118	102800	10.MU - MIRROR 72" WIDE X 48" TALL	EA	2	\$	-
119	102800	10.MU - MIRROR 36" WIDE X 48" TALL	EA	2	\$	-
120	102800	10.MU - MIRROR 33" WIDE X 48" TALL	EA	1	\$	-
121	102800	10.DTP - DUAL TOILET PAPER ROLL WITH SHELF	EA	10	\$	-
122	102800	10.TSC - TOILET SEAT COVER	EA	10	\$	-
123	102800	10.SNW - SANITARY NAPKIN WASTE	EA	6	\$	-
124	102800	10.GB42 - 42" GRAB BAR	EA	5	\$	-
125	102800	10.GB36 - 36" GRAB BAR	EA	7	\$	-
126	102800	10.GB18 - 18" GRAB BAR	EA	6	\$	-
127	102800	10.GBSHR - SHOWER GRAB BAR	EA	1	\$	-
128	102800	10.SD - SOAP DISPENSER	EA	12	\$	-
129	102800	10.PTD - PAPER TOWEL DISPENSER	EA	7	\$	-
130	102800	10.PTC12 - RECESSED COMBO PAPER TOWEL DISPENSER AND 12 GALLON WASTE CAN	EA	5	\$	-
131	102800	10.MBH - MOP AND BROOM HOLDER WITH SHELF	EA	2	\$	-
132	102800	10.SCR - 3' SHOWER ROD, HOOKS AND 4' (MIN) WIDE CURTAIN	EA	1	\$	-
133	102800	10.RH - ROBE HOOK	EA	3	\$	-
134	102800	10.CSS - CORNER SHOWER SHELF	EA	1	\$	-
135	102800	10.RFSS - RECESSED FOLDING SHOWER SEAT	EA	1	\$	-
136	105123	10.PLK - PHENOLIC LOCKERS (15W X 18D X 72H)	EA	3	\$	-
137	104413/104416	10.FEC - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND CABINETS	EA	5	\$	-
138	104413/104416	10.AED - AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY DEFIBRILLATOR	EA	1	\$	-
139	122413	WT3 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES 48X48	EA	20	\$	-
140	122413	WT4 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES 48X86	EA	5	\$	-
141	122413	WT5 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES (3) 48X48 GROUPED TOGETHER	EA	2	\$	-
142	122413	WT6 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES 36X48	EA	1	\$	-
143	123661.19	12.SDSF - SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP - 25" DEEP WITH 1.5 INCH EDGE	SF	245	\$	-
144	123661.19	12.SDSF - SOLID SURFACE VANITY - 22" DEEP WITH 1.5 INCH EDGE	SF	44	\$	-

145	123661.19	12.SDSF - SOLID SURFACE TRANSACTION - 12" DEEP WITH 1.5 INCH EDGE	SF	14	\$	-
146	123661.19	12.SDSF - SOLID SURFACE BACK SPLASH - 4"	SF	14	\$	-
147	133419	NEW PRE-ENGINEERED METAL BUILDING	SF	19678	\$	-
148	211313	FIRE SUPPRESSION	SF	19678	\$	-
149	224200	WC-1 FLOOR MOUNTED FLUSH VALVE WATER CLOSET (ADA)	EA	5	\$	-
150	224200	WC-2 FLOOR MOUNTED FLUSH VALVE WATER CLOSET	EA	5	\$	-
151	224200	UR-1 URINAL	EA	3	\$	-
152	224200	LAV-1 - DROP IN LAVORATORY	EA	7	\$	-
153	224200	SK-1 DOUBLE BOWL DROP-IN SINK	EA	1	\$	-
154	224200	SK-4 SINGLE BOWL DROP-IN SINK (ADA)	EA	2	\$	-
155	224200	EWS-1 EYE WASH STATION	EA	1	\$	-
156	224200	MSB-1 MOP SERVICE BASIN	EA	2	\$	-
157	224200	SH-1 SHOWER	EA	1	\$	-
158	224200	EW-1 ELECTRIC WATER COOLER (ADA) SINGLE	EA	1	\$	-
159	224200	EW-2 ELECTRIC WATER COOLER (ADA)	EA	1	\$	-
160	224200	IMB-1 ICE MAKER BOX	EA	5	\$	-
161	224200	FPHB-1 FREEZEPROOF WALL HYDRANT	EA	6	\$	-
162	224200	FPHB-2 FREEZEPROOF WALL HYDRANT (DUAL TEMP)	EA	1	\$	-
163	224200	FPRH-1 FREEZEPROOF ROOF HYDRANT	EA	1	\$	-
164	223400	WH-1 WATER HEATER	EA	1	\$	-
165	223400	WH-2 WATER HEATER	EA	1	\$	-
166	224200	CIRC PUMP SYSTEM AND PIPING	EA	2	\$	-
167	226600	DCV-1 DOUBLE CHECK VALVE BACKFLOW PREVENTER 3"	SYS	1	\$	-
168	226600	DCV-S DOUBLE CHECK VALVE BACKFLOW PREVENTER	SYS	1	\$	-
169	221316	YCO-1 YARD CLEANOUT	EA	1	\$	-
170	221316	WCO-1 WALL CLEANOUT	EA	2	\$	-
171	224200	FD-1 FLOOR DRAIN	EA	16	\$	-
172	224200	FS-1 FLOOR SINK	EA	1	\$	-
173	224200	FCO-1 FLOOR CLEAN OUT	EA	4	\$	-
174	221316	TD-1 TRENCH DRAIN	EA	1	\$	-
175	221316	OL-1 OIL INTERCEPTOR	EA	1	\$	-
176	221316	SANITARY PIPING	SYS	1	\$	-
177	221116	DOMESTIC PIPING	SYS	1	\$	-
178	224200	RD-1 ROOF DRAIN SYSTEM	EA	1	\$	-
179	230000	COMPLETE MECHANICAL SYSTEM	SYS	1	\$	-
180	265200	A 2X4 RECESSED, 4000L	EA	66	\$	-
181	265200	AE 2X4 RECESSED, 4000L, INTERGRAL BATTERY	EA	19	\$	-
182	265200	B 2X2 RECESSED, 3200L	EA	33	\$	-
183	265200	BE 2X2 RECESSED, 3200L, INTEGRAL BATTERY	EA	5	\$	-
184	265200	D4 4" LED DOWNLIGHT, 2000L	EA	14	\$	-
185	265200	D4E 4" LED DOWNLIGHT, 2000L, INTEGRAL BATTERY	EA	1	\$	-
186	265200	D6 6" LED DOWNLIGHT, 2500L	EA	35	\$	-
187	265200	D6E 6" LED DOWNLIGHT, 2500L, INTEGRAL BATTERY	EA	23	\$	-
188	265200	EM 20W LED MULLION MOUTED EMERGENCY FIXTURE	EA	1	\$	-
189	265200	F 8W LED SPOT LIGHT MOUNTED DIRECTLY TO JUNCTION BOX.	EA	2	\$	-
190	265200	L1 5.6W/FT RECESSED LINEAR FIXTURE (7' 2-1/4" LENGTH)	EA	2	\$	-
191	265200	L2 5.6W/FT RECESSED LINEAR FIXTURE (15' 5-1/4" LENGTH)	EA	2	\$	-
192	265200	L3E 5.6W/FT RECESSED LINEAR FIXTURE (23' 3/8" LENGTH). PROVIDE (3) EM AS INDICATED ON PLANS.	EA	2	\$	-
193	265200	P6 6' LED UP/DOWN PENDANT FIXTURE	EA	1	\$	-
194	265200	P8 8' LED UP/DOWN PENDANT FIXTURE	EA	1	\$	-
195	265200	P20 20' LED PENDANT FIXTURE, 675 LM/FT DOWN, 530 LM/FT UP, 20' ARICRAFT CABLE MOUNT, INTEGRAL BATTERIES	EA	4	\$	-
196	265200	P24 24' LED PENDANT FIXTURE, 675 LM/FT DOWN, 530 LM/FT UP, 20' ARICRAFT CABLE MOUNT, INTEGRAL BATTERIES	EA	4	\$	-
197	265200	P40 40' LED PENDANT FIXTURE, 675 LM/FT DOWN, 530 LM/FT UP, 20' ARICRAFT CABLE MOUNT, INTEGRAL BATTERIES PER PLANS.	EA	10	\$	-
198	265200	S4 4' SURFACE MOUNTED LINEAR FIXTURE, 795LM/FT	EA	5	\$	-
199	265200	S4E 4' SURFACE MOUNTED LINEAR FIXTURE, 795LM/FT, EM	EA	5	\$	-
200	265200	S8 8' SURFACE MOUNTED LINEAR FIXTURE, 795LM/FT	EA	2	\$	-
201	265200	ST 4' LED STRIP LIGHT 4100L (6.5W/FT)	EA	10	\$	-
202	265200	STE 4' LED STRIP LIGHT 4100L, INTEGRAL BATTERY	EA	3	\$	-
203	265200	T-18000 LUMEN LED POLE LIGHT (PROVIDE 20' POLE AND 3' POLE BASE)	EA	15	\$	-
204	265200	W WALL MOUNTED LED FIXTURE WITH WALL MOUNT BRACKET.	EA	14	\$	-
205	265200	WE WALL MOUNTED LED FIXTURE WITH WALL MOUNT BRACKET	EA	2	\$	-
206	265200	WL 22' WALL WASH LED FIXTURE, 795 LM/FT	EA	1	\$	-
207	265200	WW 4" LED WALL WASH DOWNLIGHT, 1000L	EA	3	\$	-
208	265200	XC1 LED RED EXIT SIGN, SINGLE FACE, CEILING MOUNT	EA	5	\$	-
209	265200	XC2 LED RED EXIT SIGN, DOUBLE FACE, CEILING MOUNT	EA	4	\$	-
210	265200	XW1 LED RED EXIT SIGN, SINGLE FACE, WALL MOUNT	EA	8	\$	-
211	260000	POWER SYSTEM	SYS	1	\$	-
212	282000	FIRE ALARM SYSTEM	SF	19678	\$	-
213	202(A)	UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION	CY	2205	\$	-
214	202(D)	UNCLASSIFIED BORROW	CY	1315	\$	-
215	205(A)	TYPE A-SALVAGED TOPSOIL	CY	274	\$	-
216	220	SWPPP DOCUMENTATION	LSUM	1	\$	-
217	230(A)	SOLID SLAB SODDING	SY	2445	\$	-

218	231(A)	TREES	EA	2		\$	-
219	240(A)	REMOVING TREES 6" TO 12" IN DIAMETER	EA	2		\$	-
220	303(A)	AGGREGATE BASE TYPE A	CY	1257		\$	-
221	310(B)	SUBGRADE, METHOD B	SY	4092		\$	-
222	325	SEPARATOR FABRIC	SY	4223		\$	-
223	414(B)	DOWEL JOINTED P.C.C. PAVT. (PLACEMENT)	SY	3595		\$	-
224	414(G)	P.C. CONCRETE FOR PAVEMENT	CY	601		\$	-
225	601(A)	TYPE I PLAIN RIPRAP	TON	6		\$	-
226	609	(PL) PARKING BLOCK	EA	54		\$	-
227	609(A)	COMBINED CURB AND GUTTER (6" BARRIER)	LF	602		\$	-
228	610(A)	4" CONCRETE SIDEWALK	SY	839		\$	-
229	613(A)	24" REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE (RCP), COMPLETE IN PLACE	LF	42		\$	-
230	613(I)	8" NON-PERF. PIPE UNDERDRAIN RND.	LF	421		\$	-
231	613(L)	24" PREFAB. CULVERT END SEC., ROUND	EA	2		\$	-
232	613(Q)	OUTLET LATERAL HEADWALL	EA	7		\$	-
233	619(B)	REMOVAL OF FENCE	LF	10		\$	-
234	619(B)	REMOVAL OF ASPHALT PAVEMENT	SY	1229		\$	-
235	619(B)	REMOVAL OF EXISTING STRUCTURES	EA	1		\$	-
236	619(B)	REMOVAL OF EXISTING PIPE	LF	49		\$	-
237	624	(PL) WOOD PRIVACY FENCE W/ GATE	LF	39		\$	-
238	850(A)	SHEET ALUMINUM SIGNS	SF	7		\$	-
239	851(C)	1.5" SQUARE TUBE POST	LF	40		\$	-
240	851(C)	2" SQUARE TUBE POST	LF	10		\$	-
241	856(A)	TRAFFIC STRIPE (PLASTIC)(4" WIDE)	LF	1334		\$	-
242	856(B)	TRAFFIC STRIPE (PLASTIC)(SYMBOLS)	EA	4		\$	-
243	SPECIAL	12"X12" LANDSCAPING AREA INLET	EA	1		\$	-
244	SPECIAL	DOWNSPOUT ADAPTER	EA	7		\$	-
245	SPECIAL	CURB RAMP	EA	2		\$	-
246	COT 309	6 INCH PVC AWWA C900 CLASS 200 DR-14 (RJ)	LF	140		\$	-
247	COT 312	6 INCH DUCTILE IRON SLEEVE (RJ)	EA	3		\$	-
248	COT 312	12 INCH DUCTILE IRON SLEEVE (RJ)	EA	2		\$	-
249	COT 312	6 INCH X 3 INCH DUCTILE IRON TEE (RJ)	EA	1		\$	-
250	COT 312	12 INCH X 6 INCH DUCTILE IRON TEE (RJ)	EA	1		\$	-
251	COT 313	6" SANITARY SEWER LINE	LF	113		\$	-
252	COT 315	3 INCH WATER SERVICE CONNECTION (LONG)	EA	1		\$	-
253	COT 315	3 INCH COMPOUND WATER METER	EA	1		\$	-
254	COT 315	3 INCH WATER METER VAULT	EA	1		\$	-
255	COT 317	6 INCH GATE VALVE (RJ)	EA	1		\$	-
256	COT 318	VALVE BOX	EA	1		\$	-
257	SPECIAL	POWER SERVICE CONNECTION (4" CONDUIT)	LF	271		\$	-
258	019113	HVAC GENERAL COMMISSIONING	EA	1		\$	-
BASE BID SUBTOTAL						\$	170,000.00

ALTERNATE 1							
300	032000/033000	REINFORCED CONCRETE GENERATOR PAD	CY	9		\$	-
301	260000	GENERATOR	EA	1		\$	-
ALTERNATE 1 SUBTOTAL						\$	-

ALTERNATE 2							
302	123553.19	OPEN SHELVING UNIT 42X85X18	EA	2		\$	-
303	123553.19	SINK BASE CABINET - 39x34x24	EA	1		\$	-
304	123553.19	SINK BASE CABINET - 36x34x24	EA	1		\$	-
305	123553.19	ACCESS PANEL	EA	2		\$	-
306	123553.19	2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 30x34x24	EA	4		\$	-
307	123553.19	2 DRAWER + 2 DOOR BASE CABINET - 36x34x24	EA	2		\$	-
308	123553.19	4 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 15x34x24	EA	1		\$	-
309	123553.19	4 DRAWER BASE CABINET - 18x34x24	EA	7		\$	-
310	123553.19	CORNER BASE CABINET WITH LAZY SUZAN - APPROX 36x34x36	EA	1		\$	-
311	123553.19	OPEN BASE CABINET - 36X	EA	2		\$	-
312	123553.19	2 SLIDING DOOR UPPER CABINET - 36x30x15	EA	6		\$	-
313	123553.19	3 DRAWER CABINET - 30X30X34 FOR COUNTERTOP FREEZER	EA	1		\$	-
314	123553.19	OPEN SHELF CORNER UNIT - APPROX 36X30x15	EA	1		\$	-
315	123553.19	DRYING RACK - WITH TRAY 30X36	EA	1		\$	-
316	123553.19	ADJUSTABLE SHELVING	LF	5		\$	-
317	123553.19	36" DEEP RESIN COUNTERTOP WITH FRONT LIP	LF	11		\$	-
318	123553.19	30" DEEP RESIN COUNTERTOP WITH FRONT LIP	LF	21		\$	-
319	123553.19	30" TO 36" TRANSITION RESIN COUNTERTOP AT CORNER	LF	8		\$	-
320	123553.19	4" HIGH BACKSPLASH	LF	38		\$	-
321	123553.19	RESIN ISLAND COUNTERTOP WITH FRONT LIP - 49"	LF	9		\$	-
322	224200	SK-2 SINGLE BOWL DROP-IN SINK	EA	1		\$	-
323	224200	SK-3 SINGLE BOWL DROP-IN SINK (ADA)	EA	1		\$	-
324	224200	EWS-1 EYE WASH STATION	EA	1		\$	-
325	260000	ELECTRICAL POWER AT LAB	SYS	1		\$	-
326	115329	4' FUME HOOD SYSTEM WITH DUCTWORK	EA	1		\$	-
ALTERNATE 2 SUBTOTAL						\$	-

ALTERNATE 3						
327	095123	9.ACT 2.2 - ACOUSTICAL CEILING TILES AND GRID (HIGH ACOUSTICS)	SF	5567		\$ -
ALTERNATE 3 SUBTOTAL						\$ -

ALTERNATE 4						
328	202(A)	UNCLASSIFIED EXCAVATION	CY	1403		\$ -
329	202(D)	UNCLASSIFIED BORROW	CY	351		\$ -
330	205(A)	TYPE A-SALVAGED TOPSOIL	CY	26		\$ -
331	230(A)	SOLID SLAB SODDING	SY	232		\$ -
332	303(A)	AGGREGATE BASE TYPE A	CY	590		\$ -
333	310(B)	SUBGRADE, METHOD B	SY	3905		\$ -
334	325	SEPARATOR FABRIC	SY	3916		\$ -
335	411(C)	SUPERPAVE, TYPE S4 PG (64-22)	TON	401		\$ -
336	411(C)	SUPERPAVE, TYPE S3 PG (64-22)	TON	802		\$ -
337	601(A)	TYPE I PLAIN RIPRAP	TON	11		\$ -
338	609(A)	COMBINED CURB AND GUTTER (6" BARRIER)	LF	581		\$ -
339	611(G)	INLET C/DES. 2 (STD)	EA	2		\$ -
340	613(A)	18" REINFORCED CONCRETE PIPE (RCP), COMPLETE IN PLACE	LF	172		\$ -
341	613(L)	18" PREFAB. CULVERT END SEC., ROUND	EA	2		\$ -
342	850(A)	SHEET ALUMINUM SIGNS	SF	4		\$ -
343	851(C)	1.5" SQUARE TUBE POST	LF	20		\$ -
344	851(C)	2" SQUARE TUBE POST	LF	5		\$ -
345	856(A)	TRAFFIC STRIPE (PLASTIC)(4" WIDE)	LF	1846		\$ -
346	856(B)	TRAFFIC STRIPE (PLASTIC)(SYMBOLS)	EA	2		\$ -
347	SPECIAL	CURB RAMP	EA	1		\$ -
ALTERNATE 4 SUBTOTAL						\$ -

ALTERNATE 5						
348	113200	11.CM - COFFEE MAKER INSTALLATION	EA	5		\$ -
349	113200	11.DW - DISHWASHER (BREAKROOM AND LAB)	EA	2		\$ -
350	113200	11.IM - COUNTERTOP ICEMAKER	EA	1		\$ -
351	113200	11.MWC - MICROWAVE	EA	3		\$ -
352	113200	11.RANGE - RANGE AND RANGE HOOD	EA	1		\$ -
353	113200	11.REF1 - REFRIGERATOR - BREAKROOMS	EA	3		\$ -
354	113200	11.REF2 - REFRIGERATOR (LAB)	EA	2		\$ -
355	113200	11.REF2 - UNDERCOUNTER REFRIGERATOR (LACTATION ROOM)	EA	1		\$ -
356	113200	COUNTER TOP FREEZER (LAB)	EA	1		\$ -
ALTERNATE 5 SUBTOTAL						\$ -

ALTERNATE 6						
357	SPECIAL	300 GALLON 72"X28"X36"	EA	1		\$ -
ALTERNATE 6 SUBTOTAL						\$ -

BASE BID SUBTOTAL	\$ 170,000.00
ALTERNATE 1 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
ALTERNATE 2 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
ALTERNATE 3 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
ALTERNATE 4 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
ALTERNATE 5 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
ALTERNATE 6 SUBTOTAL	\$ -
BASE BID PLUS ALTERNATES	\$ 170,000.00

BASE BID (ITEMS)	\$170,000.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
ADD ALT	\$0.00
BASE BID PLUS ADDITIVE ALTERNATES	\$170,000.00

Enclosed is a () Bidder's Surety Bond, () Certified Check, () Cashier's Check for
 _____ %

which the City of Tulsa may retain or recover as liquidated damages in the event that the undersigned fails to enter into contract for the work covered by this proposal., provided the Contract is awarded to the undersigned within thirty (30) days, or within ninety (90) days if Federal funds are utilized, from the date fixed for opening of bids and the undersigned fails to execute said Contract and furnish the required bonds and other requirements as called for in these Contract Documents within thirty (30) days after award of Contract.

Dated at Tulsa, Oklahoma, this _____ day of _____, 20__.

Respectfully submitted,

 (Complete legal name of company)

 (State of Organization)

By:

ATTEST:

Title:

Title: Corporate Secretary

Printed Name:

Printed Name:

(SEAL)

Address: _____

Telephone Number: _____

Fax Number: _____

By signing above the bidder acknowledges receipt of the following Addenda (give number and date of each):

Certificate of Secretary

The undersigned _____ (Assistant) Secretary of _____, a _____ corporation, (the "Corporation") hereby certifies that the following is a true and correct copy of a Resolution duly adopted by the Board of Directors of the Corporation on the _____ day of _____, 20____.

RESOLVED, that _____ is authorized to execute and enter into bids, contracts, bonds, affidavits and any ancillary documents, on behalf of the Corporation.

The undersigned further certifies that this Resolution is in full force and effect as of the date of this Certificate and has not been amended, modified, revoked or rescinded.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have executed this Certificate this ____ day of _____, 20____.

(Signature)

Printed Name

(Assistant) Secretary

Consent of Members

The undersigned, being all of the Members of [Name of Company], LLC, an Oklahoma Limited Liability Company, hereby authorize, consent to, approve and ratify the execution by _____ on behalf of [Name of Company], LLC of bid proposals, contracts, affidavits and related documents in connection with [Name of Project] of the City of Tulsa.

DATED, this ____ day of _____, 20__.

Name printed: _____

Name Printed: _____

[ADD ADDITIONAL LINES FOR ADDITIONAL MEMBERS]



PUBLIC WORKS
Engineering

DATE:
Month Day, Year

{Company Name}
(Address)
{City, State Zip}

RE: City of Tulsa Project No. {number and Title}

TO WHOM IT MAY CONCERN:

Please be advised that the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, a municipal corporation, has contracted for the construction of a public improvement project as referenced above, and that pursuant to Title 68 § Section 1356 (10), sales on tangible personal property or services to be wholly consumed in the performance of such projects are exempt from Oklahoma and City of Tulsa Sales Tax when:

“...Any person making purchases on behalf of such subdivision or agency of the state shall certify, in writing, on the copy of the invoice or sales ticket to be retained by the vendor that the purchases are made for and on behalf of such subdivision or agency of this state and set out the name of such public subdivision or agency.”

This letter of authorization expires **{Date.}**

A photostatic copy of this letter may be considered as the original.

CITY OF TULSA

Paul D. Zachary, P.E.
Deputy Director

cc: Ryan McKaskle

HAS:JR:kt

STED-1

EXTENSION OF TIME REQUEST
(to be submitted with each partial payment application)

DATE: _____

CONTRACTOR: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CONTRACT NO.: _____

PROJECT NO.: _____

DESCRIPTION: _____

ARE THERE ANY CHANGES TO YOUR SBE UTILIZATION? _____ YES _____ NO

IF YES, GIVE REASON AND ATTACH CHANGE REQUEST FORM (SBE-4): _____

EXTENSION OF CONTRACT TIME REQUIRED: _____ YES _____ NO

TOTAL OF EXTENSION TIME REQUESTED: _____

IF YES GIVE REASON: _____

SIGNATURE - CONTRACTOR

CONSULTING ENGINEER OR DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS STAFF RECOMMENDATIONS

APPROVED: _____

REJECTED: _____

REASON: _____

SIGNATURE

DATE

ACTION WILL BE TAKEN WITHIN 30 DAYS FROM RECEIPT OF REQUEST

ETR-1

CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION OF PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS TULSA, OKLAHOMA

THIS CONTRACT made and entered into the ____ day of _____, 2025, by and between ____ an (list state) _____ (Corporation or Limited Liability Company) of _____, Oklahoma, hereinafter called the "CONTRACTOR", and the CITY OF TULSA - TULSA, OKLAHOMA, a Municipal Corporation, herein called the "CITY."

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, the City has caused to be prepared the necessary Drawings, Specifications, and other Contract Documents for the public improvements herein described, and has invited bids for the construction thereof in accordance with the terms of this Contract, all of which is hereby designated as:

PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01 STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING

WHEREAS, the Contractor, in response to the Advertisement, has submitted to the City, in the manner and at the time specified, a sealed bid in accordance with the terms of this Contract; and,

WHEREAS, the City, in the manner prescribed by law, has publicly opened, examined, and canvassed the bids submitted, and has determined the above named Contractor to be the lowest responsible bidder for the work and has duly awarded to the said Contractor therefore, for the sum or sums named in the Contractor's bid, a copy of the Bid Form being attached to and made a part of this Contract;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the compensation to be paid to the Contractor and of the mutual agreements and covenants herein contained, the parties to this Contract have agreed and hereby agree, as follows:

ARTICLE I. That the Contractor shall (a) furnish all tools, equipment, supplies, superintendent, transportation, and other construction accessories, services, and facilities; (b) furnish all materials, supplies, and equipment specified and required to be incorporated in and form a permanent part of the completed work; (c) provide and perform all necessary labor; and (d) in a good, substantial, and workmanlike manner and in accordance with the requirements, stipulations, provisions, and conditions of the Contract as defined in the attached General Provisions, sometimes referred to as General Conditions in the Contract Documents, said documents forming the Contract and being as fully a part thereof as if repeated verbatim herein, perform, execute, construct, and complete all work included in and covered by the City's official award of this Contract to the said Contractor, such award being based on the acceptance by the City of the Contractor's bid, or part thereof, as follows:

**PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01 STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS
BUILDING**

ARTICLE II. That the City shall pay to the Contractor for performance of the work embraced in this Contract, and the Contractor will accept as full compensation therefor, the sum (subject to adjustment as provided by the Contract) of _____ AND /100 Dollars (\$_____) for all work covered by and included in the Contract award and designated in the foregoing Article I; payments therefore to be made in cash or its equivalent, in the manner provided in the General Provisions.

ARTICLE III. That the Contractor shall start work within ten (10) days following the date stipulated in a written order from the City to proceed with the work to be performed hereunder, and shall complete the work within the number of consecutive calendar days after the authorized starting date, as stipulated below:

All Work Completed: 730 calendar days

ARTICLE IV. The sworn, notarized statement below shall be signed and notarized before this Contract will become effective.

ARTICLE V. Prior to submitting a final payment request, the Contractor shall furnish a lien waiver certifying that all subcontractors and suppliers have been paid.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have hereto set their hands and seals,

this _____ day of _____, 2025.

CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA
a municipal corporation

By: _____

ATTEST: (S E A L)

Mayor

Date: _____

City Clerk

Date: _____

APPROVED:

APPROVED:

City Attorney

Date: _____

Director

Date: _____

CONTRACTOR

By: _____

Printed Name _____

Title

Date: _____

Title

Date: _____

ATTEST:

Corporate Secretary

(S E A L)

AFFIDAVIT

STATE OF _____)
)ss
COUNTY OF _____)

_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, on oath says that (s)he is the agent authorized by the Contractor to submit the above Contract to the CITY OF TULSA, Tulsa, Oklahoma.

Signature

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 2025.

NOTARY PUBLIC

My Commission Expires:

_____, _____

PERFORMANCE BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS: That we, the undersigned, _____, (hereinafter called the Contractor"), duly authorized by law to do business as a construction contractor in the State of Oklahoma, and _____ (hereinafter called the "Surety"), a corporation organized under the laws of the State of _____, and authorized to transact business in the State of Oklahoma, as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto the City of Tulsa, Tulsa, Oklahoma (hereinafter called the "City"), in the penal sum of

_____ Dollars (\$) in lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made unto the said City, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents, as follows:

THE CONDITION OF THE FOREGOING OBLIGATION IS SUCH THAT, WHEREAS, the Contractor has on the _____ day of _____, _____, entered into a written contract with the City of Tulsa, Tulsa, Oklahoma, for furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment, and transportation necessary for:

Project No. SW-23-01-01 Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

NOW, THEREFORE, if said Contractor shall well and truly perform and complete said project in accordance with said Contract, Advertisement for Bids, General Conditions, Instructions to Bidders, Bid Form, Plans and Specifications, and related documents, shall comply with all the requirements of the laws of the State of Oklahoma; shall pay as they become due all just claims for work or labor performed and materials furnished in connection with said contract, and shall defend, indemnify and save harmless said City against any and all liens, encumbrances, damages, claims, demands, expenses, costs and charges of every kind, including patent infringement claims except as otherwise provided in said specifications and other contract documents, arising out of or in relation to the performance of said work and the provisions of said Contract, then these presents shall be void; otherwise, they shall remain in full force and effect.

This obligation is made for the use of said City and also for the use and benefit of all persons who may perform work or labor, or furnish any material in the execution of said Contract, and may be sued on thereby in the name of the City.

The Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder, or the specifications accompanying same, shall in any way affect its obligation on this bond; and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition of the terms of the Contract, or to the work or to the specifications.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its duly authorized officers, and the said Surety has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its attorney-in-fact, duly authorized so to do, the day and year first above written.

CONTRACTOR (Principal)

BY:

ATTEST: (S E A L)

Date: _____ Title: _____

Date: _____ Attorney In Fact ** _____
Date: _____ Surety (S E A L)

**This date shall match the notarized certificate on the Power-of-Attorney

(Accompany this Bond with Power Of Attorney)

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

Date: _____
City Attorney

Date: _____
City Clerk

STATUTORY BOND

WHEREAS, the undersigned _____
has entered into a certain contract dated the _____ day of _____, _____,
designated as **Project No. SW-23-01-01 Stormwater Maintenance and
Operations Building** for the construction of certain public improvements Consisting
of _____ to be situated and
constructed on and through the property described in said Contract, including all of
the work mentioned and described in said Contract, and to be performed by the
undersigned strictly and punctually in accordance with the terms, conditions,
drawings and specifications thereof, on file in the office of the office of the City
Clerk.

NOW, THEREFORE, KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS: That
_____, as Principal, and _____

_____, a Corporation organized under the laws of the
State of _____, and authorized to transact business in the State of
Oklahoma, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the State of Oklahoma in the
penal _____ sum _____ of

Dollars (\$) _____) in lawful money of the United States, for the payment
of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our successors, and
assigns, jointly and severally firmly by these presents.

NOW, THEREFORE, if the said Principal shall fail or neglect to pay all indebtedness
incurred by Principal or sub-contractors of said principal who perform work in the
performance of such contract, for labor and materials and repairs to and parts for
equipment used and consumed in the performance of said contract within thirty (30)
days after the same becomes due and payable, the person, firm or corporation
entitled thereto may sue and recover on this bond the amount so due and unpaid.

The Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that no change,
extension of time, alteration, or addition to the terms of the contract or to the work to
be performed thereunder, or the specifications accompanying the same, shall in any
way affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such
change, extension of time, alteration, or addition to the terms of the contract or to the
specifications.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its duly authorized officers, and the said Surety has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its attorney-in-fact, duly authorized so to do, the day and year first above written.

CONTRACTOR (Principal)

BY:

ATTEST: (S E A L)

Date: _____
Title: _____

Date: _____
Title: _____

Date: _____
Attorney-In-Fact **

Date: _____
Surety (S E A L)

**This date shall match the date of the notarized certificate on the Power-of- Attorney.

(Accompany this Bond with Power-Of-Attorney)

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

Date: _____
City Attorney

Date: _____
City Clerk

MAINTENANCE BOND

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS:

That _____, as Principal,
and _____, a
corporation organized under the laws of the State of _____ and authorized to transact
business in the State of Oklahoma, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the City of
Tulsa in the Penal sum of

_____ Dollars (\$ _____) in lawful money of the United States of America for the
payment of which, well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves and each of us, our
heirs executors, administrators, trustees, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally,
firmly by these presents.

The condition of this obligation is such that:

WHEREAS, said Principal entered into a written contract with the City of Tulsa,
Oklahoma dated _____, _____, for

Project No. SW-23-01-01 Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

all in compliance with the drawings and specifications therefore, made a part of said
Contract and on file in the office of the City Clerk, Tulsa, Oklahoma.

NOW, THEREFORE, if said Principal shall pay or cause to be paid to the City of Tulsa,
Oklahoma, all damage, loss, and expense which may result by reason of defective
materials and/or workmanship in connection with said work, occurring within a period of
one (1) year for all projects, from and after acceptance of said project by the City of
Tulsa, Oklahoma; and if Principal shall pay or cause to be paid all labor and materials,
including the prime contractor and all subcontractors; and if principal shall save and
hold the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, harmless from all damages, loss, and expense
occasioned by or resulting from any failure whatsoever of said Principal, then this
obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to be and remain in full force and effect.

It is further expressly agreed and understood by the parties hereto that no changes or
alterations in said Contract and no deviations from the plan or mode of procedure herein
fixed shall have the effect of releasing the sureties, or any of them, from the obligation
of this Bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its duly authorized officers, and the said Surety has caused these presents to be executed in its name and its corporate seal to be hereunto affixed by its attorney-in-fact, duly authorized so to do, the day and year first above written.

CONTRACTOR (Principal)

BY:

ATTEST: (S E A L)

Title: _____ Date: _____ Title: _____ Date: _____

Attorney-In-Fact _____ ** Surety (S E A L) _____ Date: _____

** This date shall match the date of the notarized certificate on the Power of Attorney

(Accompany this Bond with Power-Of-Attorney)

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

City Attorney _____ Date: _____

City Clerk _____ Date: _____

AFFIDAVIT OF CLAIMANT

STATE OF _____

COUNTY OF _____

The undersigned, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, on oath says that this contract is true and correct. Affiant further states that the work, services or materials will be completed or supplied in accordance with the contract, plans, specifications, orders or requests furnished the affiant. Affiant further states that (s)he has made no payment directly or indirectly of money or any other thing of value to any elected official, officer or employee of the City of Tulsa or any public trust of which the City is a beneficiary to obtain or procure the contract or purchase order.

By: _____

Signature

Name: _____

Company: _____

Title: _____

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.

Notary Public

My Commission Expires: _____

Notary Commission Number: _____

AC-1

060619

GENERAL CONDITIONS

GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT

GC-1. SCOPE:

The Contract stipulations, which follow, are general in scope and may refer to conditions that will not be encountered in the performance of the work included in this Contract, and which are not applicable thereto. Any requirements, provisions, or other stipulations of these General Conditions, which pertain to a nonexistent condition, and are not applicable to the work to be performed hereunder, shall have no meaning in the Contract.

The specifications and drawings are intended to supplement, but not necessarily duplicate each other. Together they constitute one (1) complete set of specifications and drawings, so that any work exhibited in the one and not in the other shall be executed just as if it had been set forth in both, in order that the work shall be completed according to the complete design or designs as decided and determined by the Engineer.

Should anything be omitted from the specifications and drawings which is necessary to a clear understanding of the work, or should it appear various instructions are in conflict, then the Contractor shall request written clarification from the Engineer before proceeding with the construction affected by such omissions or discrepancies.

GC-2. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS :

It is understood and agreed that the Notice to Bidders, Instructions to Bidders, Proposal, Contract, Statutory Bond, Performance Bond, Maintenance Bond, Power of Attorney, Certificates of Insurance, General Conditions, Specifications, Drawings, Addenda, and duly authorized Change Orders, together with any and all supplementary drawings furnished by the Engineer as and when required to make clear and to define in greater detail the intent of the contract, drawings, and specifications, other drawings, specifications, and engineering data furnished by the Contractor (when accepted by the Engineer), and instructions furnished by manufacturers of equipment for the installation thereof, are each and all included in this Contract, and the work shall be done in full compliance and accord therewith.

GC-3. DEFINITIONS:

Any word, phrase, or other expression defined in this paragraph and used in these Contract Documents shall have the meaning herein given:

1. "Contract" or "Contract Documents" shall include all of the documents and drawings mentioned in Paragraph GC-2.
2. "City" shall mean the City of Tulsa, Tulsa County, Oklahoma.
3. "Contractor" shall mean the entity named and designated in the Contract who has entered into this Contract to perform the work covered thereby, and its, his, or their duly authorized agents and other legal representatives.
4. "Engineer" shall mean the Director of Engineering Services, or the Architect or Engineers who have been designated, appointed, or employed by the City for this project, or their duly authorized agents; such agents acting within the scope of the particular duties entrusted to them in each case.
5. "Inspector" shall mean the engineering or technical inspector or inspectors duly authorized by the Engineer, limited in each case to the particular duties entrusted to him or them.
6. "Surety" shall mean any entity that executes, as surety, the Contractor's performance bond, maintenance bond, and statutory bond securing the performance of this Contract.

7. "Drawings" shall mean and include all drawings prepared by the City as a basis for proposals; all drawings submitted by the successful bidder with his proposal and by the Contractor to the City, when and as accepted by the Engineer, and all drawings submitted by the City to the Contractor during the progress of the work as provided herein.

8. "Subcontractor" shall mean a person, firm or corporation to whom any portion of this work has been sublet by the Contractor.

9. "Work" shall mean the task to be performed, necessary for the fulfillment of this Contract.

10. "Unit Price" shall mean the cost per specified unit of measurement of work and/or material.

11. "Lump Sum" shall mean the price of an item of work including all things necessary to complete the item as shown on the drawings and specifications. Such an item is not measured in units but is defined by description.

GC-4. MODIFICATIONS AND ALTERATIONS:

In executing the Contract, the Contractor agrees that the City shall have the right to make such modifications, changes, and alterations as the City may see fit, in the extent, or plan of the Work agreed to be done or any part thereof, or in the materials to be used therein, either before or after the beginning of construction thereof, without affecting the validity of the Contract or the liability of the Sureties upon the performance of this Contract or the Statutory Bond.

Where any modification, change, or alteration increases the quantity of Work to be performed and is within the scope of a fair interpretation thereof, such increase shall be paid for according to the quantity of work actually done, either at Unit Prices included in the Contract, or in the absence of such unit, as extra Work. Modifications and alterations, which reduce the quantity of Work to be done, shall not constitute a claim for damages or for anticipated profits on Work involved in such reduction.

The Engineer shall determine, on an equitable basis, the amount of credit due the City for Work not performed as a result of modifications or alterations authorized hereunder; where the value of the omitted Work is not fixed by Unit Prices in the Contract; allowance to the Contractor for any actual loss incurred in connection with the purchase, delivery, and subsequent disposal of materials and equipment required for use on the Work as actually built; and any other adjustment of the Contract amount where the method to be used in making such adjustment is not clearly defined in the Contract Documents. In this respect, such determination shall be final and binding only when approved by the Director of Public Works.

GC-5. DRAWINGS TO BE FURNISHED BY CONTRACTOR:

The Contractor shall furnish all shop, fabrication, assembly, foundation, and other drawings required by the specifications; drawings of equipment and devices, offered by the Contractor for review by the Engineer, shall be in sufficient detail to show adequately the construction and operation thereof; drawings of essential details of any change in design or construction proposed for consideration of the Engineer, by the Contractor in lieu of the design or arrangement required by the Contract or any item of extra work thereunder. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer, the required number, of each copy of such drawing for the Engineer's review. After review by the Engineer, all such drawings shall become a part of the Contract Documents and the work or equipment shown thereby shall be in conformity therewith unless otherwise required by the City.

The Engineer's check and acceptance of drawings submitted by the Contractor will be for, and will cover, only general conformity to the plans and specifications and will not constitute a blanket acceptance of all dimensions, quantities, and details of the material or equipment shown; nor shall

such acceptance relieve the Contractor of his responsibility for errors contained in such drawings.

GC-6. CONTRACTOR'S BUSINESS ADDRESS:

The business address of the Contractor given in the bid or proposal upon which this Contract is founded is hereby designated as the place to which all notices, letters, and other communications to the Contractor may be mailed or delivered. The delivery at the above named address or depositing in any mailbox regularly maintained by the Post Office, of any notice, letter, or other communication to the Contractor, shall be deemed sufficient service thereof upon the Contractor and the date of said service shall be the date of such delivery or mailing. Such address may be changed at any time by a written instrument, executed by the Contractor and delivered to the Engineer. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to preclude or render inoperative the service of any notice, letter, or communication upon the Contractor personally.

GC-7. CONTRACTOR'S RISK AND RESPONSIBILITY:

The performance of the Contract and the Work is at the risk of the Contractor until the final acceptance thereof and payment therefor. The Contractor shall take all responsibility of the Work, and shall bear all losses resulting because of the amount or character of the Work, or because the nature of the land in or on which the Work is done is different from what is assumed or expected, or on account of the weather, floods, fire, windstorm, or other actions of the elements, or any cause or causes, whatsoever, for which the City is not responsible. If the Work or any part or parts thereof is destroyed or damaged from any of the aforesaid causes, the Contractor, at his own cost or expense, shall restore the same or remedy the damage.

The Contractor shall, in a good and workmanlike manner, perform all Work and furnish all supplies and materials, machinery, equipment, facilities, and means, except as otherwise expressly specified, necessary or proper to perform and complete all Work required by the Contract within the time herein specified, in accordance with the provisions of these Contract Documents and Drawings of the Work covered by this Contract, and any and all supplemental Drawings. The Contractor shall observe, comply with, and be subject to all terms, conditions, requirements and limitations of the Contract, and shall complete the entire Work to the satisfaction of the Engineer and of the City.

GC-8. ASSIGNMENT AND SUBLETTING OF CONTRACT:

The Contractor shall give his personal attention to the fulfillment of this Contract, and shall not let, assign or transfer it or his right, title, or interest in any part thereof, by attorney or otherwise, or sublet any part of the Work to any other person without the prior consent of the City in writing.

Should any Subcontractor fail to perform his work in a satisfactory manner the Contractor upon notice from the City shall immediately terminate his subcontract. The Contractor shall be fully responsible to the City for the acts and omissions of his Subcontractor, and of persons either directly or indirectly employed by his Subcontractor. Nothing contained in these Contract Documents shall create any contractual relation between any Subcontractor and the City.

GC-9. CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIVES:

The Contractor shall designate a person on the Work site to represent him when absent from the Work site.

GC-10. CONTRACTOR AND HIS EMPLOYEES:

The Contractor shall employ competent foremen, experienced mechanics, and others skilled in the Work in this Contract; and shall promptly discharge any and all incompetent or otherwise unsatisfactory employees. Contractor's employees directly employed to perform the Work shall not be paid less than the prevailing minimum wage scale.

Necessary sanitary conveniences for the use of employees on the job site, properly secluded from public observation, shall be provided and maintained by the Contractor. The construction

and location of the facility and disposal of the contents shall comply with all laws of the City and State, relating to health and sanitation regulations.

GC-11. CONTRACTOR'S RIGHT OF PROTEST:

If the Contractor considers any work demanded of him to be outside the requirements of the Contract, or considers any record or ruling of the Engineers to be unfair, he shall, immediately upon such Work being demanded or such record or ruling being made, ask for written instructions or decisions, whereupon he shall proceed without delay to perform the Work or to conform to the record or ruling; and within ten (10) days after the date of receipt of written instructions or decision, he shall file a written protest with the Engineer, stating clearly and in detail the basis of his objections. Except for such protests and objections made of record in the manner herein specified and within the time stated, the records, rulings, or decisions of the Engineer shall be final and conclusive.

GC-12. INSURANCE AND BONDS:

The CONTRACTOR (and any subcontractors) shall carry and keep in force during this Contract, policies of insurance issued by an insurer authorized to transact business in Oklahoma in minimum amounts as set forth below or as required by the laws of the State of Oklahoma. The Contractor shall also furnish an Owner's Protective Policy in the same amounts naming the City of Tulsa as the assured, issued by the same insurance company as the Contractor's liability coverage and indemnifying the City of Tulsa against any and all actions, claims, judgments or demands arising from injuries of any kind and character sustained by any person or persons because of work performed by the Contractor.

General Liability Insurance with a bodily injury and property damage combined single limit of not less than \$1,000,000.00 for each occurrence.

Employer's Liability and Workmen's Compensation in the amounts as required by law.

The Contractor shall provide proof of such coverage:

- (a) By providing Certificate(s) of Insurance prior to the execution of this contract; and
- (b) By submitting updated Certificate(s) of Insurance with each and every subsequent request for payment. The Certificate(s) should show that the policies are current and should be dated within 30 days of the payment request.

The Contractor shall not cause any required insurance policy to be cancelled or permit it to lapse. If the Contractor cancels, allows to lapse, fails to renew or in any way fails to keep any required insurance policy in effect, the City will suspend all progress and/or final payments for the project until the required insurance is obtained. Further, a Contractor who fails to keep required insurance policies in effect may be deemed by the City to be in breach of contract, ineligible to bid on future projects, and/or ineligible to engage in any new contracts.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Statutory Bond for the protection of laborers, mechanics, and material men in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Performance Bond in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Maintenance Bond in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

Prior to doing blasting, the Contractor shall furnish a Certificate of Insurance, which shall certify that any damage caused by blasting is within the coverage of the Contractor's liability insurance to the full limits thereof.

All bonds and insurance must be executed by a company licensed to do business in the State of Oklahoma and must be acceptable to the City.

GC-13. TIME FOR COMPLETION:

For all projects that will impact the public, a public meeting is required before any work is started. The City of Tulsa requires a minimum of 25 days' notice to get the public meeting scheduled and invitations mailed out.

The Work shall commence within ten (10) days from and after the date of a written work order from the City. The Contractor agrees that the Work shall be performed regularly, diligently, and uninterruptedly at a uniform rate of progress so as to ensure completion within the number of days after the day on which the work order is issued. If the Contractor fails to complete all Work within the time specified, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for breach of contract, the Sum of **Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** for each and every calendar day beyond the date on which the work was to be completed. The said amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would sustain in such event. It is expressly understood and agreed that the said time for completion of the work described herein is a reasonable time for the completion of same.

The Contractor shall commence work within twenty-four (24) hours of traffic control devices being established at the project location. If the Contractor fails to commence work within twenty-four (24) hours of traffic control devices being established at the project location, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages the sum of **One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000.00)** per lane for each day of failure to commence work after the specified time set forth. The amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damage the City would sustain in such event.

The Contractor will be required to provide a full-time, onsite English-speaking superintendent for this Work for direct contact with City and coordination of Subcontractors. A working foreman is not acceptable as a project superintendent. The superintendent shall be required to be present at the Work site whenever the Contractor or Subcontractors are performing Work. The superintendent shall be a representative of the Contractor with the authority to make decisions. If the Contractor fails to provide a non-working superintendent on a day when Work is being performed, the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of contract, the sum of **One Thousand Dollars (\$1,000.00)** for each and every calendar day it fails to provide a non-working superintendent at the Work site. This amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would sustain in such an event.

It is further agreed that time is of the essence as to each and every portion of this Contract and the specifications wherein a definite and certain time is fixed for the performance of any act whatsoever; and where under the Contract an allowance of additional time for completion of any Work is made, the new time fixed by such extension shall be of the essence of this Contract.

Failure to complete the Work within the specified time, as set forth in the Contract, may be grounds for disqualification for future consideration for contracts with the City of Tulsa.

Final acceptance of the Work is defined as the completion of the Work and the Contractor moving off the project site. No defined or additional Work is needed.

Contract Evaluation forms will be compiled by City staff upon completion of Work to provide a record of the Contractor's performance for use in subsequent projects.

GC-14. EXTENSIONS OF TIME:

Should the Contractor be delayed in the final completion of the Work by any act or neglect of the City or Engineer, or any employee of either, or strikes, injunctions, fire, or other causes outside of and beyond the control of the Contractor and which, in the opinion of the Engineer, could have been neither anticipated nor avoided, then an extension of time sufficient to compensate for the delay, as determined by the Engineer, shall be granted by the City, provided, however, that the Contractor shall give the City and the Engineer notice in writing of the cause of each delay on the "Extension of Time Request" form enclosed in these documents, and agrees that any such claim shall be fully compensated for by an extension of time to complete performance of the Work.

The Contractor shall submit the "Extension of Time Request" form with each partial payment application. Failure to submit the Extension of Time Request with a partial payment application shall constitute a complete waiver of any claim for time extension for the period covered by the partial payment.

Extensions of time will not be granted for delays caused by unsuitable ground conditions, inadequate construction force, or the failure of the Contractor to place orders for the equipment or materials a sufficient time in advance to ensure delivery when needed. Any extension of time granted by the City shall not release the Contractor and Surety herein from the payment of liquidated damages as provided in the General Conditions of this Contract, for a period of time not included in the original Contract or the time extension, as herein provided.

In no event shall the City be liable or responsible to the Contractor, Surety, or any person for or on account of any stoppage or delay of Work herein provided for by injunction or any other kind of legal, equitable proceedings, or from or by or on account of any delay from any other cause whatsoever.

GC-15. ENGINEER'S POWERS AND DUTIES:

The Engineer will provide general administration of the Contract, including performance of the functions hereinafter described.

The Engineer will be the City's representative during construction and until final payment. The Engineer will have authority to act on behalf of the City to the extent provided herein unless otherwise modified by written instrument, which will be shown to the Contractor. The Engineer will advise and consult with the City, and all of the City's instructions to the Contractor shall be issued through the Engineer. Nothing contained in the Contract documents shall create any contractual relationship between the Engineer and the Contractor.

The Engineer shall at all times have access to the Work as provided elsewhere herein. The Engineer will make periodic visits to the Work site to familiarize himself generally with the progress and quality of the Work and to determine in general whether the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract. On the basis of his on-site observations as Engineer, he will keep the City informed of the progress of the Work and will endeavor to guard the City against defects and deficiencies in the Work caused by the Contractor. The Engineer will not be responsible for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, or for safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work and will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract. Based on such observations and the Contractor's applications for payment, the Engineer will determine the amounts owing to the Contractor and will issue certificates for payment in amounts as provided elsewhere herein.

The Engineer may provide one or more full-time project representatives to assist the Engineer in carrying out his responsibilities at the Work site. The duties, responsibilities and limitations of

authority of the Engineer as the City's representative during construction as set forth herein will not be modified or extended without written consent of the City, the Contractor and the Engineer.

The Engineer will not be responsible for the acts or omissions of the Contractor, any Subcontractors, or any of their agents or employees, or any other persons performing any of the Work.

The Engineer shall decide the meaning and intent of any portion of the specifications, and of any plans or Drawings, where the same are found to be obscure or be in dispute; he shall have the right to correct any errors or omissions therein when such corrections are necessary to further the intent of said specifications, plans or Drawings; the action of such correction shall be effective from the date that the Engineer gives due notice thereof.

Any differences or conflicts, which may arise between the Contractor and other contractors with the City in regard to their work, shall be adjusted as determined by the Engineer.

Neither the Engineer's authority to act under this article or elsewhere in the Contract nor any decision made by the Engineer in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to any duty or responsibility of the Engineer to the Contractor, any Subcontractor, any manufacturer, fabricator, supplier or distributor, or any of their agents or employees or any other person performing any of the Work.

Whenever in the Contract the terms "as ordered", "as directed", "as required", "as allowed", or terms of like effect or import are used, or the adjectives "reasonable", "suitable", "acceptable", "proper", or "satisfactory" or adjectives of like effect or import are used, to describe requirements, direction, review or judgement of the Engineer as to the Work, it is intended that such requirement, direction, review, or judgement will be solely to evaluate the Work for compliance with the Contract (unless there is a specific statement indicating otherwise). The use of any such term or adjective never indicates that the Engineer shall have authority to supervise or direct performance of the Work or authority to undertake responsibility contrary to the provisions of this General Condition.

GC-16. CITY'S RIGHT OF INSPECTION:

The City shall appoint or employ such engineers or inspectors as the City may deem proper to inspect the materials furnished and the work performed, and to determine whether said materials are furnished and work is performed in accordance with the Drawings and specifications therefor. The Contractor shall furnish all reasonable aid and assistance required by the Engineer, or by the Inspectors, for the proper inspection and examination of the Work and all parts thereof, even to the extent of uncovering or taking out portions of finished Work. Should the Work thus exposed or examined prove satisfactory, the uncovering or removing and the replacing of the covering or the making good of the parts removed shall be paid for by the City; however, should the Work exposed or examined prove unsatisfactory, the uncovering, taking out, replacing, and making good shall be at the expense of the Contractor.

Such inspection shall not relieve the Contractor of any obligation to perform said Work strictly in accordance with the Drawings and specifications or any modifications thereto as herein provided; and the Work not so constructed shall be removed and made good by the Contractor at his own expense; and free of all expense to the City, whenever so ordered by the Engineer, without reference to any previous oversight or error in inspection.

GC-17. SUSPENSION OF WORK ON NOTICE:

The Contractor shall delay or suspend the progress of the Work or any part thereof whenever he shall be so required by written order of the City or Engineer, and for such period of time as it or he shall require. Any such order of the City or Engineer shall not modify or invalidate in any way the provisions of this Contract.

GC-18. QUALITY OF WORKMANSHIP:

All workmanship shall be the best possible, both as to material and labor that could be demanded by these Contract Documents or if no specific description is given, it is understood that the best quality is required.

GC-19. SATURDAY, SUNDAY, HOLIDAY, AND NIGHT WORK:

No work shall be done between the hours of 6:00 p.m. and 8:00 a.m., nor on Saturday, Sunday, or legal holidays without the written approval or permission of the Engineer in each case, except such work as may be necessary for the proper care, maintenance, and protection of work already done, or of equipment, or in the case of an emergency.

GC-20. LAWS AND ORDINANCES:

The Contractor shall keep himself fully informed of all existing and current regulations of the City, county, state and national laws which in any way limit or control the actions or operations of those engaged upon the Work, or affecting the materials supplied to or by them. The Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all applicable ordinances, laws, and regulations; and shall protect and indemnify the City and the City's employees and agents against any claims or liability arising from or based on any violations of the same.

The contractor certifies that it and all of its Subcontractors to be used in the performance of the Contract are in compliance with 25 O.S. Sec. 1313 and participate in the Status Verification System. The Status Verification System is defined in 25 O. S. Sec. 1312 and includes but is not limited to the free Employee Verification Program (E-Verify) available at www.dhs.gov/E-Verify.

The Contractor shall take the necessary actions to ensure its facilities are in compliance with the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). It is understood that the program of the Contractor is not a program or activity of the City. The Contractor agrees that its program or activity will comply with the requirements of the ADA. Any costs of such compliance will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Under no circumstances will Contractor conduct any activity which it deems to not be in compliance with the ADA.

GC-21. TAXES AND PERMITS:

Unless otherwise specified in these Contract Documents, the Contractor shall pay all sales, use, and other taxes that are lawfully assessed against the City or Contractor in connection with the Work included in this Contract and shall obtain all licenses, permits, and inspections required for the Work. Contractor shall comply with all zoning ordinances of the City, as provided in the Tulsa Zoning Code, Title 42 Tulsa Revised Ordinances and conform with all zoning requirements established by the Tulsa Metropolitan Area Planning Commission and the Board of Adjustment. Contractor can call the Indian Nations Council of Governments (INCOG) at (918) 584-7526, to determine if any zoning requirements must be met.

GC-22. PROTECTION OF PROPERTY:

The protection of City, state, and government monuments, street signs, and other City property is of prime importance, and if the same be damaged, destroyed, or removed, they shall be repaired, replaced, or paid for by the Contractor.

Work occurring within secured facilities will require the Contractor to obtain City of Tulsa issued ID badges for all employees and subcontractors requiring facility gate access. The Contractor will be responsible for all coordination with City Security as necessary to process background checks and issue badges. The City of Tulsa has the right to deny access to any individual based on evaluation of background check.

GC-23. PATENT RIGHTS:

All fees for any patented invention, article, or arrangement that is based upon, or in any manner

connected with the construction, erection, or maintenance of the Work or any part thereof embraced in the Contract and these specifications, shall be included in the price stipulated in the Contract for said Work. The Contractor shall protect and hold harmless the City against any and all demands of such fees or claims.

GC-24. DEFENSE OF SUITS:

In case any action at law or suit in equity is brought against the City or any employer, officer, or agent thereof, for or on account of the failure, omission or neglect of the Contractor to do and perform any of the covenants, acts, matters, or things required by this Contract to be done or performed, or for injury or damage caused by negligence or willful act of the Contractor or his Subcontractors or his or their agents, or in connection with any claim or claims based on the lawful demands of Subcontractors, workmen, material men, or suppliers of machinery and parts thereof, equipment, power tools, and supplies incurred in the fulfillment of this Contract, the Contractor shall indemnify and save harmless the City and its employees, officers, and agents, and the Engineer and any employees, officers and agents thereof, of and from all losses, damages, costs, expenses, judgements, or decrees whatsoever arising out of such action or suit that may be brought without requiring said parties to give any notice thereof.

The City may suspend payments of any sum due or to become due for work done on this Contract until such claims, suits, actions, or proceedings are final and liability has been determined. The amount of such damages or liability shall be deducted from sums due or to become due on this Contract. The City will retain the sums mentioned above until the Contractor furnishes evidence that satisfactory settlement has been made. Any action taken by the City shall not excuse the Contractor for failure to perform this Contract or bar the City from legal action to recover from the Contractor the amount of damages or liability suffered in excess of the amount retained.

The Contractor shall furnish the City with satisfactory evidence upon demand that all persons who have done work on the Contract or furnished materials for the Contract have been paid in full. If such evidence is not furnished, the amount necessary to pay the lawful claims may be retained until such evidence is furnished, or if such evidence is not furnished, the City may apply any sums retained to valid claims and charge the amounts disbursed, including the costs of any action that may be necessary to prove or disprove the claims against the Contractor.

GC-25. REMOVAL OF CONDEMNED MATERIALS AND STRUCTURES:

The Contractor shall remove from the site of the Work, without delay, all rejected and condemned materials or structures of any kind brought to or incorporated in the Work, and upon his failure to do so, or to make satisfactory progress in so doing, within forty-eight (48) hours after the service of a written notice from the Engineer ordering such removal, the condemned material or structures may be removed by the City and the cost of such removal be taken out of the money that may be due or may become due the Contractor by virtue of this Contract. No such rejected or condemned material shall again be offered for use by the Contractor under this or any other Contract under this project.

GC-26. EXTRA WORK:

If a modification increases the amount of the Work, and the added Work or any part thereof is of a type and character which can properly and fairly be classified under one or more Unit Price items of the Bid Form, then the added Work or part thereof shall be paid for according to the amount actually done and at the applicable Unit Price. Otherwise, such work shall be paid for as hereafter provided.

Claims for extra work will not be paid unless the City authorized the work covered by such claims in writing. The Contractor shall not have the right to take action in court to recover for extra work unless the claim is based upon a written order from the City. Payments for extra Work will be based on agreed lump sums or on agreed Unit Prices whenever the City and the Contractor agree upon such prices before the extra Work is started.

For the purpose of determining whether proposed extra work will be authorized, or for determining the payment method for extra work, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer, upon request, a detailed cost estimate for proposed extra work. The estimate shall show itemized quantities and charges for all elements of direct cost. The cost shall include only those extra costs for labor and materials expended in direct performance of the extra work and may include:

- (a) **Labor.** For all labor and foremen in direct charge of the specific operations, the Contractor shall receive the rate of wage (or scale) agreed upon in writing before beginning work for each and every hour that said labor and foremen are actually engaged in such work. An amount equal to fifteen (15) percent of the sum of the above items will also be paid the Contractor.
- (b) **Bond, Insurance, and Tax.** For property damage, liability, and workmen's compensation insurance premiums, unemployment insurance contributions and social security taxes on the force account work, the Contractor shall receive the actual cost, to which cost no percentage will be added. The Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence of the rate or rates paid for such bond, insurance, and tax.
- (c) **Materials.** For materials accepted by the Engineer and used, the Contractor shall receive the actual cost of such materials delivered on the Work site, including transportation charges paid by him (exclusive of machinery rentals as hereinafter set forth), to which cost ten (10) percent will be added.
- (d) **Equipment.** For any machinery or special equipment (other than small tools), including fuel, lubricants and transportation costs, the use of which has been authorized by the Engineer, the Contractor shall receive the rental rates agreed upon in writing before such work is begun for the actual time that such equipment is in operations on the Work, as provided in the ODOT Subsection 109.04 (b3), to which rental sum no percentage will be added.
- (e) **Miscellaneous.** No additional allowance will be made for general superintendence, the use of small tools, or other costs for which no specific allowance is herein provided.

The form on which field cost records are kept, the construction methods and the type and quantity of equipment used shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

Construction equipment which the Contractor has on the Work site and which is of a type and size suitable for use in performing the extra Work shall be used. The hourly rental charges for equipment, including all insurance, taxes, fuel, and operating costs, shall not exceed twelve (12) percent of the latest applicable Associated Equipment Distributors published monthly rental rates and shall apply to only the actual time the equipment is used in performing the extra Work.

When extra Work requires the use of equipment which the Contractor does not have on the Work site, the Contractor shall obtain the approval of the Engineer before renting or otherwise acquiring additional equipment. The rental charges for the additional equipment shall not exceed the latest applicable Associated Equipment Distributors published rental rates.

The Contractor shall file with the Engineer, certified lists in duplicate, of any equipment and the schedule of pay rates for common and semi-skilled labor and operators of various classes which are intended to be used in performing the Work covered by this Contract. These rates shall be subject to the review of the Engineer. This information will be used by the Engineer for computation of extra work as mentioned above; however, if the Contractor fails to file these lists with the Engineer prior to starting any Work covered by this Contract, then the Engineer's computation shall be based on average wages and rates paid on City work.

GC-27. PAYMENT FOR CONTRACTOR'S PLANT AND MISCELLANEOUS TEMPORARY WORK:

For providing plant, tools, and equipment, and for furnishing, erecting, maintaining, and removing scaffolding and construction plant, construction roads, camps, sanitary conveniences, temporary water supply, trestles, dewatering and other temporary works, the Contractor shall receive no direct payment, but compensation for them shall be considered as having been included in the prices stipulated for the appropriate items.

GC-28. BASIS OF PAYMENT FOR ITEMS OF WORK:

The Contractor shall be paid for all Work performed under the Contract based on the Engineer's computations of as-built quantities and the Contractor's Unit Price or Lump Sum bid per item. This payment shall be full compensation for furnishing all supplies, materials, tools, equipment, transportation, and labor required to do the Work; for all loss or damage, because of the nature of the work, the action of the elements or any unforeseen obstruction or difficulty which may be encountered in the performance of the Work, and for which payment is not specifically provided; for all expense incurred by or because of any suspension or discontinuance of all or any part of the Work; and for faithfully completing the Contract according to the Drawings and specifications and requirements of the Engineer.

GC-29. PAYMENTS:

(1) **Partial:** If the work is progressing in good and workmanlike manner and if the Contractor is faithfully carrying out the terms of this Contract, approximate estimates of the work done shall be made by the Engineers between the first and fifteenth of each calendar month, including labor actually performed and supplies or materials actually used or incorporated in the Work, and an allowance will be made for acceptable materials satisfactorily delivered, stored and secured on the site of the Work in such amount as can be incorporated in the Work within a reasonable time. The City shall have a lien as owner on any materials stored on the site of the Work.

Each partial estimate for payment shall contain or have attached an affidavit in the form found in this book of specifications, as required by law.

The Contractor shall submit with each partial pay estimate a complete list of vendors and suppliers with itemized purchases and invoices from each vendor. Each list shall contain the name of the contractor or Subcontractor ordering the materials or supplies, and the specific use or placement of each of the materials purchased by the City of Tulsa for this project in accordance with Article IIB of the Contract. At the direction of the Contractor, the City of Tulsa will withhold retainage in the amount of 5% on materials and supplies to be purchased under the terms of this Contract.

Each month that work is performed for which payment is due, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer an application for such payment, provided said payment is not less than \$1,000.00, and, if required, receipts or other vouchers from Subcontractors showing his payments to them shall be submitted.

Each estimate shall be of the approximate value of all work performed and materials in place or delivered to the Work site, determined as aforesaid from the beginning of this contract to the date fixed for the current estimate, from which shall be deducted five percent (5%) or a lesser amount approved by the City, and, in addition thereto, all previous payments and all other sums withheld under the foregoing provisions of this Contract, the remainder to become due and payable; after the estimate has been reviewed and signed by the Engineer the City shall pay the estimate in the regular manner in the amount determined as due unless it shall be known by the City that there is good reason under the terms of this Contract for withholding same.

When the Contractor has completed Work constituting more than fifty percent (50%) of the total Contract amount, the retainage will continue at two and one-half percent (2.5%) for the balance of the remaining work; provided, however, that the City or its duly authorized representative has determined that satisfactory progress is being made and upon approval by the Surety.

The Contractor may withdraw any part or the whole of the amount which has been retained from partial payment to the Contractor pursuant to the terms of Contract, upon depositing with or delivery to the City:

- (1) United States Treasury Bonds, United States Treasury Notes, United States Treasury bills, or
- (2) General Obligation Bonds of the State of Oklahoma, or
- (3) Certificates of Deposit from a state or national bank having its principal office in the State of Oklahoma.

No retained amount shall be withdrawn which would represent an amount in excess of the market value of the securities at the time of deposit or of the par value of such securities, whichever is lower.

All partial estimates are subject to correction in the final estimate.

(2) Final Payment:

When this contract, in the opinion of the Engineer, shall be completely performed on the part of the Contractor, the Engineer shall proceed with all reasonable diligence to measure up the Work and shall make out the final estimate for the same, and shall, except for cause herein specified, give to the Contractor, within thirty (30) days after receiving said certificate, an order on the City for the balance found to be due, excepting therefrom such sum or sums as may be lawfully retained under any of the provisions of the Contract; PROVIDED, that nothing herein contained shall be construed to affect the rights of the City hereby reserved to reject the whole or any portion of the aforesaid Work should the said estimate and certificate be found or known to be inconsistent with the terms of this Contract or otherwise improperly given; PROVIDED, that if, in case after the work hereunder has been accepted and final payment made, it shall be discovered that any part of the Contract has not been fully performed or has been done in an improper or faulty manner, the Contractor shall immediately remedy such defect, or, in case of neglect to do so within a reasonable time after notice thereof, shall be liable for and shall pay to the City the cost of remedying such defect or a sum equal to the damages sustained thereby, as the City shall elect, and the acceptance of and final payment for the Work shall be no bar to suit on any bond against any principal or principals, or Surety or Sureties, or both, given for the due performance of the Contract, or for the recovery of such cost or the equivalent of such damage.

The City will pay to the Contractor interest at the rate of three-fourths percent (3/4%) per month on the final payment due the Contractor. For lump sum contracts, the interest shall commence thirty (30) days after the Work under the Contract has been completed and accepted and all required material certifications and other documentation required by the Contract have been furnished the City by the Contractor and shall run until the date when the final payment or estimate is tendered to the Contractor. For contracts bid by Unit Prices, the interest will commence sixty (60) days after the above conditions are satisfied. When contract quantities or the final payment amount is in dispute, the interest-bearing period will be suspended until the conclusion and settlement of the dispute.

GC-30. CONTRACTOR REIMBURSEMENT FOR SURETY BOND:

For contracts of \$1,000,000.00 or more, the Contractor may receive reimbursement for the cost of the surety bonds after issuance of a work order. To receive reimbursement, the Contractor shall submit a standard partial payment form and affidavit, and a copy of the surety bond invoice. The final partial pay estimate will be reduced by the amount paid for surety bond reimbursement.

GC-31. RELEASE OF LIABILITY AND ACCEPTANCE:

The acceptance by the Contractor of the final payment shall operate as, and shall be a release to

the City and every employee, officer and agent thereof, from all claims and liability to the Contractor for anything done or furnished for or relating to the Work, or for any act or neglect of the City or of any person relating to or affecting the Work, and, following such acceptance, no person, firm, or corporation other than the signer of this Contract as Contractor, will have any interest hereunder, and no claim shall be made or be valid, and neither the City nor any employees, officers, or agents thereof shall be liable or be held to pay any money, except as herein provided.

It shall be the duty of the Engineer to determine when the Work is completed and the Contract fulfilled, and to recommend its acceptance by the City. The Work herein specified to be performed shall not be considered finally accepted until the City has accepted all the Work.

GC-32. RIGHT OF CITY TO TERMINATE CONTRACT:

If the Work to be done under this Contract shall be abandoned by the Contractor, or if this Contract shall be assigned by him otherwise than as herein provided, or if the Contractor should be adjudged bankrupt, or if a general assignment of his assets be made for the benefit of his creditors, or if a receiver should be appointed for the Contractor or any of his property; or if at any time the Engineer shall certify in writing to the City that the performance of the Work under this Contract is being unnecessarily delayed, or that the Contractor is executing the same in bad faith or otherwise not in accordance with the terms of the Contract; or if the work be not substantially completed within the time named for its completion, or within the time to which such completion date may be extended, then the City may serve written notice upon the Contractor and his Surety of said City's intention to terminate this Contract, and unless within five (5) days after service of such notice upon the Contractor, a satisfactory arrangement is made for the continuance of the Contract, this

Contract shall cease and terminate. In the event of such termination, the City shall immediately serve notice upon the Surety and Contractor, and the Surety shall have the right to take over and complete the Work, provided, however, that if the Surety does not commence performance thereof within fifteen (15) days from the date of said notice of termination, the City may take over the Work and perform same to completion, by Contract or otherwise, for the account and at the expense of the Contractor, and the Contractor and his Surety shall be liable to the City for any and all excess cost sustained by the City by reason of such performance and completion. In such event the City may take possession of and utilize in completing the Work, all such materials, equipment, tools, and plants as may be on the site of the Work and necessary therefor. The Contractor shall not receive any other payment under the Contract until said Work is wholly finished, at which time, if the unpaid balance of the amount to be paid under the Contract shall exceed the expense incurred by the City in finishing the Work as aforesaid, the amount of the excess shall be paid to the Contractor, but if such expense shall exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the City.

GC-33. ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS AND FEES:

Cash Improvements - In the event the improvements are to be paid for in cash, the costs and fees for publication, engineering, filing, recording, abstracting, acquisition of easements, flushings, and pipe testing, shall be paid by the City unless otherwise provided for in these Contract Documents.

Assessment Improvements: In the event the improvements are to be paid for by the issuance of special assessment bonds, the costs and fees for publication, engineering, filing, recording, abstracting, acquisition of easements, flushing, pipe testing, and other authorized costs shall be added to the contract price and paid for in the same manner as the other Work included in this Contract. The Contractor shall pay the City the amount of said charges before the execution and delivery of the special assessment bonds or other payments. If the Contractor fails, neglects, or refuses to pay said charges within thirty (30) days after the bonds are ready for delivery, he shall pay the City interest at the rate of seven percent (7%) per annum and shall be liable for same in a civil suit. The Contractor shall pay the pipe testing fees directly to the testing laboratory.

GC-34. PAYMENT OR ACCEPTANCE NOT A WAIVER BY CITY:

Neither acceptance by the City or the Engineer or any employee of either nor any order by City for the payment of money, or the payment thereof, nor any taking of possession by City, nor the granting of any extension of time, shall operate as a waiver of any rights or powers of the City hereunder, and in the event that after the Work hereunder has been accepted and final payment made, it should be discovered that any part of this Contract has not been fully performed, or has been done in a faulty or improper manner, the Contractor shall immediately remedy such defect, or in the event of neglect to do so within a reasonable time after notice thereof, shall be liable for and shall pay to City the cost of remedying such defect, or a sum equal to the damage caused thereby, as City may elect. The acceptance of the Work or final payment therefor shall be no bar to suit against the Contractor or Surety, or both.

GC-35. CONTRACTOR'S OBLIGATION AFTER ACCEPTANCE:

Contractor further agrees, without cost other than is specially provided for in this Contract, at any and all times during one (1) year next following the completion and final acceptance of the Work embraced in this Contract, without notice from City, to repair or rework any work that fails to function properly due to defective material or workmanship and to indemnify, save harmless and defend the City from any and all suits and actions of every description brought against City for, or on account of injuries or damages alleged to have been received or sustained by any party or parties by reasons of, or arising out of the failure of Contractor to repair or rework any work where such failures have occurred, which said injuries or damages are alleged to have been received or incurred within one (1) year from the final acceptance of the Work hereunder, and to pay any and all judgements that might be rendered against City in any suits and actions, together with such expenses or attorney fees expended or incurred by City in the defense thereof, and Contractor hereby expressly waives any notice that might by law be required to be given to them by City of any defect, break, settling, or failure or of any other condition that might be the cause of injury or damage to any person on account of which a claim or suit might be made or filed against City, or a judgement taken for damages against City. It is expressly agreed that the acceptance of the Work by City shall constitute no bar against any person injured or damaged by the failure of the Contractor to perform all of his covenants and agreements hereunder from maintaining an action against the Contractor, or against City from enforcing its rights against the Contractor hereunder.

GC-36. NOTICES:

Any notices or other communications hereunder may be given to Contractor at the address listed in the Proposal, to the Surety at the office of the Attorney-in-Fact signing the bond or at Surety's home office address on file with the Insurance Commissioner of the State of Oklahoma, and to City in care of the Deputy Director of Public Works, or at such other place as may be designated in writing. The delivery to such address, or depositing in any mailbox regularly maintained by the Post Office, of any notice, letter, or other communication to the Contractor, shall be deemed sufficient service thereof, and the date of said service shall be the date of such delivery or mailing.

GC-37. RELATION TO OTHER CONTRACTORS:

Nothing herein contained and nothing marked upon the Drawings shall be interpreted as giving the Contractor exclusive occupancy of the territory or right-of-way provided. The City and its employees, officers, and agents for any just purpose, and other contractors of the City for any purpose required by their respective contracts, may enter upon or cross this territory or occupy portions of it or take materials therefrom as directed or permitted. When two or more contracts are being executed at one time on the same or adjacent land in such manner that the work on one contract may interfere with the work on another, the Engineers shall decide which contractor shall cease work and which shall continue, or whether the work on both contracts shall progress at the same time and in what manner. When the territory of one contract is the necessary or convenient means of access for the transportation or movement of men, machines, or appliances for the execution of another contract, such privilege of access or any other reasonable privilege may be granted by the Engineers to the contractor desiring it, to the extent, amount, in the manner and at the time permitted. Any decision regarding the method or time of conducting the work or the use of the territory shall not be made the basis of claims for delay or damage except as

otherwise stipulated. The Contractor shall not cause any unnecessary hindrance or delay to any other contractors on the premises, and shall bear all damages done to the work of such other contractors by him or by his employees.

GC-38. PARTIAL OCCUPANCY AND USE:

The City, upon advance written notification to the Contractor, shall have the right to occupy and use any completed or partially completed portions of the Work site when such occupancy and use are in the City's best interest, notwithstanding completion of the entire project.

Such partial occupancy and use shall be upon the following terms:

- a. The Engineer shall make an inspection of the portion or portions of the Work concerned, and report to the City his findings as to the acceptability and completeness of the Work. The Engineer's report shall include a list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment.
- b. The City, upon acceptance of the Engineer's report, shall give written notice to the Contractor of the City's intention to occupy and use said portions of the Work site. The City's notice shall include a copy of the Engineer's report, shall clearly identify the portions of the Work site to be occupied and used, and shall establish the date of said occupancy and use.
- c. From the date thus established, the City shall assume all responsibilities for operation, maintenance, and the furnishing of water, gas, and electrical power for the portions of the Work site thus occupied and used. The City shall have the right to exclude the Contractor from those portions of the Work site but shall provide the Contractor reasonable access to complete or correct necessary items of Work.
- d. The one-year guarantee required by the General Conditions shall not begin until completion and final acceptance of the entire project, except as to any items of mechanical or electrical equipment such as pumps, blowers, process equipment, instrumentation, controls, metering equipment, heating, and ventilating equipment and similar items having movable or operable components, and any of which are thus used by the City. For said equipment, the one-year warranty shall start from the date established in the written notice from the City.
- e. Occupancy or use of any space in the Work site shall not constitute acceptance of Work not performed in accordance with the Contract, nor relieve the Contractor of liability to perform any Work required by the Contract but not completed at the time of said occupancy and use.
- f. The Contractor shall not be held responsible for normal wear and tear or damage resulting from said occupancy, except to the extent that such damage is covered by the one-year guarantee.
- g. The partial occupancy and use of any portions of the Work site by the City shall not constitute grounds for claims by the Contractor for release of any amounts retained from payments under the provisions of the Contract. The retained amounts will not be due until completion of the entire project for final acceptance and final payment, as set forth in the General Conditions.

(Published in the Tulsa World

June 13, 2021)

Ordinance No. 24616

AN ORDINANCE AMENDING TITLE 11, TULSA REVISED ORDINANCES, ENTITLED "PUBLIC WORKS DEPARTMENT" BY AMENDING CHAPTER 10, ENTITLED "STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION" BY AMENDING SECTION 1000 AND SECTION 1001; PROVIDING FOR SEVERABILITY; REPEALING ALL ORDINANCES OR PARTS OF ORDINANCES IN CONFLICT HERewith AND ESTABLISHING AN EFFECTIVE DATE.

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF TULSA:

Section 1. Amendment of Title 11, Chapter 10. That Title 11, Chapter 10, Tulsa Revised Ordinances, entitled "Standard Specifications for Highway Construction" be and the same is hereby amended and shall recite in its entirety as follows:

"CHAPTER 10. STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR HIGHWAY CONSTRUCTION

Section 1000. Adoption of State Standard Specifications.

Section 1001. Additions. Revisions. Deletions and Exceptions.

SECTION 1000. ADOPTION OF STATE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS.

That certain document, a bound copy and electronic copy of which has been filed in the Office of the City Clerk of the City of Tulsa, being marked and designated as Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, 2019 Edition, as published by the Oklahoma Department of Transportation, is hereby adopted as the standard specifications for public improvement projects for the City of Tulsa with the additions, revisions, deletions and exceptions as set forth in SECTION 1001 of this chapter.

SECTION 1001. ADDITIONS, REVISIONS, DELETIONS AND EXCEPTIONS.

1001.A. The following definitions, listed as numbered in the 2019 Edition of the Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, are hereby revised and amended for all sections of this chapter as follows:

101.03. Abbreviations and Acronyms. In Table 101:1, add the following abbreviations and expressions:

- ADA - American with Disabilities Act, excluding Chapter 500
- ADA – Adjusted Daily Average, when used in Chapter 500
- ADAAG - American with Disability Act Accessibility Guidelines
- COT - City of Tulsa

- PROWAG – Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines
- 101.05. Definitions.** Add the following subsections:
- **“101.05.CY. City of Tulsa (COT).** The City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, a municipal corporation acting by and through its duly authorized officers and agents.”
 - **“101.05.CZ. Non-Collusive Bidding Certificate.** Replace all references to ‘Non-Collusive Bidding Certificate’ with ‘Non-Collusion Affidavit’.”
 - **“101.05.DA. Qualified Products List (QPL).** All references to ‘ODOT Traffic Engineering Division Qualified Products List (QPL)’ or ‘QPL’ shall mean ‘the City of Tulsa, Traffic Engineering Division Approved Products List’.”
 - **“101.05.DB. State Construction Engineer.** The City Engineer of the City of Tulsa or authorized designee.”
- 101.05.A. Acceptance Date.** Delete section.
- 101.05.V. Commission.** Replace definition with “The City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, a municipal corporation acting by and through its duly authorized officers and agents.”
- 101.05.Y. Contract.** Replace definition with “The written agreement between the City of Tulsa and the Contractor setting forth obligations of the parties thereunder, including, but not limited to, the performance of the work, the furnishing of labor and materials, and the basis of payment.
- The Contract includes the Notice to Bidders, Proposal, Contract Form, all Contract Bonds, Specifications, Special Specifications, Special Provisions, all Plans, Work Orders and Change Orders that are required to complete the construction of the work in an acceptable manner, including authorized extensions.”
- 101.05.AG. Department.** Replace definition with “The City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, a municipal corporation acting by and through its duly authorized officers and agents.”
- 101.05.AI. Director.** Replace definition with “The Director of the Engineering Services Department or the Director of any successor department which has the responsibility for general engineering services for the City of Tulsa.”
- 101.05.AL. Engineer.** Replace definition with “The City Engineer of the City of Tulsa or authorized designee.”
- 101.05.AO. FAST Guide.** Replace definition and all references to “FAST Guide” with “City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications.”
- 101.05. AT. Holiday.** Replace definition with “Days declared to be holidays for regular Civil Service employees of the City of Tulsa.”
- 101.05.AV. Inspector.** Replace definition with “The City of Tulsa’s authorized representative assigned to inspect the work.”

101.05.BF. Materials Division. Replace definition with “The Director of the Engineering Services Department or the Director of any successor department which has the responsibility for general engineering services for the City of Tulsa.”

101.05.BG. Materials Engineer. Replace definition with “The City Engineer of the City of Tulsa or authorized designee.”

101.05.CC. Right-of-Way. Replace definition with “Right-of-Way or ROW shall mean the surface, the airspace above ground, and the area below the surface of any public street, highway, parkway, lane, path, alley, sidewalk, boulevard, drive, bridge, tunnel, stormwater drainage system, easement, park, or similar property in which the City of Tulsa now or hereafter holds a property interest and/or a maintenance responsibility which, consistent with the purposes for which it was granted or dedicated, may be used to install, operate and maintain facilities.”

101.05.CD.(16). Sidewalk/Bicycle Path. Add the following sentence to the existing definition: “Refer to the Revised Ordinances of the City of Tulsa, Title 37 – Tulsa Traffic Code, Chapter 1 and Chapter 10 for definition of bicycle.”

101.05.CH. State. Replace definition with “The City of Tulsa, Oklahoma, a municipal corporation acting by and through its duly authorized officers and agents.”

101.05.CS. Traffic Engineering Division. Replace definition with “The City of Tulsa Traffic Engineering Division or any successor division which has the responsibility for traffic engineering services for the City of Tulsa.”

1001.B. City of Tulsa exceptions and amendments to the following provisions, listed as numbered in the 2019 Edition of the Standard Specifications for Highway Construction, are hereby revised, amended and described as follows:

102.01. Pre-Qualification. Delete text of section, and replace with “The City of Tulsa requires General / Prime Contractors to be Prequalified according to Title 11, Chapter 11 of the Revised Ordinances of the City of Tulsa.”

102.04. Refusal of Proposals. At the end of the bulleted list, add the following bulleted list item: “The bidder has failed to comply with Small Business Enterprise requirements of a previous City of Tulsa contract.”

102.06. Examination of Plans, Specifications, Special Provisions, and the Work Site. Replace the fourth paragraph with “The City of Tulsa may have boring logs and subsurface reports used in determining design criteria. Bidders may request to inspect these documents, relevant to the currently advertised project, by contacting the Contract Administrator at the following address during normal business hours:

City of Tulsa
Engineering Services Department

2317 S Jackson Ave
Tulsa, OK 74107

102.08. Nonresponsive Proposals. At the end of the bulleted list, add the following bulleted statement: "The bidder does not properly comply with Small Business Enterprise requirements in accordance with the Proposal Forms."

102.10. Delivery of Proposal. Delete text of section, and replace with the following:

"Each bid Proposal shall be completed electronically on the electronic media provided, then printed, signed and submitted along with the electronic media and the complete bound copy of the contract documents or as instructed in the Notice to Bidders. In the event of a discrepancy between the pricing on the electronic media and the hard copy of a Proposal, the hard copy pricing will govern. If an electronic media is not provided, and the bid Proposal is manual, the bid Proposal shall be submitted in ink. The written words shall govern over the figures. Erroneous entries shall be lined out, initialed by the bidder, and the correct entry inserted. The unit price bid must cover all expense for furnishing the labor, materials, tools, equipment, and apparatus of every description to construct, erect, and furnish all work required by and in conformance with the Plans and Specifications.

Each bid shall be enclosed in a sealed envelope addressed to

City Clerk's Office
The City of Tulsa
One Technology Center
175 E. 2nd Street, Suite 260
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74103

or as otherwise instructed in the Notice to Bidders, and identified on the outside with the words:

'PROJECT NO. _____.

Pre-qualification Certificate Number _____.

All addenda to the contract documents shall accompany the bid when submitted.

Any bid received more than ninety-six (96) hours excluding Saturdays, Sundays and holidays before the time set for the opening of bids, or any bid received after the time set for opening of bids, shall be considered "non-responsive" and shall be returned unopened to the bidder."

102.13. Public Opening of Proposals. Delete text of section, and replace with "Proposals shall be publicly opened and read on the date and at the hour and place set forth in the advertisement and Notice to Bidders in the manner established by the City of Tulsa."

102.16. Non-Collusive Bidding Certification.

- Replace the Non-Collusion Bidding Certification form with the following City of Tulsa Non-Collusion Affidavit form:

NON-COLLUSION AFFIDAVIT	
STATE OF _____) COUNTY OF _____) ss:	
_____, of lawful age, being first duly sworn, says that:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I am the duly authorized agent of the bidder submitting the competitive bid associated with this sworn statement for the purpose of certifying facts pertaining to the existence of collusion among bidders and between bidders and municipal officers or employees, as well as facts pertaining to the giving or offering of things of value to governmental personnel in return for special consideration in the letting of any contract pursuant to the bid; 2. I am fully aware of the facts and circumstances surrounding the making of the bid and have been personally and directly involved in the proceedings leading to the submission of such bid; 3. Neither the bidder nor anyone subject to the bidder's direction or control has been a party: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. to any collusion among bidders in restraint of freedom of competition by agreement to bid at a fixed price or to refrain from bidding; b. to any collusion with any municipal official or employee as to quantity, quality or price in the prospective contract, or as to any other terms of such prospective contract; nor c. in any discussions between bidders and any municipal official concerning exchange of money or other things of value for special consideration in the letting of a contract. 4. If awarded the contract, neither the bidder nor anyone subject to the bidder's direction or control has paid, given or donated or agreed to pay, give or donate to any officer or employee of the City of Tulsa or of any public trust where the City of Tulsa is a beneficiary, any money or other thing of value, either directly or indirectly, in procuring the contract for which the bid is submitted. 	
BIDDER (Company Name) _____	Signed _____ Title _____
SUBSCRIBED and SWORN to before me this _____ day of _____, 20____.	
MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: _____ COMMISSION NO.: _____	NOTARY PUBLIC _____

- In the fourth paragraph, revise the phrase proceeding the bulleted list to recite, "The following do not constitute collusion within the scope of the Non-Collusion Affidavit:"

103.07. Execution of Contract. Revise the first paragraph as follows:

- Revise the first sentence to recite "The Contract shall be signed in black or blue ink by the individual, all members/partners of a general partnership or joint venture, a general partner of a limited partnership, a duly authorized officer of the corporation, or a duly authorized manager, managing member or authorized officer of the limited liability company, to whom the Contract was awarded.
- In the last sentence delete "The Department will execute the Contract", and replace with "The Department will endeavor to execute the Contract, in proper form."

103.08. Approval of Contract. Delete text of section, and replace with “The Contract shall not be binding upon the City of Tulsa until it has been executed and approved in the manner set forth in the Tulsa City Charter.”

104.01. Purpose of Contract. After the first two (2) sentences, delete the rest of the section.

104.07. Maintenance of Traffic. Revise the first sentence to recite "Keep all roads, sidewalks, and bicycle paths open to all traffic as shown on the plans."

105.17. Project Completion and Acceptance. At the beginning of the section add, “This section does not apply to Infrastructure Development Projects (IPDs). For IDPs, refer to Title 35 of the Revised Ordinances of the City of Tulsa.”

105.17.B. Project Completion. In the first sentence of the last paragraph, replace “The Resident Engineer will” with “The Resident Engineer may”.

105.17.C. Final Acceptance. Delete text of section, and replace with “ Final Acceptance is the date on which the Request for Action (RFA) for final payment has been signed by the Mayor of the City of Tulsa.”

106.01.A. Material Acceptance. At the end of this section, add the following paragraph: “For conflicts among ODOT Standard Specifications, ODOT Standard Materials Test Methods, and City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications, the City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications shall take precedence.”

106.01.B. Buy America. Delete Section.

106.04.D. Distribution of Certifications. Delete text of section, and replace with “The Contractor shall submit certifications to the Engineer with another copy mailed to:

Field Engineering
City of Tulsa
Engineering Services Department
2317 S Jackson Ave
Tulsa, OK 74107”

106.05. Plant Inspection. In this section, replace all references to “Oklahoma City” with “Tulsa.”

106.11. Guarantees and Warranties. In the first paragraph replace “six months” with “twelve months” and “six-month” with “twelve-month”.

107.01. Laws, Rules, and Regulations to be Observed. At the end of this section add the following:

“The contractor shall certify that it and all of its Subcontractors to be used in the performance of the Contract are in compliance with 25 O.S. Sec. 1313 and participate in the Status Verification System. The Status Verification System is defined in 25 O.S. Sec. 1312 and

includes but is not limited to the free Employee Verification Program (E-Verify) available at www.dhs.gov/E-Verify.

The Contractor shall take the necessary actions to ensure its facilities are in compliance with the requirements of the Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA). It is understood that the Contractor's internal ADA program is not a program or activity of the City of Tulsa. The Contractor agrees that its program or activity will comply with the requirements of the ADA. Any costs of such compliance will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Under no circumstances will Contractor conduct any activity which is not in compliance with the ADA."

107.06. Barriers, Barricades, and Warning Signs. Before the first paragraph, add "In this section, the term "traffic" includes vehicular, pedestrian and bicycle traffic."

107.14. No Waiver of Legal Rights. Delete section.

107.19. Regulated Floodways. At the end of the section, add "The Contractor shall also follow the requirements of Title 11A of the Revised Ordinances of the City of Tulsa."

107.20. Stormwater Management. After the first sentence, add "The Contractor shall also follow the requirements of Title 11A of the Revised Ordinances of the City of Tulsa."

108.01. Subletting of Contract. Delete the last sentence of the first paragraph.

108.02. Notice to Proceed and Preconstruction Conference. Delete the first sentence in the second paragraph, and replace with "After the Contractor and Resident Engineer hold a preconstruction conference, the Contractor shall receive a Notice to Proceed before the start of construction."

108.07.B.(1) Extensions for Adverse Weather. After the first sentence in the second paragraph, add "Extensions of Contract Time will not be granted if conditions exist such that the Contractor could work at least 4 hours."

108.07.B.(3). Winter Time Suspension. Delete section.

108.08. Incentive/Disincentive for Early/Late Completion. Delete section.

108.09. Failure to Complete on Time.

- In the first sentence, delete "in accordance with Table 108:1, "Schedule of Liquidated Damages.""
- Delete Table 108:1.

109.04.B.(3). Equipment.

- In first paragraph, delete the last two sentences, and replace with the following:

"The Department will determine the maximum allowable rate as listed in the most current edition of the *Heavy Construction Costs with RSMeans data*, published by The Gordian

Group. The Department will calculate the hourly rental rate in accordance with the following equation:

$$H = [(M \times R) / 176] + O$$

Where

H = Hourly rental rate,
M = Monthly rental rate,
R = City cost index / 100, and
O = Hourly operating cost.

- In the second paragraph, delete the last two sentences.

109.04.B.(4)(f). Employee Fringe Benefits. Delete text of section, and replace with "The City of Tulsa will not pay for the additional costs of employee fringe benefits incurred by the Contractor for labor during the period the disputed work was in progress."

109.06. Progress Payments. Revise the first sentence of the second paragraph to recite "The Resident Engineer will make monthly progressive estimates."

109.08. Final Payment. Delete last paragraph, and replace with "If the Contractor does not sign and return the Final Estimate within 90 days of receipt, the Engineer may start action to administratively close the project."

109.10.A. Recoverable Costs. Delete section.

201.04.A. Clearing. Delete the fourth sentence of the first paragraph, and replace with "Remove branches that overhang the roadway to at least 20 ft [6 m] above the road surface and at least 35 ft [11 m] above the road surface at traffic signals."

201.06. Basis of Payment. In this section, delete all references to "Lump Sum", and replace with "Square Yard [Square Meter]".

202.04. Construction Methods. In the second paragraph delete, "If the contract requires ground disturbance greater than one acre total."

202.04.D.(2). Mandatory Sources Designated on the Plans. Delete sentence, and replace with "If the Plans show the source of selective subgrade topping, excavate the material at the specified source, haul to the specified location, and place."

202.05.A. Unclassified Excavation. Delete the second sentence of the first paragraph.

209.04. Construction Methods. At the end of the second paragraph, add the following: "Clean inlet and outlet channels within the right-of-way."

220.04.C. Contractor Responsibilities for SWPPP. In the first sentence of the second paragraph, replace “recommended” with “required”.

220.04.H.(3). Earthwork Operations. Delete first paragraph, and replace with “Protect excavation or embankment slopes as construction progresses with placement of temporary (e.g. seeding, mulching, soil retention blankets, or other approved soil stability), or permanent (e.g. seeding, sprigging, or sodding) erosion control measures. Obtain approval from the Resident Engineer in the preconstruction schedule for any increase or decrease in the amount of the area exposed by construction operations. No exposed area shall remain unprotected without being stabilized. Install temporary or permanent erosion or sediment control measures on excavation or embankment slopes as work progresses in vertical increments of not more than 10 ft [3 m] unless otherwise directed by the Resident Engineer.”

220.05. Method of Measurement. In the bulleted list, delete the sixth bulleted item.

221.01. Description. In the last sentence, replace “OOPDES” with “OPDES”.

221.02. D. Temporary Sediment Filter. Revise the first sentence to recite “Provide fiber log for Type I-A and I-B sediment filter in accordance with Subsection 221.02.H, ‘Temporary Fiber Log.’ Provide material for Type I-C sediment filter in accordance with Subsection 221.02.C, ‘Temporary Silt Fence.’”

228.02. Materials. For the first item listed in the table, delete “Nylon”.

230.01. Description. Delete “Bermuda”.

230.02. Materials. Delete all references to “Bermuda” from this section.

231.04.C.(1). Planting Seasons and Weather Restrictions. In the first sentence of the second paragraph, replace “suspend” with “Suspend”.

317.04.A. Mix Design and Proportioning. In the bulleted list, insert “•” before “Compressive strength at 7 days”.

317.04.F. Acceptance.

- Delete the first paragraph.
- At the end of the second paragraph add “Failure to reach strength between 600 psi [4,150 kPa] and 2,000 psi [13,800 kPa] will result in rejection of the work.”

317.06. Basis of Payment. Delete the third and fourth paragraphs and Table 317:1. Replace with the following: “ODOT Acceptance and Strength Pay Factors shall not be used. Failure to meet criteria in Subsection 317.04.F will result in rejection of the work.”

401.04.A.(1). Surface Elevation and Smoothness. Delete paragraph, and replace with “Refer to the City of Tulsa Standard Specifications for Pavement and Bridge Deck Smoothness.”

403.04.A.(2). Seasonal Limitations. Delete paragraph and Table 403:1, and replace with “The Department will evaluate claims for extension of Contract Time in accordance with Subsection 108.07, when temperature and weather limitations in Table 403:2 are not met.”

405.04.G. Spreading and Finishing. In the last paragraph, replace “ODOT Bridge Division” with “Department”.

406.04.F. Weather and Seasonal Limitations. Delete the second paragraph.

410.04.E. Aggregate Application Rate. Delete the third and fourth sentences, and replace with “The Contractor shall overlay the deficient area at no additional cost to the Department.”

410.05. Method of Measurement. Delete text of section, and replace with “The Resident Engineer will measure completed Micro Surfacing by the square yard [square meter].”

410.06. Basis of Payment. Delete all Pay Items and Pay Units in the table and replace with the following Pay Item and Pay Unit: “MICRO SURFACING, Square Yard [Square Meter]”.

411.03.C. Pavers. After the first paragraph add the following paragraph and Table 411.03.C:1. “Pavers shall be capable of placing a minimum paving width in one (1) lift as shown in Table 411.03.C:1. Longitudinal joints in the surface layer shall correspond with the locations indicated in Table 411.03.C:1.”

Table 411.03.C:1 Minimum Paving Widths		
Roadway Classification	Minimum Paving Width	Location of Longitudinal Joints
Arterials	one (1) full lane width	At edges of traffic lanes
Non-Arterials	one-half (½) road width	At centerline of road
Trails and bike lanes	full width of trail/bike lane	At edges of trail/bike lane

411.03.F. Material Transfer Vehicle.

- In the fourth paragraph, replace “Bridge Division” with “Department”.
- In the seventh paragraph, replace “500 ton [450 metric ton]” with “100 ton [90 metric ton]”.

411.04. Construction Methods. At the beginning of this section, add the following:

“Prior to paving operations, submit a paving plan indicating the sequence of paving passes, pass widths, pass thicknesses, and requested temporary street closures.

The contractor shall not drive empty or loaded trucks or equipment across newly paved areas for the construction period.”

411.04.D. Control Strip Requirements.

- Delete the first paragraph.
- In the second paragraph, replace “500 ton [450 metric ton]” with “100 ton [90 metric ton]”.
- Delete the last paragraph, and replace with “If the initial asphalt control strip produces failing results, make adjustments to production and placement procedures, and repeat the

test process for a second control strip. If required, create additional asphalt control strips on the shoulder until an acceptable mixture is produced."

411.04.I. Spreading and Finishing.

- After the second sentence in the fourth paragraph, add "Once paving begins the Contractor should have sufficient trucks available to deliver asphalt materials in a continuous operation."
- After the fourth paragraph, add the following paragraph: "A leveling or "wedge" course may be required to establish the required cross-slope for the finished overlay. Adequate transitions to side streets and driveways must be provided. Paving shall extend to the returns of all side streets. Special consideration should be given to prevent ponding at side street intersections."

411.04.J.(1). General.

- Delete the second paragraph, and replace with the following:

"Ensure longitudinal joints in the surface layer correspond with locations indicated in Table 411.03.C:1.

Transverse joints shall be kept to a minimum. At a minimum, each lane shall be continuously laid without cold joints either from intersection to intersection or a length of 500 ft."
- Delete the last sentence in the last paragraph.

411.04.K.(2). Acceptance. Delete the second sentence in the third paragraph.

411.04.K.(2).(a). Layers At Least 1½ in [38 mm] Thick.

- In the second paragraph, delete the first sentence, and replace with "Asphalt density tests for each lot will be performed at random sample locations."
- Delete Table 411:2 and the last paragraph in the section, and replace with the following:

"ODOT Pay Adjustments for Lot Density shall not be used. Failure of any sample within the lot to reach density within 92.0 to 97.0 percent of the Maximum Theoretical Density will result in rejection of the entire lot. The Contractor shall remove and replace unacceptable lots at no additional cost to the Department."

411.04.K.(2).(b). Layers Less Than 1½ in [40mm] Thick. In the second paragraph, replace "500 yd² [500 m²]" with "400 yd² [330 m²]"

411.04.N.(2).(a). Basis of Acceptance and Payment.

- In the first paragraph,
 - In the first sentence, delete "and payment";
 - After the first sentence, add the following: "The Resident Engineer may also consider other characteristics, including but not limited to, pavement smoothness."

- In the second paragraph, delete the second through the last sentence.
- Delete the fifth through the last paragraph, and replace with "ODOT pay factors for density, asphalt cement content, and air voids shall not be used. Failure to reach density of 92.0 to 97.0 percent of the Maximum Theoretical Density, asphalt cement content of +/- 0.40 of job mix formula, air voids greater than 1.5 deviation from target, or specified thickness of asphalt will result in rejection of the entire lot. The Contractor shall remove and replace unacceptable lots at no additional cost to the Department."

411.04.N.(2).(b). Resident Engineer's Acceptance Procedures. Delete the second paragraph, the bulleted list, and Table 411:4; replace with "The Resident Engineer may perform varying amounts of sampling and testing per lot in accordance with the City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications."

411.06.B.(2). Asphalt Binder Price Adjustment (ABPA). Delete the last paragraph, and replace with "ODOT will establish the Monthly Asphalt Binder Price Index each month and post the information to the ODOT website at <http://www.okladot.state.ok.us/contractadmin/pdfs/binder-index.pdf>."

414.02. Materials.

- Delete "Fly Ash" from Table.
- At the end of the section, add the following:
"Fly Ash is not allowed in any concrete mixture unless otherwise specified in the Plans or Special Provisions."

414.03.B. Placing and Finishing Equipment. After the first sentence, add the following: "If paving is not performed by a slip form paver, a hand vibrator shall be required."

414.04.R. Acceptance of Pavement. Delete text of section, and replace with the following: "ODOT pay factors shall not be used. Failure to reach the gradation specified, air content of 4.5% to 7.5%, or target strength of the mix design will result in rejection of the entire lot. Failure to provide pavement thickness equal to or greater than what is specified will result in rejection of the entire lot."

414.04.R.(a). Engineer's Acceptance Procedures. Delete text of section and Table 414:2. Replace with "Refer to City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications."

414.06. Basis of Payment. Delete the last sentence in this section.

509.06. Basis of Payment.

- Delete the second through the fifth paragraph and Table 509:7. Replace with the following: "ODOT pay factors for strength and air content shall not be used. Failure to reach the specified strength or the target air content within a deviation of 1.5% will result in rejection of the work. Check any outlying concrete cylinder breaks and air entrainment tests in accordance with ASTM E 178 Table 1, Upper 10% Significance Level."

- In the sixth paragraph, revise the first sentence to recite “If the concrete is rejected by the Engineer, the Contractor may elect to core the represented concrete at no additional cost to the Department.”

515.04.C. Sampling and Testing of Bridge Decks and Approaches. Delete the first paragraph and bulleted list. Replace with “Refer to City of Tulsa Acceptance Sampling/Testing Standard Specifications for lot size.”

515.04.D.(2). Bridge Decks and Approach Slab Surfaces.

- In the first paragraph, delete the third sentence.
- Delete sections (a), (b) and (c).
- Add the following:
 “The percentage of absorption (using test results from OHD L39 shall be less than or equal to 1.0. The depth of penetration (using test results from OHD L 40) shall be greater than or equal to 0.15 inches. If absorption and penetration requirements are not met, reapply penetrating water repellent at no additional cost to the Department until requirements are met.”

516.02.C. Casings.

- In the first sentence of the third paragraph, add the word “licensed” after “Registered Professional Engineer”.
- In the fourth paragraph, delete the second sentence, and replace with “Use permanent interior casings in accordance with ASTM A760 and AASHTO M36.”

516.04.C.(7). Concrete Acceptance. Delete the second and third sentence. Replace with the following: “ODOT pay factors for concrete strength shall not be used. Failure to reach the specified strength will result in rejection of the work.”

610.04.F. Tactile Warning Device. Delete text of section, and replace with the following:

“Install tactile warning devices in accordance with the manufacturer’s specifications and the City of Tulsa Standard Drawings. Tactile Warning Devices shall consist of Cast-In-Place Tactile Panels in accordance with 733.1, “Tactile Warning Device Material”.

Tactile panels shall be cast into the wet concrete. Surface applied products shall not be allowed. The panels shall extend the full width of the ramp or landing area and shall extend a minimum of two (2) feet in the direction of pedestrian travel. Panels shall be placed perpendicular to the direction of travel unless specifically noted otherwise or approved by the Engineer prior to installation.

All construction shall meet current ADAAG and PROWAG Guidelines.”

611.01. Description. In the first sentence, delete “, brick masonry,”.

611.02.A. General.

- Delete “Clay Brick” and “Concrete Brick” from the table of materials.

- In the second paragraph, delete “brick masonry or”.

611.04.B. Clay Brick or Concrete Brick. Delete section.

615. Sanitary Sewer Pipe Conduits. Delete section.

616. Water Pipe and Fittings. Delete section.

623. Guardrail and End Treatments. Revise the section title to recite “Guardrail, End Treatments, and Impact Attenuators”.

623.01. Description.

- In bulleted list, add the item, “Guardrail Impact Attenuators”.
- In the last sentence of the last paragraph, after “Ensure the GETs”, add “and Guardrail Impact Attenuators”.

623.04. Construction Methods. Add the following subsection:

“623.04 H. Guardrail Impact Attenuators

Ensure experienced workers fabricate and install guardrail impact attenuators as shown on the Plans.

Construct guardrail impact attenuators with certified, crash tested hardware. Ensure NCHRP 350 TL-3 certification for substituted hardware and that the product appears on the Traffic Engineering Division’s Qualified Product List (QPL). Obtain the Resident Engineer’s approval of substitutions before installation.”

623.06. Basis of Payment. Add Pay Item “(J) Guardrail Impact Attenuator” with a Pay Unit of “Each”.

624.01. Description. In the bulleted list, add the bulleted item, “Fence, Other (Like Kind).”.

624.02. Materials. In the table, add the Material, “Fence, Other (Like Kind)” with Section or Subsection of “732.10”.

624.06. Basis of Payment. Add Pay Item, “(H) Fence, Other (Like Kind)” with a Pay Unit of “Linear Foot [Meter]”.

642.06. Basis of Payment. In the table, for both Pay Items, delete the Pay Unit of “Lump Sum”, and replace with “Each”.

701.01.B. Cement Substitution. Delete text of section, Table 701:2, and Table 701:3. Replace with “Cement substitutions shall not be used in concrete mixtures.”

701.19.A. General. Controlled Low-Strength Material (CLSM). In the first sentence, delete “fly ash.”.

701.19.B. Mix Design. In the table, delete the Material, “Fly Ash”.

702.01.A. General. In the second paragraph

- Delete the first sentence, and
- In the last sentence, delete “PCC from one source (power plant) and”.

702.01.B. Requirements for Portland Cement Concrete Use. Delete section.

702.02. Slag Cement. Delete section.

702.03. Cement Kiln Dust. Delete section.

702.04. Silica Fume. Delete section.

708.04. Composition of Mixtures. In Table 708:6, under “Other Mixture Requirements”, add a row as follows:

	S2	S3	S4	S5 / RIL	S6
Asphalt Cement (for Non-Arterial pavements only) % of mix mass		≥ 5.0	≥ 6.0	≥ 6.0 / NA	

711.06.D.(1). Acrylic Emulsion Polymer. In the second sentence, after “44 percent by”, delete “weight [mass]”, and replace with “total weight of the acrylic emulsion polymer.”

719.04.A. Description. In the second sentence, after “Type III” add “, Type IV, or Type IX”.

719.05.C. Material and Application. In the first sentence, delete “baking screen enamel or”.

719.05.E. Tests. In the first sentence revise “Ensure screening enamel, stencil pastes, and process inks” to recite “Ensure stencil pastes and process inks”.

726.02. Flexible Conduits. In Table 726:3, under Nonmetallic conduits—culverts, for Corrugated Polypropylene Pipe, delete the requirement for “AASHTO M330”, and replace with “COT 215”.

732. Materials for Guardrail, Guide Posts, Bridge Rail, Miscellaneous Railing, and Fences. Add the following subsection:

“732.10 Fence, Other (Like Kind)

Provide fence, other (like kind), in accordance with contract documents.”

733. Miscellaneous Materials. Add the following subsection:

“733.1 Tactile Warning Device Material

Provide cast-in-place tactile panels to be embedded into wet concrete. Surface applied products are not allowed. The panels shall meet the size and spacing requirements shown in the plans or the City of Tulsa Standard Drawings.

The tactile panels shall be composed of cast iron or vitrified polymer composite material. The color of the tactile panels shall comply with ADAAG and PROWAG color contrast requirements. Vitrified polymer composite panels shall be yellow and conform to Federal Color No. 33538. The color shall be homogeneous throughout the product. Any variations in color shall be approved by the Engineer prior to installation.

Tactile panels shall meet current ADAAG and PROWAG Guidelines."

735.01. Sodding and Sprigging Materials. Within subsections A, B and C, delete the word "Bermuda".

735.01.B.(1). Solid Slab Sod. At the end of the first paragraph add "Nylon mesh shall not be allowed in solid slab sod."

740.01. Materials.

- Delete the first three paragraphs.
- In fourth paragraph, delete "aluminum sheet material". Replace with "louvered aluminum backplates".
- At the end of the fifth paragraph, add "Retroreflective sheeting shall be 2 inches wide and attached to the front perimeter of the backplate. Retroreflective sheeting shall be fluorescent yellow."

740.02. Finish. After "Ensure the backplate is" add "flat".

801.01. Description. Delete the second paragraph. Replace with the following:

"The contractor shall obtain the necessary permits for electrical inspection on all signal and lighting work. Electrical inspections shall include all electrical equipment, enclosures, devices, cables, conductors and raceways as defined by the NEC. High or low voltage shall be installed, maintained, connected or removed by a State of Oklahoma licensed Electrical contractor. All work shall meet the requirements of the NEC. The City of Tulsa shall reserve the right to define workmanlike manner. Proof of license shall be carried on person at all times and be available to City of Tulsa personnel upon request per Title 158- Construction Industries Board Chapter -40 Subchapter 11-2(a)(9). The Contractor shall contact City of Tulsa Traffic Operations to obtain the address needed to obtain the permit."

801.04.A. General. Replace all references to "60-cycle" with "60 hertz".

802. Electrical Conduit. Delete section.

803. Pull Boxes and Ground Boxes. Delete section.

804. Concrete Footings. Delete section.

805. Removal of Traffic Items. Delete section.

806. Poles and Mast Arms. Delete section.

807.02. Materials. In the second sentence of the second paragraph, replace “plastic” with “hardened, tamper-proof”.

807.06. Basis of Payment. In the last paragraph, replace “plastic” with “hardened, tamper-proof”.

809. Luminaires. Delete section.

810. Power Supplies. Delete section.

811. Electrical Conductors Highway Lighting. Delete section.

813.02. Materials. In the first two sentences of the first paragraph, after “(2) hardcopies” add “and one (1) electronic (pdf) copy”.

813.02.A. Structural Design.

- In the second sentence of the first paragraph, delete “corrosion-resistant (stainless or galvanized steel, or aluminum)”. Replace with “galvanized steel”.
- In the eighth paragraph, after “Provide the following luminaire ring suspensions as required by the Contract:”, add “(Only top latching systems are allowed.)”.

813.04. Construction Methods. In the first paragraph, delete the third sentence and replace with “Submit to the Resident Engineer one (1) electronic (pdf) copy and at least five (5) hardcopies per project or one (1) copy per device.”

825. Traffic Signal Controller Assembly. Delete section.

827. Solid-State Flashing Controller. Delete section.

828. Vehicle Loop Detector and Loop Detector Wire. Delete section.

830. Pedestrian Push Button. Delete section.

831. Traffic Signal Heads. Delete section.

832. Optically Programmed Adjustable Traffic Signal Heads. Delete section.

833. Traffic Signal Backplates. Delete section.

834. Electrical Conductors for Traffic Signals. Delete section.

850. Signs. Delete section.

851. Galvanized Steel Sign Posts. Delete section.

855.04.B. Application of Markings. At the end of the first paragraph, add "Remove temporary markings and reflective tabs prior to installing permanent markings."

856. Traffic Stripe (Multi-Polymer). Delete section.

858.04. Construction Methods. At the end of the second sentence of the first paragraph, delete "maker", and replace with "marker".

880.02.B.(5). Warning Lights. In the first sentence, delete "6F-70F", and replace with "6F.83".

880.05.B. Lump Sum Pay Item. At the beginning of the second paragraph, revise "If additional and compensation" to recite "If additional compensation".

***Section 2. REPEAL OF CONFLICTING ORDINANCES.** That all other ordinances or parts of ordinances in conflict herewith be and the same are now expressly repealed.*

***Section 3. SEVERABILITY.** If any section, subsection, paragraph, subparagraph, sentence, clause or phrase of this ordinance shall be declared invalid for any reason whatsoever, such decision shall not affect the remaining portions of this ordinance, which shall remain in full force and effect, and to this end the provisions of this ordinance are hereby declared to be severable.*

***Section 4. EFFECTIVE DATE.** This ordinance shall be effective on July 1, 2021.*

JUN 02 2021

ADOPTED by the Council: _____

Date


Chair of the Council

OFFICE OF THE MAYOR

Received by the Mayor: _____ at _____

Date

Time

G.T. Bynum, Mayor

By: _____

Secretary

APPROVED by the Mayor of the City of Tulsa, Oklahoma: JUN 09 2021

Date

at _____
Time



Mayor

ATTEST:





City Clerk

APPROVED:



City Attorney
OK-JMS

SPECIAL
PROVISIONS

SPECIAL PROVISION
SUPPLEMENTAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS
PROJECT NO. SW-23-01-01
STORMWATER MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS BUILDING

1. Successful Contractor shall return fully executed contract documents (including bonds and insurance) to the City of Tulsa, Contract Administration Section 175 E. 2nd Street, Ste. 261, OK 74103 within two (2) weeks after bid opening.
2. If the successful Contractor can provide proper bonds and insurance and the contract is executed, the Pre-Construction Conference for this project will be held within eight (8) weeks after bid opening.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS

In reference to Ordinance No. 24616 Adoption of State Specification for Highway Construction, Section 107.12 shall be modified as follows:

The CONTRACTOR (and any subcontractors) shall carry and keep in force during this Contract, policies of insurance issued by an insurer authorized to transact business in Oklahoma in minimum amounts as set forth below or as required by the laws of the State of Oklahoma. The CONTRACTOR shall also furnish an Owner's Protective Policy in the same amounts naming the City of Tulsa as the assured, issued by the same insurance company as the CONTRACTOR'S liability coverage and indemnifying the City of Tulsa against any and all actions, claims, judgments or demands arising from injuries of any kind and character sustained by any person or persons because of work performed by the CONTRACTOR.

General Liability Insurance with a bodily injury and property damage combined single limit of not less than \$1,000,000.00 for each occurrence.

Employer's Liability and Workmen's Compensation in the amounts as required by law.

The CONTRACTOR shall provide proof of such coverage:

- (a) By providing Certificate(s) of Insurance prior to the execution of this contract; and
- (b) By submitting updated Certificate(s) of Insurance with each and every subsequent request for payment. The Certificate(s) should show that the policies are current and should be dated within 30 days of payment request.

The CONTRACTOR shall not cause any required insurance policy to be cancelled or permit it to lapse. If the CONTRACTOR cancels, allows to lapse, fails to renew or in any way fails to keep any required insurance policy in effect, the City will suspend all progress and/or final payments for the project until the required insurance is obtained. Further, a CONTRACTOR who fails to keep required insurance policies in effect may be deemed by the City to be in breach of contract, ineligible to bid on future projects, and/or ineligible to engage in any new contracts.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Statutory Bond for the protection of laborers, mechanics, and material men in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Performance Bond in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

The Contractor shall execute and furnish a Maintenance Bond in a sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the contract price.

Prior to doing blasting, the Contractor shall furnish a Certificate of Insurance, which shall certify that any damage caused by blasting is within the coverage of the Contractor's liability insurance to the full limits thereof.

All bonds and insurance must be executed by a company licensed to do business in the State of Oklahoma and must be acceptable to the City.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS GENERAL

1. Work Days: All work to be completed within **730 calendar days** for the Base Bid.
2. No work shall be done between the hours of 6:00 p.m. and 8:00 a.m., nor on Saturday, Sunday, or legal holidays without the prior written approval or permission of the Engineer in each case, except such work as may be necessary for the proper care, maintenance, and protection of work already done, or of equipment, or in the case of an emergency.
3. Traffic Control: All work shall be done in cooperation with the City to establish, install, maintain and operate complete, adequate and safe traffic control during the entire construction period. Barricades, signs, lights, flags and all other traffic control devices shall meet the requirements and specifications of the Standard Drawings entitled "Typical Applications of Traffic Control Devices" and shall be approved by the Traffic Engineer of the City of Tulsa. Two-way traffic shall be maintained at all times, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. All contractors shall contact the City of Tulsa Traffic Engineering Section before removing or replacing traffic devices, detector loops and street signs. A traffic plan must be submitted for any temporary street closure at least 2 working days prior to planned closing.
4. Contractor shall provide an acceptable 10' straightedge for this Project. All transverse joints shall be straight edged and approved by the Engineer. Surface elevations will meet ODOT 401.04 and all other contract requirements.
5. The Engineer may do quality assurance testing in addition to that performed by the Contractor. The Engineer or a testing laboratory designated by the Engineer will do any testing for quality assurance. The City will pay all costs of quality assurance.
6. Full depth sawing of patches is required. This area to be removed shall be marked by the Contractor under the direction of the Engineer. The Contractor will provide personnel and equipment for marking of the patches as directed by the Engineer. Cost of full depth sawing shall be included in bid item for patching areas.
7. Areas to be patched shall be delineated in a straight-line geometric pattern. When completed, the patch shall be level and provide a smooth riding surface. Portland Cement Concrete patches will be protected from all traffic for a minimum period of 24 hours before removal of protective devices. No open excavations will be left overnight.
8. All asphalt patch work will require that asphalt rollers and an asphalt laydown machine be available for use on the job as directed by the Engineer.

9. Contractor will be required to employ the use of an Automatic Grade Referencing System. The equipment shall be capable of accurately and automatically establishing grades along each edge of the machine by referencing the existing pavement by means of a ski or joint matching shoe, or from an independent grade control. Minimum length of ski shall be 40'.
10. Prior to application of tack coat, the street shall be blown clean with compressed air to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
11. The tack coat must be uniformly distributed and adequately cured prior to beginning the overlay.
12. Contractor shall be responsible for cleanup and/or removal of any excessive over spray of any tack coat material to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
13. Debris from routing of cracks and cold milling shall be swept and vacuumed from the street to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
14. Contractor will be responsible for preparation and distribution of a written notice to residents within 48 hours of beginning milling and overlay operations. Costs associated with this requirement will be included in other items of work.
15. Contractor shall provide a continuous work effort towards total completion of the work in an area prior to moving to a different location.
16. No masonry structures shall be used in street right of way. Either precast or cast-in-place structures shall be used.
17. No lifting holes will be allowed in any reinforced concrete pipes or reinforced concrete boxes.
18. No fly ash is allowed to be used on this project.
19. The Contractor certifies that it and all of its Subcontractors to be used in the performance of the Contract are in compliance with 25 O.S. Sec. 1313 and participate in the Status Verification System. The Status Verification System is defined in 25 O. S. Sec. 1312 and includes but is not limited to the free Employee Verification Program (E-Verify) available at www.dhs.gov/E-Verify.
20. **Driveways.** Access to properties and businesses adjacent to the right of way must be provided and maintained at all times unless otherwise directed/approved by the Engineer. The Contractor will contact the business or property owner at least 5 days in advance of any driveway closure. Driveways and patches in front of driveways, which are removed, shall not be left unusable overnight. If concrete cannot be placed the same day as removal, the Contractor shall furnish screening or other suitable aggregate material to maintain temporary access until concrete

can be placed. The cost of placing and removing the material for temporary access shall be included in the pay item for Concrete Driveway (High Early Strength). **Failure to leave any driveway usable will subject the Contractor to a \$1000.00 per day fine for each and every calendar day that the driveway remains non-useable.** The only exception for a driveway to be non-useable is to allow for curing time for concrete. Cure time will not exceed 48 hours.

21. Driveways in excess of 18-feet in width shall be constructed in half-sections and access shall be maintained at all times.
22. Contractor shall prepare and present a schedule and plan for lane and driveway closures throughout the project. The Contractor shall include in the plan, driveway signage for local business access. Payment for signs will be included under the pay item **"Signage for Local Business Access"** and will be paid for by the square foot. Coordination with the City of Tulsa and local business operators shall be required before a driveway schedule and plan is approved.
23. Contractor shall coordinate with the City of Tulsa and local business operators to identify opportunities to perform weekend or "after business hours" construction on driveways to minimize impacts to the area.
24. Local and through traffic shall be maintained at all times through the project unless otherwise permitted by the Engineer. All public and private streets shall be accessible at all times. All detours, horizontal traffic movements, etc. are directly related to the sequence of work; therefore, the Contractor shall proceed with his construction operation in conformity with the details shown on the plans and as required by this special provision.
25. Traffic must be handled appropriately through the entire project during construction and it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide for the safety and comfort of the traveling public at all times. The Contractor shall be required to give the traveling public at least **five (5) days** advance notice of any lane and/or street closures.
26. The Contractor may propose/recommend modifications to the sequence of work for consideration by the Engineer. Any major recommended modification by the contractor shall include any changes to the various pay items, impact to traffic, and effect of overall project in time and cost, etc. The Contractor shall not proceed with any construction operations based on a revised phase/sequence until the Contractor obtains written approval from the Engineer.

27. Two lanes shall remain open to traffic, one in each direction, throughout all phases of construction, unless otherwise approved/directed by the Engineer. Left turn lanes shall remain open to traffic throughout all phases of construction, unless otherwise approved/directed by the Engineer. Transitions from pavement elevations through construction areas to access driveways or intersections shall be the Contractor's responsibility. Contractor shall maintain signs and markings on a continuous basis.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS
TIME FOR COMPLETION

1. The work shall commence within ten days from and after the date of a written work order from the City. The Contractor agrees that the work shall be prosecuted regularly, diligently and uninterruptedly at a uniform rate of progress so as to ensure completion within the number of days after the day on which the work order is issued. If the Contractor shall fail to complete all work within the time specified, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for Breach of Contract, the Sum of **Twenty-Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** for each and every calendar day for failure to complete all work within the time specified. The said amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would in such event sustain. It is expressly understood and agreed that the said time for completion of the work described herein is a reasonable time for the completion of same.
2. If the Contractor shall fail to complete reconstruction of a segment of roadway within **thirty (30)** days of beginning the reconstruction operation, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of contract, the sum of **Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** for each and every calendar day of failure to complete the work after the specified time. The said amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would in such event sustain. This time constraint applies only to roadways to be reconstructed and includes all subsidiary work items required to complete the reconstruction. Subsidiary items not required to complete the reconstruction are not subject to this time constraint.
3. If the Contractor shall fail to complete overlaying of any separately milled segment of roadway within **twenty (20)** days of beginning the milling operation, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of contract, the sum of **Two Thousand Five Hundred Dollars (\$2,500.00)** for each and every calendar day of failure to complete the work after the specified time. The said amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would in such event sustain. The City will authorize when milling is to be done based on weather conditions. This time constraint applies only to segments to be milled and includes all subsidiary work items required to complete the overlay. Subsidiary items not required to complete the overlay are not subject to this time constraint.
4. The Contractor shall commence work within 24 hours of traffic control devices being established at the project location. If the Contractor shall fail to commence work within 24 hours of traffic control devices being established at the project

Location, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of contract, the sum of **One Thousand Dollars (\$1000.00)** per lane for each day of failure to commence work after the specified time set forth. The amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damage the City would in such event sustain.

5. **Within 14 days** after Bid Opening and prior to Award of Bid the successful Contractor will be required to furnish the Engineer with a progress schedule, in a format approved by the Engineer, setting forth in detail the procedure he proposes to follow, and giving the dates on which he expects to start and to complete separate portions of the work. If at any time, in the opinion of the Engineer, proper progress is not being maintained, such changes shall be made in the schedule of operations, which will satisfy the Engineer that the work will be completed within the period stated in the Proposal. Monthly progress meetings will be conducted to maintain coordination between all project entities.
6. The Contractor will be required to provide a full-time, onsite English speaking superintendent for this Project for direct contact with City and coordination of subcontractors. A working foreman is not acceptable as a project superintendent. The superintendent shall be required to be present at the work site whenever the Contractor or subcontractors are performing work. The superintendent shall be a representative of the Contractor with the authority to make decision. If the Contractor shall fail to provide a non-working superintendent on a day when work is being performed, then the Contractor agrees to pay the City, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages for such breach of contract, the sum of **One Thousand Dollars (\$1000.00)** for each and every calendar day of failure to provide a non-working superintendent at the work site. The said amount is fixed and agreed upon because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the actual damages the City would in such event sustain.
7. It is further agreed that time is of the essence of each and every portion of this Contract and the specifications wherein a definite and certain time is fixed for the performance of any act whatsoever; and where under the contract an allowance of additional time for completion of any work is made, the new time fixed by such extension shall be of the essence of this Contract.
8. Should the Contractor be delayed in the final completion of the work by any act or neglect of the City of Tulsa, or of any employees of either, or by strikes, injunctions, fire or other cause or causes outside of and beyond the control of the Contractor and which, in the opinion of the Engineer, could have been neither anticipated or avoided, then an extension of time sufficient to compensate for the delay as determined by the Engineer, shall be granted by the City, provided however, that the Contractor shall give the City and the Engineer notice in writing

of the cause of the delay in each case on the Extension of Time Request Form enclosed in these documents, and agrees that any such claim shall be fully compensated for by an extension of time to complete performance of the work included herein.

9. The Contractor shall submit the Extension of Time Request Form with each partial payment application. Failure to submit the Extension of Time Request with a partial payment application shall constitute a complete waiver of any claim for time extension for the period covered by the partial payment.
10. Extension of time may be granted for delays caused by unsuitable weather. Extension of time will not be granted for delays caused by ground condition, inadequate construction force or the failure of the Contractor to place orders for equipment or materials a sufficient time in advance to ensure delivery when needed. Any extension of time by the City shall not release the Contractor and surety herein from the payment of liquidated damages for a period of time not included in the original contract or the time extension as herein provided.
11. Failure to complete project within specified time, as set forth in the Contract, may be grounds for disqualification for future consideration for contracts with the City of Tulsa.
12. Final Acceptance of the Project will be in strict accordance with ODOT Specification 105.17– Project Completion and Acceptance and ODOT Specification 104.10– Final Cleaning Up and defined as “The date on which the Request for Action (RFA) for final payment has been signed by the Mayor of the City of Tulsa.”
13. Contract Evaluation forms will be compiled by City staff upon completion of this Project to provide a record of the Contractor’s performance for use in subsequent projects.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

1.1 ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

- A. Contractor shall immediately report to Owner (City of Tulsa):
 - 1. Any environmental issue, whether observed, uncovered, exposed, caused or created;
 - 2. Any activity, action or failure to act, which may be causative of increased environmental liability, degradation of the environment, or that could adversely affect or impact human health and/or safety.
- B. No action by Owner shall be deemed to relieve Contractor of these requirements.
- C. All Work performed and all Work subcontracted shall comply with all Local, State and Federal laws and regulations.
- D. Disposal of any material, including but not limited to waste, excess, spoil, or overburden, shall be done in a manner to comply with any and all Local, State and Federal laws and regulations.

END OF SECTION

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

GEOTECHNICAL REPORTS

1.1 GEOTECHNICAL REPORTS

- A. A Geotechnical investigation report has been provided by the Owner for the sole purpose of guidance and recommendations for the design of this Project.
- B. The Geotechnical report is NOT included as a part of the Contract Documents. However, for reference only, a copy of the report may be viewed and/or obtained from the office of the Architect/Engineer during the bidding process.

END OF SECTION

SPECIAL PROVISIONS
OWNER ALLOWANCE

The "Owner Allowance" may be used for various work and miscellaneous items not specifically identified in the Contract Documents with the following provisions:

- A. The allowance shall be used for cost of design and construction, including all materials, labor, equipment, profit and overhead, of work items not specifically identified in the Construction Documents, or included in original pay items bid for the contract.
- B. The allowance shall be utilized only at the discretion of the City of Tulsa. Any balance remaining at the completion of the Project will be retained by the City of Tulsa.
- C. The Contractor shall provide, to the City of Tulsa, a written request for the use of any allowance, including a schedule of values and associated backup information, including validity of need, materials, labor, equipment, and time required to perform the associated work.

Contractor shall proceed with the allowance work only after receiving written permission from the City of Tulsa. Proceeding with associated allowance work without written permission from the City of Tulsa will be at the Contractor's sole expense.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

CITY OF TULSA PROJECT SECURITY

1.1 CITY OF TULSA PROJECT SECURITY

- A. All employees of Contractor that will be on site will be required to register with the City of Tulsa Construction Manager and will be issued an identification badge specific to this project that must be worn for access to the project and to work on site. Visitor badges will be issued for persons temporarily on site such as material delivery persons.
- B. The requirements for Project Security at all times are as follows: Per Oklahoma State law [O.S. Title 57, §583-584](#), anyone required to register as a sex offender do so with the City of Tulsa Construction Manager, all employees must be legal citizens of the U.S./or have current work visa. All employees and must have valid identification for background investigation, which includes U.S. Driver's license, Social Security card, birth certificate, passport, and/or INS card. The Contractor must certify to the City of Tulsa Construction Manager that they have not employed any person on this site that does not meet these requirements.
- C. The requirements for project security once the building shell is in place, the building closed in, and indoor work commences are as follows: No employees that have felonies within ten years; note, any misdemeanors or felonies within twenty years are subject to scrutiny; No employees that have current criminal proceedings regarding sex offenses, acts of violence, fraud, embezzlement, and/or burglaries; and No employees with outstanding warrants. All employees of Contractor on site will be required to have an Oklahoma State Bureau of Investigation Criminal History Record Information check processed and on file with this Contractor. This Contractor shall be responsible for the expense of said background checks as part of this package. The Contractor must certify to the City of Tulsa Construction Manager that they have not employed any person on this site that does not meet the requirements.
- D. There is no cost for badges or background checks as long as badges are returned after the project is completed. However if a badge is issued and subsequently lost, there is then a \$15 replacement fee charged before a new badge is issued.

END OF SECTION

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

REMOVAL OF CASTINGS AND HARDWARE

1.1 REMOVAL OF CASTINGS

- A. All water, sanitary sewer, and storm sewer manhole castings, lids, frames, curb hoods, grates, hydrants, valves, and other fittings removed as part of any construction project are property of the City of Tulsa. Contractor will not take ownership.
- B. All storm sewer and sanitary sewer castings shall be salvaged and delivered by the Contractor to the Underground Collections North Sewer Base Stockyard at 9319 East 42nd Street North. Contractor will coordinate the return of such items with the Stockyard personnel at (918)669-6130.
- C. All hydrants, valves, and other fittings from abandoned water mains shall be salvaged and delivered by the Contractor to the South Yard at 2317 South Jackson Avenue. Contractor will coordinate the return of such items with the South Yard personnel at (918)596-9401.

1.2 REMOVAL OF BUILDING HARDWARE

- A. All door hardware, electronic access devices, locks, deadbolts, closers, passage sets, hinges and security cameras, sensors, etc. removed as part of any construction project are property of the City of Tulsa. Contractor will not take ownership.
- B. Return to the Owner under the direction of COT Field Engineering personnel.

END OF SECTION

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

1.1 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Re: General Conditions
- B. Substantial Completion shall mean; the time at which the Work (or a specified part thereof) has progressed to the point where, in the opinion of the Architect/Engineer of Record, City Design, City Field Engineering, and the User Group/Tenant are in agreement that the Work (or a specified part thereof) is sufficiently complete, in accordance with the Contract Documents, so that the Work (or a specified part thereof) can be utilized for the purposes for which it is intended. The terms "substantially complete" and "substantively complete" as applied to all or part of the Work refer to Substantial Completion thereof.
- C. When Contractor considers the entire Work ready for its intended use Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer of Record, Owner (City Design, City Field Engineering), and User Group/Tenant in writing that the entire Work is substantially complete (except for items specifically listed by Contractor as incomplete) and request the Architect/Engineer of Record issue a certificate of Substantial Completion.
- D. Promptly after Contractor's notification, Architect/Engineer of Record, Owner (City Design, City Field Engineering), and User Group/Tenant shall make an inspection of the Work to determine the status of completion. If the Architect/Engineer of Record does not consider the Work substantially complete, Architect/Engineer of Record will notify Contractor in writing giving the reasons therefor.
- E. If Architect/Engineer of Record considers the Work substantially complete, Architect/Engineer of Record will deliver to Owner a tentative certificate of Substantial Completion which shall fix the date of Substantial Completion. There shall be attached to the certificate a tentative list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment.
- F. Final Inspection: Upon written notice from Contractor that the entire Work or an agreed portion thereof is complete, Architect/Engineer of Record will promptly make a final inspection with Owner (City Design, City Field Engineering) and User Group/Tenant and Contractor, and will notify Contractor in writing of all particulars in which this inspection reveals that the Work is incomplete or defective. Contractor shall immediately take such measures as are necessary to complete such Work or remedy such deficiencies.

END OF SECTION

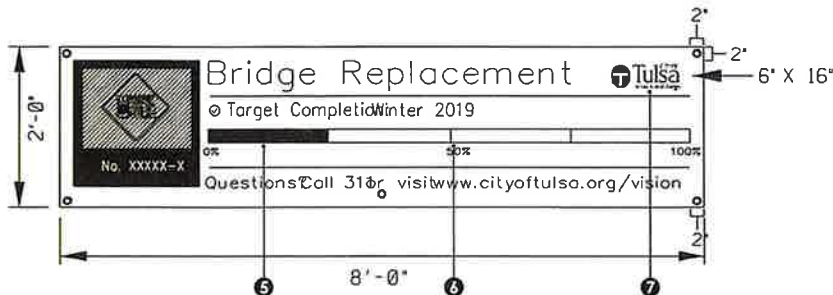
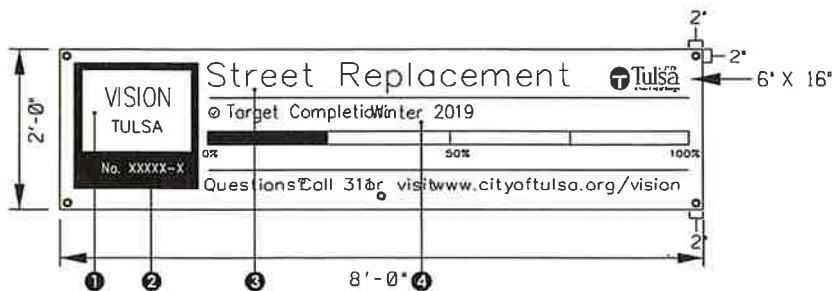
SPECIAL PROVISIONS

UTILITY RELOCATIONS AND DESIGN ISSUES

1.1 UTILITY RELOCATIONS AND DESIGN ISSUES

- A. It is the intent of this specification to provide no more than seventy-five (75) calendar days due to delays caused by required utility relocations and required design clarifications. Should the Contractor be delayed in the final completion of work by any utility relocation or design issue, additional days as determined by the Engineer shall be granted by the City. However, the Contractor shall give the Engineer notice in writing of the cause of the delay in each case on the Extension of Time Request Form enclosed in these documents, and agrees that any claim shall be fully compensated for by the provisions of this specification to complete performance of the work. An adjustment will not be made to the Contract time bid for incentive purposes.
- B. Any time granted for utility relocations or design issues up to (75) calendar days will be in addition to the number of days shown in the Proposal for computation of disincentive and liquidated damages.

END OF SECTION



NOTE:

1. CAPITAL PROGRAM LOGO
 - VISION TULSA
 - IMPROVE OUT TULSA

2. PROJECT NUMBER
 - FONT: HELVETICA BOLD
 - SIZE: 2.5 INCHES
 - ALIGNMENT: CENTER
 - COLOR: WHITE

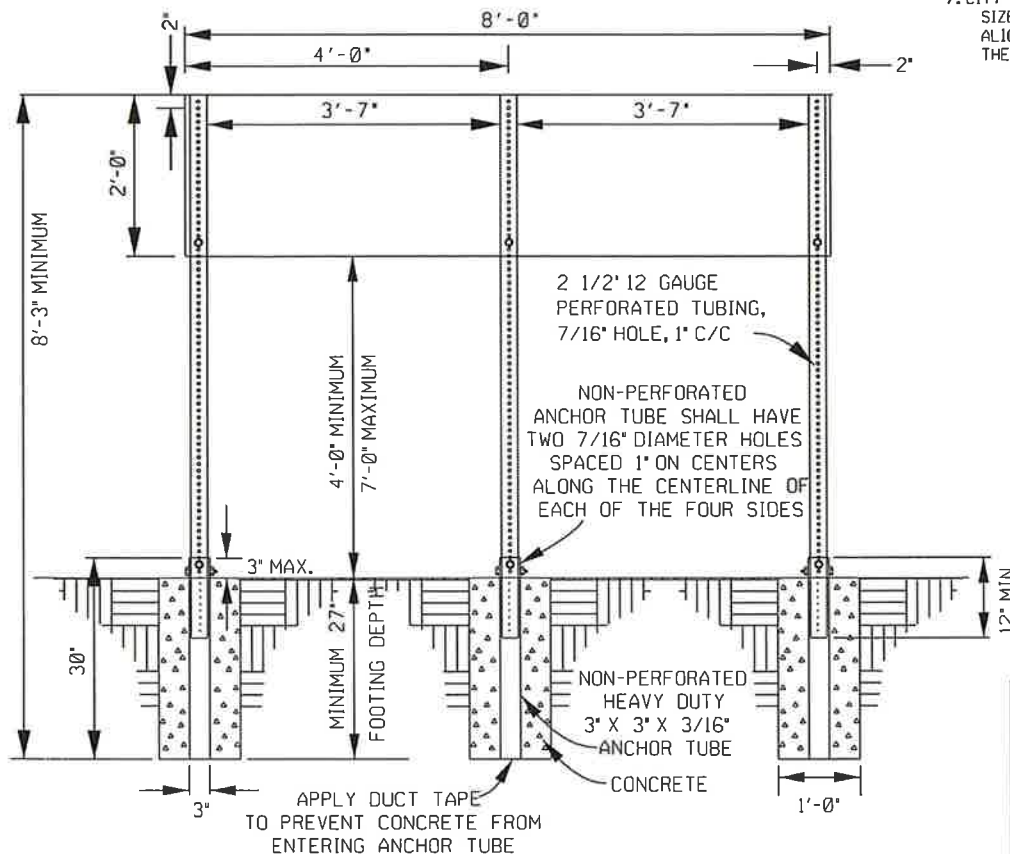
3. GENERAL PROJECT TITLE
 - FONT: HELVETICA BOLD
 - SIZE: 4.72 INCHES
 - ALIGNMENT: LEFT
 - COLOR: CITY BLUE
 - GENERALIZED
 - STREET REPLACEMENT
 - STREET REHABILITATION
 - STREET WIDENING
 - STREET RESURFACING
 - BRIDGE REPLACEMENT
 - BRIDGE REHABILITATION

4. TARGET COMPLETION
 - FONT: HELVETICA REGULAR AND BOLD
 - SIZE: 2.5 INCHES
 - ALIGNMENT: LEFT
 - COLOR: CITY BLUE AND BLACK

5. PROJECT PROGRESS BAR
 - SIZE: 2" TALL X 66" WIDE
 - COLOR: GREEN
 - MATERIAL: 2" GREEN, INDUSTRIAL DUCT TAPE CUT AT 1/4 SEGMENTS SHOULD BE USED TO INDICATE PROJECT PROGRESS/ADVANCEMENTS IN THE PROGRESS BAR. PAINT SHOULD ONLY BE USED IN THE EVENT THAT TAPE IS NOT AVAILABLE OR UNABLE TO REMAIN AFFIXED OVER A LONGER CONSTRUCTION PERIOD.

6. CONTACT INFORMATION
 - OPTIONS: 311 AND CORRESPONDING URL
 - FONT: HELVETICA REGULAR AND BOLD
 - SIZE: 2.5 INCHES
 - ALIGNMENT: LEFT
 - COLOR: CITY BLUE AND BLACK

7. CITY OF TULSA LOGO
 - SIZE: 10" WIDE
 - ALIGNMENT: OUTER RIGHT MARGIN EDGE AND TO THE BASELINE OF THE GENERAL PROJECT TITLE.



ASSEMBLY OF PLYWOOD SIGN

PROJECT SIGN	
CITY OF TULSA, OKLAHOMA ENGINEERING SERVICES DEPARTMENT	
DRAWN BY:	APPROVED
CHECKED BY: HAS	
DATE: MARCH 2022	
NOT TO SCALE	STANDARD NO. 102

SPECIFICATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP

DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

000107	SEALS PAGE
000110	Table of Contents

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	SUMMARY
012100	ALLOWANCES
012200	UNIT PRICES
012300	ALTERNATES
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
015639	TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION
017419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
017823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
019113	GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

032000	CONCRETE REINFORCING
033000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
033543	POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

042200	CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY
042613	MASONRY VENEER

DIVISION 05 - METALS

051200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
051213	ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
053100	STEEL DECKING

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000	ROUGH CARPENTRY
062023	INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY
064100	ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK
064116	PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072100	THERMAL INSULATION
075423	THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING
077100	ROOF SPECIALTIES
077253	SNOW GUARDS
079200	JOINT SEALANTS

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113	HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES
081416	FLUSH WOOD DOORS
083613	SECTIONAL DOORS
084113	ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS
087100	DOOR HARDWARE
088000	GLAZING

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

092216	NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING
092900	GYPSUM BOARD
093013	CERAMIC TILING
095123	ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS
096513	RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES
096813	TILE CARPETING
097200	WALL COVERINGS
098433	SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS
098436	SOUND-ABSORBING CEILING UNITS
099113	EXTERIOR PAINTING
099123	INTERIOR PAINTING
099300	STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

101100	VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS
101416	PLAQUES
101419	DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE
101423.16	ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE
102113.17	PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS
102123	CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACK
102239	FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS
102800	TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
104413	FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

104416	FIRE EXTINGUISHERS
105129	PHENOLIC LOCKERS

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

113013	RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES
--------	------------------------

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

122413	ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
123553.13	METAL LABORATORY CASEWORK
123661	SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

133419	METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS
--------	------------------------

DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION

211119	FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS
211313	WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS
211316	DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221414	STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
223400	FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
224200	PLUMBING FIXTURES

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
230923	CONTROL VALVES
231123	FACILITY NATURAL GAS PIPING
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING
232300	REFRIGERANT PIPING
232513	WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233600	AIR TERMINAL UNITS
233713	DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES
235216	CONDENSING BOILERS
237416	PACKAGED ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

260519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
--------	--

260523	CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
260553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
262416	PANELBOARDS
262726	WIRING DEVICES
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
263213.13	DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS
265200	SOLID STATE LIGHTING

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

283111	DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM
--------	--

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

312000	EARTH MOVING
313116	TERMITE CONTROL

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

**DOCUMENT 000107
SEALS PAGE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESIGN PROFESSIONALS OF RECORD

- A. Architect:
 - 1. Jennifer Hammock, AIA.
 - 2. 7191.
 - 3. Responsible for Divisions 01-49 Sections except where indicated as prepared by other design professionals of record.
- B. Architect Firm:
 - 1. BKL, Inc..
 - 2. CA 0049.
 - 3. Responsible for Divisions 01-49 Sections except where indicated as prepared by other design professionals of record.
- C. Civil Engineer:
 - 1. Ryan Mahaffey.
 - 2. 26866.
 - 3. Responsible for City of Tulsa standards, ODOT standards and specifications.
- D. Structural Engineer:
 - 1. Stacy Loeffler, PE.
 - 2. 16658.
 - 3. Responsible for 3, 4, 5, 13, and 31.
- E. Mechanical Engineer, Plumbing:
 - 1. Allen Merk, PE.
 - 2. 31032.
 - 3. Responsible for 21, 22, 23.
- F. Electrical Engineer:
 - 1. Patrick Teague, PE.
 - 2. 28837.
 - 3. Responsible for 26, 28.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF DOCUMENT 000107

SECTION 011000 SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Work performed by Owner.
4. Work under Owner's separate contracts.
5. Owner's product purchase contracts.
6. Owner-furnished/Contractor-installed (OFCI) products.
7. Contractor-furnished/Owner-installed (CFOI) products.
8. Contractor's use of site and premises.
9. Coordination with occupants.
10. Work restrictions.
11. Specification and Drawing conventions.
12. Miscellaneous provisions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package:** A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

A. Project Identification: Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building.

1. Project Location: 4510 S. Elwood Ave. Tulsa, OK 74107.

B. Owner: City of Tulsa.

1. Owner's Representative: Trey Wilson, PE, CFM, lwilson@cityoftulsa.org, 918-596-9246.

C. Architect: BKL Architects and Engineers.

1. Architect's Representative: Jenni Hammock, AIA, hammock@bklinc.com, 918-835-9588.

D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

1. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing: Green Acorn, LLC.
 - a. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing Representative: Katie Tillery-Merk,

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
011000 - 1

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Type of Contract:
 - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK UNDER OWNER'S SEPARATE CONTRACTS

- A. Work with Separate Contractors: Cooperate fully with Owner's separate contractors, so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying Work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under Owner's separate contracts.
- B. Subsequent Work: Owner has awarded separate contract(s) for the following additional work to be performed at site following Substantial Completion. Completion of that work will depend on successful completion of preparatory Work under this Contract.
 - 1. HVAC Commissioning: To Cyntergy per Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements"..

1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED/CONTRACTOR-INSTALLED (OFCI) PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities: Owner will furnish products indicated and perform the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Provide to Contractor Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples.
 - 2. Provide for delivery of Owner-furnished products to Project site.
 - 3. Upon delivery, inspect, with Contractor present, delivered items.
 - a. If Owner-furnished products are damaged, defective, or missing, arrange for replacement.
 - 4. Obtain manufacturer's inspections, service, and warranties.
 - 5. Inform Contractor of earliest available delivery date for Owner-furnished products.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities: The Work includes the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished products in Contractor's construction schedule, utilizing Owner-furnished earliest available delivery dates.
 - 2. Review Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples, noting discrepancies and other issues in providing for Owner-furnished products in the Work.
 - 3. Receive, unload, handle, store, protect, and install Owner-furnished products.
 - 4. Make building services connections for Owner-furnished products.
 - 5. Protect Owner-furnished products from damage during storage, handling, and installation and prior to Substantial Completion.
 - 6. Repair or replace Owner-furnished products damaged following receipt.
- C. Owner-Furnished/Contractor-Installed (OFCI) Products:
 - 1. Refer drawings and bid alternates.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Restricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
 - 1. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
 - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.8 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy Project site and adjacent building(s) during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Notify Owner not less than 72 hours in advance of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- C. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited

occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.

1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.
2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 8:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated in the City's General Conditions. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging for temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Owner not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
- D. Employee Identification: Owner will provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

1.10 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.

- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings and published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard.
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Unit-cost allowances.
 - 2. Quantity allowances.
 - 3. Contingency allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance: A quantity of work or dollar amount included in the Contract, established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect and City of Tulsa of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.6 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.7 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.8 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Directive that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Directives authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.

- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.9 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, required maintenance materials, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs due to a change in the scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
 - 1. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

END OF SECTION 012100

**SECTION 012200
UNIT PRICES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.
 - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for field testing by an independent testing agency.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 012200

**SECTION 012300
ALTERNATES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if the Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternates into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
1. Include, as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation, whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other Work of the Contract.
- C. Schedule: A Part 3 "Schedule of Alternates" Article is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 01: Generator and Pad.
1. Base Bid: Provide conduit stubbed up to generator location as indicated on Drawing E4-01 and as specified in Section 263213.13 "Diesel Engine Driven Generator Sets." Provide gravel at generator pad location to top of surrounding mechanical concrete pad.
 2. Alternate: Provide Generator with 48hr fuel tank, service entrance rated

Automatic Transfer Switch, all required conduits and cabling between Generator equipment, 800A feeder between Generator and ATS, 800A feeder between ATS and MDP, conduits for annunciator panels, service platform (catwalk) for generator access as required by code, and concrete pad. as indicated on Drawing E4-01 and as specified in Section 263213.13 "Diesel Engine Driven Generator Sets."

B. Alternate No. 02: Laboratory Buildout

1. Base Bid: Provide finished shell at room Lab 151 including painted walls, ceiling, lighting, flooring, HVAC systems, and electrical outlets and floor boxes. Provide plumbing piping and accessories to proposed fixture locations and cap. Provide breakers allocated in panels for lab use. Provide conduit, wire, and electrical devices.
2. Alternate: Lab casework, counters, Fumehood, hood fan, ductwork and accessories, plumbing fixtures, and all connections to provide a complete operating laboratory.

C. Alternate No. 03: Acoustical Tile Ceiling at Open Office 121 and 150.

1. Base Bid: Provide painted exposed PEMB insulation system.
2. Alternate: Provide ACT2.2 as shown on Drawing A1-06.

D. Alternate No. 04: West Parking Lot

1. Base Bid: Provide site-civil design including grading and gravel at west parking lot as indicated on Drawing C1-02.
2. Alternate: Provide site-civil design including grading and asphalt parking at west parking lot as indication on Drawing C1-03.

E. Alternate No. 05: Appliances

1. Base Bid: Appliances as indicated on Drawing A8-02 Appliances Schedule are provided and installed by owner.
2. Alternate: Appliances as indicated on Drawing A8-02 Appliances Schedule are provided and installed by contractor.

F. Alternate No. 06: Aquarium

1. Base Bid: Provide casework, power, and plumbing piping to proposed tank location and cap.
2. Alternate: Provide items in base bid in addition to 300 gallon 72"x28"x36" aquarium for freshwater fish. Provide tank, pump, equipment, and connections for a complete and operating system.

END OF SECTION 012300

SECTION 012500 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 3. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.

- e. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - f. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - g. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - h. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - i. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - j. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - k. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - l. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied,

Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience:

1. Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 10 calendar days prior to bidding. . Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
 - a. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - 1) Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - 2) Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - 3) Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - 4) Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - 5) Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 6) Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 7) Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 8) Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - 9) Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - 10) If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)
PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

**SECTION 012600
CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on Architect's ASI form or AIA Document G710.

1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect or Owner's Representative will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - e. Quotation Form: Use forms provided by Owner. Sample copies are included in Project Manual.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect and Owner's Construction Manager.
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change

- on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.5 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Construction Manager will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on form included in Project Manual.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive . Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)
PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

**SECTION 013300
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
 - 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

1.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1.4 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information on a transmittal in each submittal:
 - 1. Project name.
 - 2. Date.
 - 3. Name of Architect.
 - 4. Name of Contractor.
 - 5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - 6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - 7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
 - 8. Category and type of submittal.
 - 9. Submittal purpose and description.
 - 10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.

- a. Submittals shall include items from one specification section only.
- 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
- 12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
- 13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
- 14. Other necessary identification.
- 15. Remarks.
- 16. Contractor's review and approval stamp. Signature of transmitter.
- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.
- E. Submittals Utilizing Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files or other format indicated by Project management software.

1.5 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
 - 2. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project management software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
 - 3. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form and deliver to Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - 2. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 - 3. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

1.6 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.

- c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
- 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
 - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 - 2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least **8-1/2 by 11 inches**, but no larger than **30 by 42 inches**.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
 - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 - 2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Project name and submittal number.
 - b. Generic description of Sample.
 - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - d. Sample source.
 - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 - 3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
 - 4. Web-Based Project Management Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to web-based Project software website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.
 - 5. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal, including complete submittal information indicated.
 - 6. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition

- at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
- 7. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will retain one sample set and return other sample sets with options selected.
 - b. Printed, copied, and digital color charts are not permitted for color selection.
- 8. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record Sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
 - 3) Printed, copied, and digital color samples are not permitted for color selection.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 - 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 - 3. Number and name of room or space.
 - 4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page

of submittal.

G. Certificates:

1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

H. Test and Research Reports:

1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - a. Name of evaluation organization.
 - b. Date of evaluation.
 - c. Time period when report is in effect.

- d. Product and manufacturers' names.
- e. Description of product.
- f. Test procedures and results.
- g. Limitations of use.

1.7 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.
- C. Direct specific attention on submittal to deviations from compliance of Contract Documents.
 - 1. Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for any deviations to the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of submittals unless the Contractor has notified the Architect in writing of deviations and reason for deviations at the time of submission. Written approval must be given by the Architect to allow deviations to become a minor change in Work, or a Change Order or a Construction Change Directive has authorized the deviation.
- D. Contractor represents and warrants that submittals shall be prepared by persons and entities possessing expertise and experience in the trade for which the submittal is prepared and, if required, by a licensed professional.
- E. Contractor is responsible for confirmation and correlation of dimensions at the job site, for information that pertains to fabrication processes or techniques of construction, and

for coordination of work of trades.

1.9 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return.
 - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
 - 2. Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
 - 3. Submittals by Web-Based Project Management Software: Architect will indicate, on Project management software website, the appropriate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Architect will return without review submittals without Contractor's uniform submittal stamp.
- G. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for testing and inspection allowances.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Physical assemblies of portions of the Work constructed to establish the standard by which the Work will be judged. Mockups are not Samples.
 - 1. Mockups are used for one or more of the following:
 - a. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
 - b. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
 - c. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
 - d. Demonstrate successful installation of interfaces between components and

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

014000 - 1

- systems.
 - e. Perform preconstruction testing to determine system performance.
 - 2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
 - 3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited in accordance with NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" has the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

1.3 DELEGATED DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more

standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.

- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified is the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Mockup Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
 - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.

- 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
 - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- B. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- C. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- D. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- E. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.

6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists will satisfy qualification requirements indicated and engage in the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor's Responsibilities:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether

tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups of size indicated.
 2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or Owner's Representative.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
 5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
 8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
 2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances specified in Section 012100 "Allowances," as authorized by Change Orders.
 3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor will not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

014000 - 8

- testing agency.
- 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.
 - 1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
 - 2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:
 - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 - 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
014000 - 9

3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect, Owner, and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible.
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 015000
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
 - 2. Section 012100 "Allowances" for allowance for metered use of temporary utilities.

1.2 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities to be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's construction forces, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- E. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use with metering. Provide connections and extensions of services and metering as required for construction operations.
- F. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use with metering. Provide connections and extensions of services and metering as required for construction operations.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.

- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
 - 1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
 - 2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
 - 3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- F. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
 - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 - 4. Waste-handling procedures.
 - 5. Other dust-control measures.
- G. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by Owner. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods used to meet the goals and requirements of Owner.
 - 2. Concrete cutting method(s) to be used.
 - 3. Location of construction devices on the site.
 - 4. Show compliance with the use and maintenance of quieted construction devices for the duration of the Project.
 - 5. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with Owner.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent

service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum **2-inch, 0.148-inch-** thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum **6 feet** high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum **2-3/8-inch-** OD line posts and **2-7/8-inch-** OD corner and pull posts.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum **2-inch, 0.148-inch-** thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum **6 feet** high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum **2-3/8-inch-** OD line posts and **2-7/8-inch-** OD corner and pull posts, with **1-5/8-inch-** OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices:
 - 1. Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and **4-foot-** square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of **68 to 72 deg F**.
 - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of **20 fc** at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.

1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
- C. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed in accordance with coordination drawings.
 - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
 - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area, using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
 2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
 3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service:
 - 1. Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
 - 2. Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
 - 1. Use of Permanent Toilets: Use of Owner's existing or new toilet facilities is not permitted.
- E. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
 - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- F. Electric Power Service:
 - 1. Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
 - 2. Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
 - a. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- G. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
 - Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
 - SW23-01-01
 - 06/06/2025
 - 015000 - 5

1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within **30 feet** of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 2. Utilize designated area within existing building for temporary field offices.
 3. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas in accordance with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
 4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course in accordance with documents."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- G. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- H. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.

- a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
- 3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- I. Waste Disposal Facilities:
 - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
 - 2. Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- J. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
 - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control:
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection:
 - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- F. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals, so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using materials approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Site Enclosure Fence: Prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
- H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed

areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.

- I. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- J. Temporary Egress: Provide temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide signage directing occupants to temporary egress.
- K. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
 - 2. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.
- L. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
 - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- M. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.

3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
 3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 015639
TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Work of this Section Includes: General protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, support facilities, temporary site fencing, and, if applicable, temporary erosion and sedimentation controls.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape at a height **6 inches** above the ground for trees up to and including **4-inch** size at this height and as measured at a height of **12 inches** above the ground for trees larger than **4-inch** size.
- B. Caliper (DBH): Diameter breast height; diameter of a trunk as measured by a diameter tape at a height **54 inches** above the ground line.
- C. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction and indicated on Drawings.
- D. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to temporary tree and plant protection including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Tree-service firm's personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Arborist's responsibilities.
 - c. Quality-control program.
 - d. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of protection zones.
 - e. Trenching by hand or with air spade within protection zones.
 - f. Field quality control.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. General protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction

- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, and sections showing trees and plants to be protected, locations of protection-zone fencing and signage, and the relationship between equipment-movement routes and material storage locations with protection zones.
 - 2. Indicate extent of utility boring and trenching by hand or with air spade within protection zones.
- C. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Arborist Qualifications: Certified Arborist as certified by ISA.
- B. Tree-Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree-service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree- and plant-protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.
- C. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written program to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow procedures and handle materials and equipment during the Work without damaging trees and plantings. Include dimensioned diagrams for placement of protection-zone fencing and signage, the arborist's and tree-service firm's responsibilities, instructions given to workers on the use and care of protection zones, and enforcement of requirements for protection zones.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Moving or parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust toward protection zones.
- C. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones and organic mulch.
- D. Take precautions to protect plants from airborne contaminants, such as paint or fireproofing overspray.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Backfill Soil: Planting soil of suitable moisture content and granular texture for placing around tree; free of stones, roots, plants, sod, clods, clay lumps, pockets of coarse sand, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, building debris, and other extraneous materials harmful to plant growth.
- B. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting the following requirements:
 - 1. Plastic Protection-Zone Fencing: Plastic construction fencing constructed of high-density extruded and stretched polyethylene fabric with **2-inch** maximum opening in pattern and weighing a minimum of **0.4 lb/ft.**; remaining flexible from **minus 60 to plus 200 deg F**; inert to most chemicals and acids; minimum tensile yield strength of **2000 psi** and ultimate tensile strength of **2680 psi**; secured with plastic bands or galvanized-steel or stainless steel wire ties; and supported by tubular or T-shape galvanized-steel posts spaced not more than **96 inches** apart.
 - a. Height: **48 inches**.
 - b. Color: High-visibility orange, nonfading.
 - 2. Gates: Single- swing access gates matching material and appearance of fencing, to allow for maintenance activities within protection zones; leaf width **36 inches**.
- C. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering and as follows:
 - 1. Size and Text: 7" x 5" minimum.
 - a. Copy: Tree Protection Zone NO ACCESS
 - 2. Lettering: **3-inch-** high minimum, black characters on white background.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Examine the site to verify that temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by arborist, listing conditions detrimental to tree and plant protection.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Locate and clearly identify tree caliber, health, and species to remain. Flag each tree trunk at **54 inches** above the ground.
- B. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious

materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.

3.3 TREE PROTECTION

- A. Trunk Protection: Protect the trunk of each tree to remain as follows:
1. Install **2-by-4-inch** wood planks around trunk at maximum **3 inches** apart. Minimum three planks per tree. Band together with no less than three steel bands stapled to the planks to hold them securely in place. Wrap orange plastic construction fencing to a minimum of three layers outside slats. Fasten wrap with wire.
 - a. Height: **48 inches**.
 2. Wrap trunk with orange plastic construction fencing to **2 inches** in thickness. Install **2-by-4-inch** wood planks around trunk over wrap at maximum **3 inches** apart. Minimum three planks per tree. Band together with no less than three steel bands stapled to the planks to hold them securely in place.
 - a. Height: **48 inches**.
 - b. Trunk protection to remain in place no longer than six months. If construction exceeds timeframe indicated, inspect trunk protection at six-month intervals and loosen if necessary.

3.4 PROTECTION ZONES

- A. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering protected areas except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.
1. Protection Location: Per City of Tulsa Park's department, tree protection fencing shall be placed at Critical Root Zone (CRZ) to indicate the area of root protection. To calculate the CRZ, multiply the diameter at breast height (DBH) in inches by 12-foot.
 - a. For example, if DBH is 36 inches, then the CRZ is 36 foot radius as measured from center of trunk.
 2. Posts: Set or drive posts into ground one-third the total height of the fence without concrete footings. Where a post is located on existing paving or concrete to remain, provide appropriate means of post support acceptable to Architect.
 3. Access Gates: Install where determined; adjust to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly; free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
 4. Plastic Fencing: Stretch fabric taut and secure to posts without bows or sags.
- B. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations

in a manner approved by Architect. Install one sign spaced approximately every **35 ft.** on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than two signs with each facing a different direction.

- C. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.
- D. Maintain hydration of plants to assure plant survival.
- E. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to Architect and remove when construction operations are complete and equipment has been removed from the site.
 - 1. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
 - 2. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

3.5 EXCAVATION

- A. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated within protection zones in accordance with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Trenching within Protection Zones: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, excavate under or around tree roots by hand or with air spade, or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots as approved by the ISA certified arborist or the landscape architect, that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning with a clean, disinfected, sharp blade. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots.

3.6 REGRADING

- A. Raising Grade: No grading shall occur within the CRZ of existing trees. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.
- B. Minor Fill within Protection Zone: Where existing grade is **2 inches** or less below elevation of finish grade, fill with backfill soil. Place backfill soil in a single uncompacted layer and hand grade to required finish elevations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Engage a qualified arborist to direct plant-protection measures in the vicinity of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain and to prepare inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 015639

SECTION 017419
CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Work of this Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous and construction waste.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU: Concrete masonry units.
- B. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- C. Demolition Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials resulting from demolition operations.
- D. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- E. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- F. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- G. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated

to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.

- B. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- C. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- D. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, or individual employed and assigned by General Contractor, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements. Superintendent may serve as Waste Management Coordinator.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with transportation and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan in accordance with requirements in this Section. Plan must include provisions for waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of site-clearing and construction waste generated by the Work. Use Form CWM-1 for construction waste. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged and recycled.
2. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Unless otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials and legally dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Burning:
 1. Do not burn waste materials.

END OF SECTION 017419

**SECTION 017700
CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final Completion procedures.
 - 3. List of incomplete items.
 - 4. Submittal of Project warranties.
 - 5. Final cleaning.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List

items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
 6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
 7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
 10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on

Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:
 1. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list will state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 2. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 3. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
 4. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first, listed by room or space number.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. MS Excel Electronic File: Architect and Owner's Construction Manager will return annotated file.

- b. PDF Electronic File: Architect and Owner's Construction Manager will return annotated file.
- c. Web-Based Project Software Upload: Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
 - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive **8-1/2-by-11-inch** paper.
 - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
 - j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean in accordance with manufacturer's instructions if visible soil or stains remain.
 - k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - l. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on

inspection.

- 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA ACR. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
 - q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - r. Clean strainers.
 - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by "Correction of the Work" Article in Section 017300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823
OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
 - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning

Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

1.4 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
 - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual to contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 - 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
 - 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 - 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
 - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to

accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation in accordance with ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
 - 1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
 - 2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
 - 3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

1.7 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
 - 1. Type of emergency.
 - 2. Emergency instructions.
 - 3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
 - 1. Fire.
 - 2. Flood.
 - 3. Gas leak.
 - 4. Water leak.
 - 5. Power failure.
 - 6. Water outage.
 - 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - 8. Chemical release or spill.

- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- C. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 - 4. Equipment function.
 - 5. Operating characteristics.
 - 6. Limiting conditions.
 - 7. Performance curves.
 - 8. Engineering data and tests.
 - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 5. Instructions on stopping.
 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

1.10 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and

drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Product name and model number.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 - 4. Material and chemical composition.
 - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
 - 1. Inspection procedures.
 - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823

**SECTION 017839
PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit Record Digital Data Files and one set(s) of Record Digital Data File plots.
 - 2) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
 - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.

1.3 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation

varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.

- a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
 4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.

1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

1.4 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
 5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

1.5 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.
 1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section

number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

1.6 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.
 - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 019113
GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Commissioning is intended to achieve the following specific objectives; this section specifies the Contractor's responsibilities for commissioning:
 - 1. Verify that the work is installed in accordance with Contract Documents and the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions, and that it receives adequate operational checkout prior to startup: Startup reports and Prefunctional Checklists executed by Contractor are utilized to achieve this.
 - 2. Verify and document that functional performance is in accordance with Contract Documents: Functional Tests executed by Contractor and witnessed by the Commissioning Authority are utilized to achieve this.
 - 3. Verify that operation and maintenance manuals submitted to Owner are complete: Detailed operation and maintenance (O&M) data submittals by Contractor are utilized to achieve this.
 - 4. Verify that the Owner's operating personnel are adequately trained: Formal training conducted by Contractor is utilized to achieve this.
- B. Commissioning, including Functional Tests, O&M documentation review, and training, is to occur after startup and initial checkout and be completed before Functional Completion.
- C. The Commissioning Authority directs and coordinates all commissioning activities; this section describes some but not all of the Commissioning Authority's responsibilities.
- D. The Commissioning Authority is employed by Construction Manager on behalf of Owner.

1.2 SCOPE OF COMMISSIONING

- A. The following are to be commissioned:
 - 1. HVAC Systems and Equipment identified on Mechanical plans.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 202 - The Commissioning Process Requirements for New Buildings and New Systems; 2024.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures, for submittal procedures; except:
 - 1. Make all submittals specified in this section, and elsewhere where indicated for commissioning purposes, directly to the Commissioning Authority, unless they require review by Architect; in that case, submit to Architect first.
 - 2. Submit one copy to the Commissioning Authority, not to be returned.
 - 3. Make commissioning submittals on time schedule specified by Commissioning Authority.
 - 4. Submittals indicated as "Draft" are intended for the use of the Commissioning Authority in preparation of Prefunctional Checklists or Functional Test requirements.
 - 5. As soon as possible after submittals made to Architect are reviewed, submit copy of reviewed submittal to the Commissioning Authority.
- B. Product Data: If submittals to Architect do not include the following, submit copies as soon as possible:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product data, cut sheets, and shop drawings.
 - 2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 3. Startup, operating, and troubleshooting procedures.
 - 4. Fan and pump curves.
 - 5. Factory test reports (if required by equipment specs).
 - 6. Warranty information, including details of Owner's responsibilities in regard to keeping

warranties in force.

- C. Manufacturers' Instructions: Submit copies of all manufacturer-provided instructions that are shipped with the equipment as soon as the equipment is delivered.
- D. Startup Plans and Reports.
- E. Completed Prefunctional Checklists.
- F. Commissioning Issues Log:
 - 1. Construction observations.
 - 2. Supporting photographs.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Commissioning Firm Qualifications: Firm experienced in commissioning assemblies and systems specified to be included in scope of work of this Section, and certified by one or more of the following organizations.
 - 1. AABC Commissioning Group (ACG), for commissioning of HVAC Systems and Special Ventilation Systems.
 - a. Commissioning Team Leader: AABC Certified Commissioning Authority (CxA). An individual with technical and management experience who leads a qualified team that plans and coordinates the commissioning process.
 - b. Commissioning Team Members: Certified Commissioning Technicians (CxT) employed by commissioning firm and working under direct supervision of CxA.
 - 2. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) for commissioning of HVAC Systems
 - a. Commissioning Team Leader: ASHRAE Certified Building Commissioning Professional (BCxP). An individual with technical and management experience who leads a qualified team that plans and coordinates the commissioning process.
 - b. Commissioning Team Members: Technicians employed by commissioning firm and working under direct supervision of BCxP.
 - 3. Association of Energy Engineers (AEE) for commissioning of HVAC Systems
 - a. Commissioning Team Leader: AEE Certified Building Commissioning Professional (BCxP). An individual with technical and management experience who leads a qualified team that plans and coordinates the commissioning process.
 - b. Commissioning Team Members: Certified Commissioning Technicians (CxT) employed by commissioning firm and working under direct supervision of BCxP.
 - 4. Building Commissioning Association (BCA) for commissioning of HVAC Systems
 - a. Commissioning Team Leader: BCA Certified Commissioning Professional (CxP). An individual with technical and management experience who leads a qualified team that plans and coordinates the commissioning process.
 - b. Commissioning Team Members: Certified Commissioning Technicians (CxT) employed by commissioning firm and working under direct supervision of CxP.
 - 5. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB) for commissioning of HVAC Systems
 - a. Commissioning Team Leader: NEBB Certified Commissioning Process Professional (CxPP). An individual with technical and management experience who leads a qualified team that plans and coordinates the commissioning process.
 - b. Commissioning Team Members: Certified Commissioning Technicians (CxT) employed by commissioning firm and working under direct supervision of CxA.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide all standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required Functional Testing; unless otherwise noted such testing equipment will NOT become

the property of Owner.

- B. Calibration Tolerances: Provide testing equipment of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply:
 - 1. Temperature Sensors and Digital Thermometers: Certified calibration within past year to accuracy of 0.5 degree F and resolution of plus/minus 0.1 degree F.
 - 2. Pressure Sensors: Accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent of the value range being measured (not full range of meter), calibrated within the last year.
 - 3. Calibration: According to the manufacturer's recommended intervals and when dropped or damaged; affix calibration tags or keep certificates readily available for inspection.
- C. Equipment-Specific Tools: Where special testing equipment, tools and instruments are specific to a piece of equipment, are only available from the vendor, and are required in order to accomplish startup or Functional Testing, provide such equipment, tools, and instruments as part of the work at no extra cost to Owner; such equipment, tools, and instruments are to become the property of Owner.
- D. Dataloggers: Independent equipment and software for monitoring flows, currents, status, pressures, etc. of equipment.
 - 1. Dataloggers required to for Functional Tests will be provided by the Commissioning Authority and will not become the property of Owner.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 COMMISSIONING PLAN

- A. Commissioning Authority will prepare the Commissioning Plan.
 - 1. Attend meetings called by the Commissioning Authority for purposes of completing the commissioning plan.
 - 2. Require attendance and participation of relevant subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and manufacturer representatives.
- B. Contractor is responsible for compliance with the Commissioning Plan.
- C. Commissioning Plan: The commissioning schedule, procedures, and coordination requirements for all parties in the commissioning process.
- D. Basis of Design Documentation (BOD): Detailed documentation of the functional requirements of the project; descriptions of the systems, components, and methods chosen to meet the design intent; assumptions underlying the design intent.
 - 1. Basis of Design Documentation is to be prepared by Architect.
- E. Commissioning Schedule:
 - 1. Submit anticipated dates of startup of each item of equipment and system to Commissioning Authority within 60 days after award of Contract.
 - 2. Re-submit anticipated startup dates monthly, but not less than 4 weeks prior to startup.
 - 3. Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Tests are to be performed in sequence from components, to subsystems, to systems.
 - 4. Provide sufficient notice to Commissioning Authority for delivery of relevant Checklists and Functional Test procedures, to avoid delay.

3.2 STARTUP PLANS AND REPORTS

- A. Startup Reports: For each item of equipment and system for which the manufacturer provides a startup checklist (or startup plan or field checkout sheet), document compliance by submitting the completed startup checklist prior to startup, signed and dated by responsible entity.
- B. Submit directly to the Commissioning Authority.

3.3 PREFUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS

- A. A Prefunctional Checklist is required to be filled out for each item of equipment or other

assembly specified to be commissioned.

1. No sampling of identical or near-identical items is allowed.
 2. These checklists do not replace manufacturers' recommended startup checklists, regardless of apparent redundancy.
 3. Prefunctional Checklist forms will not be complete until after award of the contract; the following types of information will be gathered via the completed Checklist forms:
 - a. Certification by installing contractor that the unit is properly installed, started up, and operating and ready for Functional Testing.
 - b. Confirmation of receipt of each shop drawing and commissioning submittal specified, itemized by unit.
 - c. Manufacturer, model number, and relevant capacity information; list information "as specified," "as submitted," and "as installed."
 - d. Serial number of installed unit.
 - e. List of inspections to be conducted to document proper installation prior to startup and Functional Testing; these will be primarily static inspections and procedures; for equipment and systems may include normal manufacturer's start-up checklist items and minor testing.
 - f. Sensor and actuator calibration information.
- B. Contractor is responsible for filling out Prefunctional Checklists, after completion of installation and before startup; witnessing by the Commissioning Authority is not required unless otherwise specified.
1. Each line item without deficiency is to be witnessed, initialed, and dated by the actual witness; checklists are not complete until all line items are initialed and dated complete without deficiencies.
 2. Checklists with incomplete items may be submitted for approval provided the Contractor attests that incomplete items do not preclude the performance of safe and reliable Functional Testing; re-submission of the Checklist is required upon completion of remaining items.
 3. Individual Checklists may contain line items that are the responsibility of more than one installer; Contractor shall assign responsibility to appropriate installers or subcontractors, with identification recorded on the form.
 4. If any Checklist line item is not relevant, record reasons on the form.
 5. Contractor may independently perform startup inspections and/or tests, at Contractor's option.
 6. Regardless of these reporting requirements, Contractor is responsible for correct startup and operation.
 7. Submit completed Checklists to Commissioning Authority within two days of completion.
 8. See Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional general startup requirements.
- C. Commissioning Authority is responsible for furnishing the Prefunctional Checklists to Contractor.
1. Initial Drafts: Contractor is responsible for initial draft of Prefunctional Checklist where so indicated in Contract Documents.
 2. Provide all additional information requested by Commissioning Authority to aid in preparation of checklists, such as shop drawing submittals, manufacturers' startup checklists, and O&M data.
 3. Commissioning Authority may add any relevant items deemed necessary regardless of whether they are explicitly mentioned in Contract Documents or not.
 4. When asked to review the proposed Checklists, do so in a timely manner.
- D. Commissioning Authority Witnessing: Required for:
1. Each piece of primary equipment, unless sampling of multiple similar units is allowed by the commissioning plan.

2. A sampling of non-primary equipment, as allowed by the commissioning plan.
- E. Deficiencies: Correct deficiencies and re-inspect or re-test, as applicable, at no extra cost to Owner.
 1. If difficulty in correction would delay progress, report deficiency to the Commissioning Authority immediately.

3.4 FUNCTIONAL TESTS

- A. A Functional Test is required for each item of equipment, system, or other assembly specified to be commissioned, unless sampling of multiple identical or near-identical units is allowed by the final test procedures.
- B. Contractor is responsible for execution of required Functional Tests, after completion of Prefunctional Checklist and before closeout.
- C. Commissioning Authority is responsible for witnessing and reporting results of Functional Tests, including preparation and completion of forms for that purpose.
- D. Contractor is responsible for correction of deficiencies and re-testing at no extra cost to Owner; if a deficiency is not corrected and re-tested immediately, the Commissioning Authority will document the deficiency and the Contractor's stated intentions regarding correction.
 1. Deficiencies are any condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment or system that is not in compliance with Contract Documents or does not perform properly.
 2. When the deficiency has been corrected, the Contractor completes the form certifying that the item is ready to be re-tested and returns the form to the Commissioning Authority; the Commissioning Authority will reschedule the test and the Contractor shall re-test.
 3. Identical or Near-Identical Items: If 10 percent, or three, whichever is greater, of identical or near-identical items fail to perform due to material or manufacturing defect, all items will be considered defective; provide a proposal for correction within 2 weeks after notification of defect, including provision for testing sample installations prior to replacement of all items.
 4. Contractor shall bear the cost of Owner and Commissioning Authority personnel time witnessing re-testing.
 5. Contractor shall bear the cost of Owner and Commissioning Authority personnel time witnessing re-testing if the test failed due to failure to execute the relevant Prefunctional Checklist correctly; if the test failed for reasons that would not have been identified in the Prefunctional Checklist process, Contractor shall bear the cost of the second and subsequent re-tests.
- E. Functional Test Procedures:
 1. Required control points and sequences of operation are included in the contract documents. Commissioning Authority shall create functional test procedures based off the contract documents and provide those procedures to the contractor.
 2. Examples of Functional Testing:
 - a. Test the dynamic function and operation of equipment and systems (rather than just components) using manual (direct observation) or monitoring methods under full operation (e.g., the chiller pump is tested interactively with the chiller functions to see if the pump ramps up and down to maintain the differential pressure setpoint).
 - b. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling or heating loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm, power failure, etc.
 - c. Systems are run through all the HVAC control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the sequence's state.
 - d. Traditional air or water test and balancing (TAB) is not Functional Testing.
- F. Deferred Functional Tests: Some tests may need to be performed later, after substantial completion, due to partial occupancy, equipment, seasonal requirements, design or other site

conditions; performance of these tests remains the Contractor's responsibility regardless of timing.

3.5 SENSOR AND ACTUATOR CALIBRATION

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring all sensors and actuators are calibrated. If the commissioning authority believes any of the instrumentation is out of calibration due to inconsistencies during testing, proof of the following calibration must be produced by the contractor.
- B. Calibrate all field-installed temperature, relative humidity, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, and pressure sensors and gauges, and all actuators (dampers and valves) on this piece of equipment shall be calibrated. Sensors installed in the unit at the factory with calibration certification provided need not be field calibrated.
- C. Calibrate using the methods described below; alternate methods may be used, if approved by Commissioning Authority and Owner beforehand. See PART 2 for test instrument requirements. Record methods used on the relevant Prefunctional Checklist or other suitable forms, documenting initial, intermediate and final results.
- D. All Sensors:
 - 1. Verify that sensor location is appropriate and away from potential causes of erratic operation.
 - 2. Verify that sensors with shielded cable are grounded only at one end.
 - 3. For sensor pairs that are used to determine a temperature or pressure difference, for temperature make sure they are reading within 0.2 degree F of each other, and for pressure, within tolerance equal to 2 percent of the reading, of each other.
 - 4. Tolerances for critical applications may be tighter.
- E. Sensors Without Transmitters - Standard Application:
 - 1. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor.
 - 2. Verify that the sensor reading, via the permanent thermostat, gauge or building automation system, is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value.
 - 3. If not, install offset, calibrate or replace sensor.
- F. Sensors With Transmitters - Standard Application.
 - 1. Disconnect sensor.
 - 2. Connect a signal generator in place of sensor.
 - 3. Connect ammeter in series between transmitter and building automation system control panel.
 - 4. Using manufacturer's resistance-temperature data, simulate minimum desired temperature.
 - 5. Adjust transmitter potentiometer zero until 4 mA is read by the ammeter.
 - 6. Repeat for the maximum temperature matching 20 mA to the potentiometer span or maximum and verify at the building automation system.
 - 7. Record all values and recalibrate controller as necessary to comply with specified control ramps, reset schedules, proportional relationship, reset relationship and P/I reaction.
 - 8. Reconnect sensor.
 - 9. Make a reading with a calibrated test instrument within 6 inches of the site sensor.
 - 10. Verify that the sensor reading, via the permanent thermostat, gauge or building automation system, is within the tolerances in the table below of the instrument-measured value.
 - 11. If not, replace sensor and repeat.
 - 12. For pressure sensors, perform a similar process with a suitable signal generator.
- G. Sensor Tolerances for Standard Applications: Plus/minus the following maximums:
 - 1. Watthour, Voltage, Amperage: 1 percent of design.

2. Pressure, Air, Water, Gas: 3 percent of design.
 3. Air Temperatures (Outside Air, Space Air, Duct Air): 0.4 degrees F.
 4. Relative Humidity: 4 percent of design.
 5. Barometric Pressure: 0.1 inch of Hg.
 6. Flow Rate, Air: 10 percent of design.
 7. Flow Rate, Water: 4 percent of design.
 8. AHU Wet Bulb and Dew Point: 2.0 degrees F.
 9. Hot Water Coil and Boiler Water Temperature: 1.5 degrees F.
 10. Cooling Coil, Chilled and Condenser Water Temperatures: 0.4 degrees F.
 11. CO Monitor: 0.01 percentage points.
- H. Critical Applications: For some applications more rigorous calibration techniques may be required for selected sensors. Describe any such methods used on an attached sheet.
- I. Valve/Damper Stroke Setup and Check:
1. For all valve/damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the control system readout.
 2. Set pump/fan to normal operating mode.
 3. Command valve/damper closed; visually verify that valve/damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required.
 4. Command valve/damper to open; verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required.
 5. Command valve/damper to a few intermediate positions.
 6. If actual valve/damper position does not reasonably correspond, replace actuator or add pilot positioner (for pneumatics).
- J. Isolation Valve or System Valve Leak Check: For valves not associated with coils.
1. With full pressure in the system, command valve closed.
 2. Use an ultra-sonic flow meter to detect flow or leakage.

3.6 TEST PROCEDURES - GENERAL

- A. Provide skilled technicians to execute starting of equipment and to execute the Functional Tests. Ensure that they are available and present during the agreed upon schedules and for sufficient duration to complete the necessary tests, adjustments and problem-solving.
- B. Provide all necessary materials and system modifications required to produce the flows, pressures, temperatures, and conditions necessary to execute the test according to the specified conditions. At completion of the test, return all affected equipment and systems to their pre-test condition.
- C. Sampling: Where Functional Testing of fewer than the total number of multiple identical or near-identical items is explicitly permitted, perform sampling as follows:
 1. Identical Units: Defined as units with same application and sequence of operation; only minor size or capacity difference.
 2. The percent of the group of identical equipment to be included in each sample is defined on the drawings.
 3. If any of the sample equipment fails, the contractor shall have the opportunity to reprogram all identical units and the commissioning authority shall test a new random sample of identical units. If any of the retested sample units fail, all identical units shall be retested until they pass.
 4. If frequent failures occur, resulting in more troubleshooting than testing, the Commissioning Authority may stop the testing and require Contractor to perform and document a checkout of the remaining units prior to continuing testing.
- D. Manual Testing: Use hand-held instruments, immediate control system readouts, or direct observation to verify performance (contrasted to analyzing monitored data taken over time to make the "observation").

- E. Simulating Conditions: Artificially create the necessary condition for the purpose of testing the response of a system.
- F. Simulating Signals: Disconnect the sensor and use a signal generator to send an amperage, resistance or pressure to the transducer and control system to simulate the sensor value.
- G. Over-Writing Values: Change the sensor value known to the control system in the control system to see the response of the system; for example, change the outside air temperature value from 50 degrees F to 75 degrees F to verify economizer operation.
- H. Indirect Indicators: Remote indicators of a response or condition, such as a reading from a control system screen reporting a damper to be 100 percent closed, are considered indirect indicators.
- I. Monitoring: Record parameters (flow, current, status, pressure, etc.) of equipment operation using dataloggers or the trending capabilities of the relevant control systems; where monitoring of specific points is called for in Functional Test Procedures:
 - 1. All points that are monitored by the relevant control system shall be trended by Contractor; at the Commissioning Authority's request, Contractor shall trend up to 20 percent more points than specified at no extra charge.
 - 2. Other points will be monitored by the Commissioning Authority using dataloggers.
 - 3. At the option of the Commissioning Authority, some control system monitoring may be replaced with datalogger monitoring.
 - 4. Graphical output is desirable and is required for all output if the system can produce it.
 - 5. Monitoring may be used to augment manual testing.

3.10 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. See Section 017700 – Closeout Procedures for additional requirements.
- B. Add design intent documentation furnished by Architect to manuals prior to submission to Owner.
- C. Submit manuals related to items that were commissioned to Commissioning Authority for review; make changes recommended by Commissioning Authority.
- D. Commissioning Authority will add commissioning records to manuals after submission to Owner.

**SECTION 032000
CONCRETE REINFORCING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel reinforcement bars.
 - 2. Welded-wire reinforcement.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
- B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:
 - 1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
 - 2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.
 - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of Architect.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
 - 1. Reinforcement To Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.
- B. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
 - 1. Steel Reinforcement:
 - a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
 - 1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60**, deformed.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, **Grade 60**, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.
 - 1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.
- C. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than **0.0508 inch** in diameter.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.

2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
 - 2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
 - 1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
 - 2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than **1 inch**, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with **ACI 318**.
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars to be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or **21 inches**, whichever is greater.
 - 2. Stagger splices in accordance with **ACI 318**.
- G. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths.
 - 1. Support welded-wire reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice."
 - a. For reinforcement less than W4.0 or D4.0, continuous support spacing to not exceed **12 inches**.
 - 2. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one wire spacing plus **2 inches** for plain wire and **8 inches** for deformed wire.
 - 3. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
 - 4. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with **ACI 117**.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.

END OF SECTION 032000

**SECTION 033000
CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete standards.
2. Concrete materials.
3. Admixtures.
4. Fiber reinforcement.
5. Vapor retarders.
6. Curing materials.
7. Accessories.
8. Concrete mixture materials.
9. Concrete mixture class types.
10. Concrete mixing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 032000 "Concrete Reinforcing" for steel reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement.
2. Refer to Oklahoma Department of Transportation Specifications for Earthwork and Paving.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement or blended hydraulic cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following:

1. slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.

B. Water/Cementitious Materials (w/cm) Ratio: The ratio by weight of mixing water to cementitious materials.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Portland cement.
2. Aggregates.
3. Admixtures:
 - a. Include limitations of use. Admixtures that do not comply with reference ASTM International requirements must be submitted with test data for approval.
4. Fiber reinforcement.
5. Liquid floor treatments.
6. Curing materials.

7. Joint fillers.
 8. Repair materials.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:
1. Mixture identification.
 2. Compressive strength at 28 days or other age as specified.
 3. Compressive strength required at stages of construction.
 4. Durability exposure classes for Exposure Categories F, S, W, and C.
 5. Maximum w/cm ratio.
 6. Slump or slump flow limit.
 7. Air content.
 8. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
 9. Synthetic microfiber content.
 10. Intended placement method.
 11. Submit adjustments to design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant changes.
- C. Shop Drawings:
1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
 - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each of the following:
1. Cementitious materials.
 2. Admixtures.
 3. Fiber reinforcement.
 4. Curing compounds.
 5. Vapor retarders.
 6. Joint-filler strips.
 7. Repair materials.
- B. Material Test Reports: For the following:
1. Portland cement.
 2. Aggregates.
 3. Admixtures.
- C. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each mix design.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer's production facilities and delivery vehicles certified in accordance with NRMCA's certification requirements or equivalent approval by a State DOT.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on each concrete mixture.
 - 1. Include the following information in each test report:
 - a. Admixture dosage rates.
 - b. Slump.
 - c. Air content.
 - d. Seven-day compressive strength.
 - e. 28-day compressive strength.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and **ACI 301**.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301**.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301** and **ACI 305.1**.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement sheet vapor retarder/termite barrier material and accessories for sheet vapor retarder/ termite barrier and accessories that do not comply with requirements or that fail to resist penetration by termites within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE STANDARDS

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with **ACI 301** unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I Type II, gray white.
 - 2. Fly Ash is not allowed.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates:
 - 1. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3M
 - 2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: **1-1/2 inches** nominal.
 - 3. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M.
 - 4. Alkali-Silica Reaction: Comply with one of the following for each aggregate used:

- a. Expansion Result of Aggregate: Not more than 0.04 percent at one year when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293.
- b. Expansion Results of Aggregate and Cementitious Materials in Combination: Not more than 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C1567. Do not use this option with fly ash with an alkali content greater than 4.0 percent. Submit supporting data for each aggregate showing expansion in excess of 0.10 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C1260.
- c. Alkali Content in Concrete: Not to exceed **4 lb./cu. yd.** for aggregate with expansion greater than or equal to 0.04 percent and less than 0.12 percent or **3 lb./cu. yd.** for aggregate with expansion greater than or equal to 0.12 percent and less than 0.24 percent. Test aggregate reactivity in accordance with ASTM C1293. Calculate alkali content of concrete in accordance with **ACI 301**. Do not use this option with natural pozzolan or fly ash that has a calcium oxide content greater than 18 percent or an alkali content greater than 4.0 percent; or for an aggregate with expansion at one year greater than or equal to 0.24 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293.

2.3 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
 - 6. Admixtures with special properties, with documentation of claimed performance enhancement, ASTM C494/C494M, Type S.
- C. Mixing Water for Concrete Mixtures and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C1602/C1602M. Include documentation of compliance with limits for alkalis, sulfates, chlorides, or solids content of mixing water from Table 2 in ASTM C1602/C1602M.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd.** when dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C171, polyethylene film burlap-polyethylene sheet.
 - 1. Color:
 - a. Ambient Temperature Below 50 deg F (10 deg C): Black.
 - b. Ambient Temperature between 50 and 85 deg F (10 and 29 deg C): Any color.
 - c. Ambient Temperature Above 85 deg F (29 deg C): White.
- C. Water: Potable water that does not cause staining of the surface.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Vapor Retarder: ASTM E1745, Classification "A", 15-mils minimum.

2.6 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/8 inch** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch** or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/4 inch** and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch** or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXTURE MATERIALS

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with **ACI 301**.
 - 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.

2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURE CLASS TYPES

- A. Class A: Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.
 - 1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318** Class F1.
 - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **4000 psi** at 28 days.
 - 3. Slump Limit: **4 inches**, plus or minus **1 inch** for concrete footings, grade beams, and tie beams.
 - 4. Air Content:
 - a. Exposure Class F1: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for concrete containing **1-1/2-inch** nominal maximum aggregate

size.

- B. Class C: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
 - 1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318** Class F0.
 - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **4000 psi** at 28 days.
 - 3. Maximum w/cm Ratio : 0.45.
 - 4. Slump Limit: **5 inches**, plus or minus **1.5 inches** for concrete interior slabs-on-ground.
 - 5. Air Content:
 - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
 - 6. Synthetic Microfiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of **1.5 lb/cu. yd.**
- C. Class D: Normal-weight concrete used for interior suspended slabs.
 - 1. Exposure Class: **ACI 318** Class F0.
 - 2. Minimum Compressive Strength: **4000 psi** at 28 days.
 - 3. Slump Limit: **4 inches**, plus or minus **1 inch** for concrete interior suspended slabs.
 - 4. Air Content:
 - a. Total air content must not exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.
 - 5. Synthetic Microfiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than a rate of **1.5 lb/cu. yd.**

2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and furnish delivery ticket.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For mixer capacity of **1 cu. yd.** or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than five minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 - 2. For mixer capacity larger than **1 cu. yd.**, increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional **1 cu. yd.**
 - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
 1. Daily access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
 4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with **ACI 117**.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
 2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
 3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than **6 inches**, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
 4. Lap joints **6 inches** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
 5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.
 6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
 7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
 - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by **6 inches** on all sides and sealing to vapor retarder.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.
 - 1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
 - 2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Water addition in transit or at the Project site must be in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M and must not exceed the permitted amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
 - 1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
 - 2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with **ACI 301**.
 - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
 - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6 inches** into preceding layer.
 - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
 - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
 - 2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
 - 6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
 - 8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
 2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
 - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches** into concrete.
 4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 5. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-third of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form control joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch**. Repeat grooving of control joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch** wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than **1/2 inch** or more than **1 inch** below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
 2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.8 APPLICATION OF FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Float Finish:
1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
 2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with **ACI 117** tolerances for conventional

- concrete.
- 3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- B. Trowel Finish:
 - 1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
 - 2. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
 - 3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 4. Do not add water to concrete surface. Use of an approved finishing aid is acceptable.
 - 5. Do not apply troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
 - 6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 - 7. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, in accordance with **ASTM E1155**, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Slabs on Ground:
 - 1) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 50; and of levelness, FL 35; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 40; and of levelness, FL 24.
 - b. Suspended Slabs:
 - 1) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 25; and of levelness, FL 20; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 17; and of levelness, FL 15.
- C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with a fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
 - 2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
- D. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate finish to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps, as indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - a. Uniformly spread **25 lb/100 sq. ft.** of dampened slip-resistive aggregate over surface in one or two applications.
 - b. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
 - c. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
 - d. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.

3.9 APPLICATION OF FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:
 - 1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by

form-facing material.

- a. Patch voids larger than **1-1/2 inches** wide or **1/2 inch** deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than **1 inch**.
 - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117**, Class D.
 - e. Apply to concrete surfaces for metal lap pan deck formed surfaces and those surfaces that are buried or covered with subsequent installed surfaces.
2. ACI 301 (ACI 301M) Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.
- a. Patch voids larger than **3/4 inch** wide or **1/2 inch** deep.
 - b. Remove projections larger than **1/4 inch**.
 - c. Patch tie holes.
 - d. Surface Tolerance: **ACI 117**, Class B.
 - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling in:

1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to match color and texture with in-place construction exposed to view.
3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases **6 inches** high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than **6 inches** in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: **4000 psi** at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
5. For supported equipment, install anchor bolts per manufacturer's requirements that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
 - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

- b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
 - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.
 - 1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

3.11 APPLICATION OF CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
 - 1. Comply with **ACI 301** for cold weather protection during curing.
 - 2. Comply with **ACI 301** and **ACI 305.1** for hot-weather protection during curing.
 - 3. Maintain moisture loss no more than **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h**, calculated in accordance with ACI 305R, before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with **ACI 308.1** as follows:
 - 1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
 - 2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
 - 3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
 - 4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period as follows:
 - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
 - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
 - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
 - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
 - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
 - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with **ACI 308.1** as follows:
 - 1. Begin curing after finishing concrete.
 - 2. Interior Concrete Floors:
 - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
 - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit

application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.

- a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches**.
 - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
- 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
 - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
 - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following not in cold weather:
 - a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
- 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than **12 inches**.
 - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
 - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
 - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
 - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
 - a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:
- 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than

12 inches.

- b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
- 2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
 - a) Water.
 - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- d. Floors To Receive Chemical Stain:
 - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install curing paper over entire area of floor.
 - 2) Install curing paper square to building lines, without wrinkles, and in a single length without end joints.
 - 3) Butt sides of curing paper tight; do not overlap sides of curing paper.
 - 4) Leave curing paper in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- e. Floors To Receive Urethane Flooring:
 - 1) As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
 - 2) Rewet absorptive cover, and cover immediately with polyethylene moisture-retaining cover with edges lapped **6 inches** and sealed in place.
 - 3) Secure polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place to prohibit air from circulating under polyethylene moisture-retaining cover.
 - 4) Leave absorptive cover and polyethylene moisture-retaining cover in place for duration of curing period, but not less than 28 days.
- f. Floors To Receive Curing Compound:
 - 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
 - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
 - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
- g. Floors To Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:
 - 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
 - 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.12 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
 - 2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than seven days' old.
 - 3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
 - 4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
 - 5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface has received a float finish or abrasive surface preparation.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches** deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.14 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
 - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
 - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to meet specification requirements.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks in excess of **0.01 inch** spalls, air bubbles exceeding surface finish limits, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface exceeding surface finish limits, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than **1/2 inch** in any dimension to solid concrete.
 - a. Limit cut depth to **3/4 inch**.
 - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
 - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.

- d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
- 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
 - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
 - b. Compact mortar in place and match surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance, as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
- 1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
 - a. Correct low and high areas.
 - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of **0.01 inch** wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width.
 - 3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by adding patching mortar.
 - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
 - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
 - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of **1/4 inch** to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - 7. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes **1 inch** or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete.
 - a. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, and expose steel reinforcement with at least a **3/4-inch** clearance all around.
 - b. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete,

- except without coarse aggregate.
 - d. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete.
 - e. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
- 8. Repair random cracks and single holes **1 inch** or less in diameter with patching mortar.
 - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
 - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
 - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
 - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
 - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
 - 1. Testing agency to be responsible for providing curing facility for initial curing of strength test specimens on-site and verifying that test specimens are cured in accordance with standard curing requirements in ASTM C31/C31M.
 - 2. Testing agency to immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
 - 3. Testing agency to report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.
 - a. Test reports to include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and **ACI 301**, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
 - 1) Project name.
 - 2) Name of testing agency.
 - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
 - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
 - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
 - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
 - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
 - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
 - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
 - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
 - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
 - 12) Field test results of fresh concrete, including slump or slump flow, air content, temperature and density.

- 13) Information on storage and curing of samples at the Project site, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
- 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.

C. Inspections:

1. Headed bolts and studs.
2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.

D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M to be performed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding **5 cu. yd.**, but less than **25 cu. yd.**, plus one set for each additional **150 cu. yd.** or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing is to be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
 - a. One test at point of delivery for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - b. Perform additional tests as needed.
3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
 - a. One test at point of delivery for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - b. Perform additional tests as needed.
4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; .
 - a. One test for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
 - a. One test hourly when air temperature is **40 deg F** and below or **80 deg F** and above, and one test for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast.
6. Concrete Density: ASTM C138/C138M:
 - a. One test for each composite sample when strength test specimens are cast.
7. Unit Weight: ASTM C138/C138M density of fresh structural lightweight concrete.
 - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each

day's pour of each concrete mixture. The fresh density should be consistent with that associated with the equilibrium density within a tolerance of plus or minus 4 lb/ft.3.

8. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
 - a. Cast and standard cure two sets of two **6 inches** by **12-inches** or **4-inch** by **8-inch** cylindrical specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast, and field cure two sets of three standard cylindrical specimens for each composite sample.
 9. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
 - a. Test one set of two standard cured specimens at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test to be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
 10. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor to evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
 11. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests of standard cured cylinders equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than **500 psi** if specified compressive strength is **5000 psi**, or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than **5000 psi**.
 12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
 13. Additional Tests:
 - a. Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
 - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength to be in accordance with **ACI 301**, Section 1.7.6.3.
 14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with **ASTM E1155** within 24 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:

1. Protect from petroleum stains.
2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using floor slab protective covering.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 033543
POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Liquid floor treatments.
 - 2. Polished concrete surface finish requirements.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for new concrete designed for polished concrete finishing, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, initial finishing, and curing.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Aggregate Exposure Class: Visual observation of polished floor aggregate surface exposure area after grinding and polishing operations. Aggregate exposure class ranges are A, B, and C.
- B. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by Architect in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of polished concrete.
- C. Distinctness of Image (DOI): The distinctness (clarity) of images reflected by the glossy coating surface appearance of the polished concrete finish appearance levels. The transmission of this reflection is measured in accordance with ASTM D5767.
- D. Haze: The cloudiness or milky appearance of images from objects produced by reflection in a polished concrete surface. The measurement of this appearance is defined in accordance with ASTM D4039. The test method reading is put into a calculation resulting in a Haze Index value.
- E. Specular Gloss: A reflectance value determined by a single measurement of gloss from shining a known amount of light at a surface within a specific angle of illumination in accordance with ASTM D523.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with polished concrete to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - d. Cast-in-place concrete subcontractor.
 - e. Polished concrete finishing subcontractor.

- f. Architect.
 - g. Owner's representative.
- 2. Review concrete slab design for compressive strength, flatness and levelness, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, sequencing, construction joints, concrete repair procedures, concrete finishing, polished concrete appearance and aggregate exposure requirements, polished concrete mockups, and protection of polished concrete.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Polishing Schedule: Submit plan showing polished concrete surfaces and schedule of polishing operations for each area of polished concrete before start of polishing operations. Include locations of all joints, including construction joints.
- C. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed color.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. An installer experienced in performing polished concrete finishing with a minimum of five previous projects similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
 - 2. Trained and certified by manufacturer of polished concrete system materials.
 - 3. Concrete Polishing Craftsman of the Concrete Polishing Council.
- B. Polished Concrete Standards: Comply with ACI 310.1.

1.6 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups **10 by 10 ft** to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, tolerances, and standard of workmanship. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups in the location of the Work and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect for newly placed concrete.
 - 2. Demonstrate surface preparation, coloring, pattern, curing, tested aggregate exposure, tested polish appearance, sealing and protecting of polished concrete.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as needed for other construction activities.

- B. Ambient Conditions: Ensure installation location and Project ambient conditions comply with manufacturers written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STAIN MATERIALS

2.2 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear liquid materials for the applications of cleaning solutions, densifiers, and sealers that strengthen or protect polished concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. AmeriPolish
 - b. ARDEX Americas
 - c. H&C Decorative Concrete Products; a brand of Sherwin-Williams Co.
 - d. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - e. MAPEI Corporation

2.3 POLISHED CONCRETE SURFACE FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Aggregate Exposure Class: Class C Coarse Aggregate 10 to 20 percent cement fines and fine aggregates.
- B. Polish Concrete Appearance Levels: Level 2: Satin (Honed) up to 200- to 400-grit polish; DOI 10 to 39; Haze Reading less than 10; Reflective Sheen: Low to medium.
- C. Slip Resistance: Minimum Dynamic Coefficient of Friction (DCOF) of 0.42. Provide required slip resistance based on final gloss level and determined by the Concrete Polishing Council.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Repair Materials: As recommended in writing by manufacturer to repair and fill cracks, and repair surfaces compatible with polishing materials.
- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Cleaning Agents: As recommended in writing by manufacturer.

2.5 POLISHING EQUIPMENT

- A. Equipment and Supplies: Provide equipment and supplies, not limited to, the concrete grinding and concrete polisher equipment, tooling and polishing diamonds for the polished concrete finishing Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that concrete substrates are acceptable for grinding, polishing and product installation as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Do not begin Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been addressed and corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that concrete substrate preparation is in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Clean surfaces free of dust, dirt and other contaminants incompatible with liquids applied products and polishing.
- C. Clean and seal cracks as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Prepare, clean and fill joints with joint filler as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- E. Clean surface completely of any dust with cleaning solution as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Machine grind floor surfaces progressively to receive aggregate and polish appearance levels indicated to match approved mockup.
- B. Scoring: Score decorative jointing in concrete surfaces **1/16 inch** deep with diamond blades to match pattern indicated. Rinse until water is clear. Score before staining.
 - 1. Joint Width: 1/4 inch max.
- C. Apply penetrating stain densifier treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
- D. Apply reactive color stain for polished concrete in polishing sequence and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Apply color dyes for polished concrete in polishing sequence and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Apply sealers to polished concrete in polishing sequence and in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions.
- G. Continue progressively polishing to aggregate and polish appearance levels to match approved mockup for final finish appearance.
- H. Visually inspect to remove defects and repolish areas that are defective. Repolish those areas that do not meet specified aggregate and polish levels per approved mockup.
- I. Complete edges of floor finish that adjoins surrounding floor areas in a sharp and clean manner.
- J. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Measure polish specular gloss level, DOI, and haze as specified; repolish if required to achieve Project requirements.
- B. Verify aggregate exposure as specified. Machine surfaces if required to achieve Project requirements.
- C. Verify compliance of slip resistance to comply with specified slip-resistance rating.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
- B. Protect installed polished concrete surfaces from damage during construction in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 033543

SECTION 042200
CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Mortar and grout materials.
 - 3. Reinforcement.
 - 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
 - 5. Embedded flashing materials.
 - 6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.
- C. Exposed: Weather-exposed side of a constructed wall.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
 - 3. Lintel design and types required.
 - 4. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - 2. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 3. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 4. Reinforcing bars.

5. Joint reinforcement.
 6. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
 2. Include test reports, in accordance with ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 402/602.
- D. Weather Procedures:
1. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.
 2. Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 1. Extend cover a minimum of **24 inches** down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

042200 - 2

contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 402/602.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is **40 deg F** and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 402/602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
- C. Source Limitations for Integral Water Repellent: Obtain integral water-repellent units from CMU and mortar manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) in accordance with Tables 1 and 2 in TMS 402/602.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications, and standards, except as otherwise shown or specified:
1. TMS 402/602:
 - a. Maintain one copy of the standard in Project field office at all times during construction. Contractor's supervisory personnel are to be thoroughly familiar with this material as it applies to Project.

2.3 CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 402/602 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work. and will be within **20 ft.** vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Building Lintels:
 - 1. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.
 - a. Knockout blocks will not be acceptable.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Standard CMUs: Load-bearing ASTM C90 and Non-load-bearing ASTM C129.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Medium weight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions **3/8 inch** less-than-nominal dimensions.
 - 4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
 - 5. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.
- B. Architectural CMUs: Load bearing, ASTM C90 and Non-load bearing, ASTM C129.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions **3/8 inch** less-than-nominal dimensions.
 - 4. Pattern and Texture:
 - a. Standard pattern, ground-face finish. Match Architect's samples.
 - b. Standard pattern, split-face finish. Match Architect's samples.

5. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
6. Special Aggregate: Provide units made with aggregate matching aggregate in Architect's sample.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 1. Alkali content is not more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 2. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
- E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.
- F. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, **Grade 60**.
- B. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A951/A951M.
 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: **0.187-inch** diameter.
 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: **0.148-inch** diameter.
 5. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than **16 inches** o.c.
 6. Provide in lengths of not less than **10 ft.**, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least **1-1/2 inches** into masonry but with at least a **5/8-inch** cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that

allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.

1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped **1/4-inch-** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
 2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **0.25-inch-** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars **1-1/2 inches** wide by **1/4 inch** thick by **24 inches** long, with ends turned up **2 inches** or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.
1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A153M.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Embedded Flashing Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
 3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge.
 4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing.
- B. Flexible Flashing:
1. Flexible Flashing Fabrication:
 - a. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and **1/2 inch** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
 - b. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for **3/4 inch** and down into joint **1/4 inch** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
 - c. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
 - d. Solder metal items at corners.
- C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
 2. Solder for Copper: ASTM B32, Grade Sn50.
 3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, chemically curing silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.
- D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1;

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

042200 - 6

compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.10 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
- C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 402/602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that would impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- D. Exposed Masonry: Mix units to produce uniform blend of colors and textures.
- E. Where existing masonry occurs, match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- F. Temperature Control: Perform temperature-sensitive construction procedures while masonry Work is progressing. Temperature ranges indicated below apply to air temperatures existing at time of installation except for grout. For grout, temperature ranges apply to anticipated minimum night temperatures. In heating mortar and grout materials, maintain mixing temperature selected within **10 deg F**.
 - 1. 40 to 32 Deg F (4 to 0 Deg C):
 - a. Mortar: Heat mixing water to produce mortar temperature between **40 and 120 deg F**.
 - b. Grout: Follow normal masonry procedures.
 - 2. 32 to 25 Deg F (0 to Minus 4 Deg C):
 - a. Mortar: Heat mixing water and sand to produce mortar temperatures between **40 and 120 deg F**; maintain temperature of mortar on boards above freezing.
 - b. Grout: Heat grout materials to **90 deg F** to produce in-place grout temperature of **70 deg F** at end of workday.
 - 3. 25 to 20 Deg F (Minus 4 to 7 Deg C):
 - a. Mortar: Heat mixing water and sand to produce mortar temperatures between **40 and 120 deg F**; maintain temperature of mortar on boards above freezing.
 - b. Grout: Heat grout materials to **90 deg F** to produce in-place grout temperature of **70 deg F** at end of workday.
 - c. Heat both sides of walls under construction using salamanders or other heat sources.
 - d. Use windbreaks or enclosures when wind is in excess of 15 mph.
 - 4. 20 Deg F (Minus 7 Deg C) and Below:
 - a. Mortar: Heat mixing water and sand to produce mortar temperatures between **40 and 120 deg F**.
 - b. Grout: Heat grout materials to **90 deg F** to produce in-place grout temperature of **70 deg F** at end of workday.
 - c. Masonry Units: Heat masonry units so that they are above **20 deg F** at time of laying.

- d. Provide enclosure and auxiliary heat to maintain an air temperature of at least **40 deg F** for 24 hours after laying units.
5. Do not heat water for mortar and grout to above **160 deg F**.
- G. Masonry Protection: Protect completed masonry and masonry not being worked on in the following manner. Temperature ranges indicated apply to mean daily air temperatures except for grouted masonry. For grouted masonry, temperature ranges apply to anticipated minimum night temperatures.
 1. 40 to 32 Deg F (4 to 0 Deg C): Protect masonry from rain or snow for at least 24 hours by covering with weather-resistive membrane.
 2. 32 to 25 Deg F (0 to Minus 4 Deg C): Completely cover masonry with weather-resistive membrane for at least 24 hours.
 3. 25 to 20 Deg F (Minus 4 to 7 Deg C): Completely cover masonry with weather-resistive insulating blankets or similar protection for at least 24 hours, 48 hours for grouted masonry.
 4. 20 Deg F (Minus 7 Deg C) and Below: Except as otherwise indicated, maintain masonry temperature above 32 deg F (0 deg C) for 24 hours using enclosures and supplementary heat, electric heating blankets, infrared lamps or other methods proven to be satisfactory. For grouted masonry, maintain heated enclosure to **40 deg F** for 48 hours.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus **1/2 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch** in a story height or **1/2 inch** total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, or **1/2 inch** maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2 inch** maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2 inch** maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2 inch** maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2 inch** maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.** or **1/2 inch** maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than **1/16 inch**.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**, with a maximum thickness limited to **1/2 inch**.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than **1/8 inch**.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus **3/8 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less-than-nominal **4-inch** horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than **4 inches**. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal **4-inch** horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout **24 inches** under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid CMUs with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush

head joints.

- C. Where applicable, set masonry trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
 - 1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
 - 2. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
 - 3. Rake out mortar joints for pointing with sealant.
- D. Rake out mortar joints at pre-faced CMUs to a uniform depth of **1/4 inch** and point with epoxy mortar to comply with epoxy-mortar manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of **5/8 inch** on exterior side of walls, **1/2 inch** elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of **6 inches**.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than **16 inches** o.c.
 - 2. Provide reinforcement not more than **8 inches** above and below wall openings and extending **12 inches** beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- C. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- D. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide an open space not less than **1/2 inch** wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **24 inches** o.c. vertically and **36 inches** o.c. horizontally.

3.8 CONTROL JOINTS

- A. General: Install control joint materials in CMUs as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition

movement.

- B. Locate control joints. See Drawings.
- C. Form control joints in CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - 2. Install preformed control joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

3.9 LINTELS

- A. Install lintels over openings as indicated.
- B. Provide concrete or formed-in-place masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than **12 inches** for brick-size units and **24 inches** for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches** at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install loose steel over openings See Drawings.
 - 1. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches** at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lintels at Fire-Rated Openings: Provide fire-rated masonry required or steel lintels with applied fireproofing in thickness required to maintain fire rating of wall or partition rating.

3.10 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 402/602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 402/602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than **60 inches**.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements is done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Level 1 special inspections to comply with the International Building Code.
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces, grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each **5000 sq. ft.** of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, in accordance with ASTM C140 for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780.
- G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780. Test mortar for compressive strength.
- H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C1019.
- I. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, in accordance with ASTM C1314 at 28 days.
- J. Fire-Resistance Rated Construction: Where applicable, inspect fire-rated CMU construction to determine compliance with construction documents per building code compliance.

3.12 PARGING

- A. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in two uniform coats to a total thickness of **3/4 inch**. Dampen wall before applying first coat, and scarify first coat to ensure full bond to subsequent coat.
- B. Use a steel-trowel finish to produce a smooth, flat, dense surface with a maximum surface variation of **1/8 inch per foot**. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom.
- C. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent

construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as Work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid-strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 08-04A.

3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

END OF SECTION 042200

**SECTION 042613
MASONRY VENEER**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Concrete face brick.
 - 3. Ties and anchors.
 - 4. Mortar mixes.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
 - 1. Steel lintels in masonry veneer.
 - 2. Steel shelf angles for supporting masonry veneer.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Indicate sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
 - 2. Weep/cavity vents.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
 - 1. Decorative CMUs.
 - 2. Weep/cavity vents.
 - 3. Cavity drainage material.
 - 4. Accessories embedded in masonry.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - 2. Integral water repellant used in decorative CMUs.
 - 3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.

4. Mortar admixtures.
 5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 6. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
- C. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of veneer, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
1. Extend cover a minimum of **24 inches** down face of veneer, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with masonry.
1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry

damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is **40 deg F** and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain exposed masonry units and mortar aggregate from single source.
- B. For exposed masonry units and cementitious mortar components, obtain each color and grade from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work and will be within **20 ft.** vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
- B. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C90, normal weight.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Nettleton Concrete, Inc. (800) 382-2462 2318 Moore Rd. Jonesboro, Arkansas 72402;
 - b. Product: Burnished Face Concrete
 - c. or approved equal
 2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions **3/8 inch** less than nominal dimensions.

3. Pattern and Texture: Standard pattern, burnished face polished block; two sides and at ends at corners..
4. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
5. Special Aggregate: Provide units made with aggregate matching aggregate in Architect's sample.

2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 1. Alkali content will not be more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 2. For joints less than **1/4 inch** thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the **No. 16** sieve.
 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
- F. Water: Potable.

2.5 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least **1-1/2 inches** into veneer but with at least a **5/8-inch** cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304.
 3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
 4. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
 1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped **1/4-inch-** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.

2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **0.187-inch-** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
- D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a **100 lbf** load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of **1/16 inch**.
 2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from **0.1084-inch-** thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
 3. Fabricate wire ties from **0.187-inch-** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Slotted Plate: Sheet metal anchor section, with screw holes at top and bottom; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for wire tie. Use self-adhering tape to seal penetration behind anchor plate.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wire-Bond: Type III #1004 or comparable product by one of the following:
 5. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
 6. Stainless Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads; either made from Type 410 stainless steel or made with a carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless steel shank.

2.6 EMBEDDED FLASHING

- A. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- C. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing, Flanged: Stainless steel sheet **0.019 inch by 1-1/2 inches** with a **3/8-inch** flange at top .

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Weep/Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Rectangular Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Clear butyrate, **3/8 by 1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches** long.

2. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth **1/8 inch** less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1) or approved equal
- C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.

2.8 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 2. Use portland cement-lime or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Use Type N unless another type is indicated.
 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- B. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting

of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

- C. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- D. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- E. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds **30 g/30 sq. in.** per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus **1/2 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch** in a story height or **1/2 inch** total.

B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than **1/16 inch** except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**, with a maximum thickness limited to **1/2 inch**.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than **1/8 inch**.
- 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus **3/8 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
- 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**.
- 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a

straight line by more than **1/16 inch** from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal **4-inch** horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- B. Lay CMUs with face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints. At starting course, fully bed entire units, including area under cells.
 - 1. At anchors and ties, fully bed units and fill cells with mortar as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer **3/4 inch** or more in width.

3.6 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
 - 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints.
 - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
 - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **18 inches** o.c. vertically and **24 inches** o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each **2 sq. ft.** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches** of openings and at intervals, not

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

042613 - 8

exceeding **8 inches**, around perimeter.

- B. Provide not less than 1-1/2 inches of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
 - 1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

3.7 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form expansion joints as follows:
 - 1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint **4 inches** in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
 - 2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.
 - 3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
 - 4. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than **3/8 inch** for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than **3/8 inch**.
 - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide offset angle supports where indicate and where openings of more than **12 inches** for brick-size units and **24 inches** for block-size units are indicated without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches** at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

2. Extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least **8 inches**; with upper edge tucked under water-resistive barrier, lapping at least **4 inches**. Fasten upper edge of flexible flashing to sheathing through termination bar.
 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum, to edge of next full unit at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum, to edge of next full unit and turn ends up not less than **2 inches** to form end dams.
 4. Interlock end joints of sawtooth sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than **1-1/2 inches** or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 5. Install metal drip edges with sawtooth sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 6. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
 7. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
 8. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are indicated to be built into masonry.
- D. Install weep holes in veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
 2. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing under brick sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
 3. Space weep holes **24 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
 5. Trim wicking material flush with outside face of wall after mortar has set.
- E. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.
- F. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form vents.
1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements will be at Contractor's expense.

- B. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, in accordance with ASTM C140/C140M for compressive strength.
- C. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than **4 inches** in each dimension.
 - 2. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within **18 inches** of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042613

**SECTION 051200
STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Structural-steel materials.
 - 2. Shrinkage-resistant grout.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Structural-steel materials.
 - 2. High-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 3. Anchor rods.
 - 4. Threaded rods.
 - 5. Shop primer.
 - 6. Galvanized-steel primer.
 - 7. Galvanized repair paint.
 - 8. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
- E. Survey of existing conditions.
- F. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is

accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).

- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. ANSI/AISC 303.
 - 2. ANSI/AISC 360.
 - 3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- B. Connection Design Information:
 - 1. Option 1: Connection designs have been completed and connections indicated on the Drawings.
 - 2. Option 3 and 3A: For connections not shown, design connections in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 by fabricator's qualified professional engineer. Member reinforcement at connections is indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Use Load and Resistance Factor Design; data are given at factored-load level.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A572/A572M, **Grade 50.**

- B. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M.
- D. Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering) Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A588/A588M, **50 ksi**.
- E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B structural tubing.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS AND CONNECTORS

- A. High-Strength A325 Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A563, Grade DH**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F959/F959M, **Type 325-1**, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies, consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; **ASTM A563, Grade DH**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.

2.4 RODS

- A. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: **ASTM A563** heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: **ASTM F436**, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.
- B. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, straight.
 - 1. Nuts: **ASTM A563** heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: **ASTM F436**, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.
- C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A36/A36M.
 - 1. Nuts: **ASTM A63** heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A153/A153M, Class C.

2.5 FORGED-STEEL STRUCTURAL HARDWARE

- A. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon-steel bars, ASTM A108, AISI C-1035.

2.6 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
 - 1. Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: MPI#26.
 - 1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
 - 2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.7 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.9 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

2.10 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.

1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
2. Galvanize lintels shelf angles and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.11 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of **2 inches**.
 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 5. Galvanized surfaces unless indicated to be painted.
 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 2. SSPC-SP 3.
 3. SSPC-SP 7 (WAB)/NACE WAB-4.
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
 1. Allow testing agency access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
 2. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
 3. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.

4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates, and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.

3.3 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

3.4 REPAIR

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing, and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
 - 2. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 - 2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
 - 2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E165/E165M.
 - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E164.
 - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E94/E94M.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 051213
ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Architecturally exposed structural steel (AESS).
 - 2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" requirements that also apply to AESS.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AESS: Architecturally exposed structural steel.
- B. Category AESS 1: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 1 and may be designated AESS 1 or Category AESS 1 in the Contract Documents.
- C. Category AESS 2: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 2 and is designated as AESS 2 or Category AESS 2 in the Contract Documents.
- D. Category AESS 3: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 3 and is designated as AESS 3 or Category AESS 3 in the Contract Documents.
- E. Category AESS 4: Structural steel that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS 4 and is designated as AESS 4 or Category AESS 4 in the Contract Documents.
- F. Category AESS C: Structural steel with custom characteristics that is categorized by ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10, as AESS C and is designated as AESS C or Category AESS C in the Contract Documents.
- G. SEAC/RMSCA Guide Specification: SEAC/RMSCA's "Sample Specification, Section 05 02 13: Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate surface preparation requirements for shop-primed items.
- B. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 2. Filler.

3. Primer.
 4. Galvanized-steel primer.
 5. Etching cleaner.
 6. Galvanized repair paint.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of AECS components. Shop Drawings for structural steel may be used for AECS.
1. Identify AECS category for each steel member and connection, including transitions between AECS categories and between AECS and non-AECS.
 2. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 3. Include embedment Drawings.
 4. Indicate orientation of mill marks and HSS seams.
 5. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain. Indicate grinding, finish, and profile of welds.
 6. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections. Indicate orientation and location of bolt heads.
 7. Indicate exposed surfaces and edges and surface preparation being used.
 8. Indicate special tolerances and erection requirements.
 9. Indicate weep holes for HSS and vent holes for galvanized HSS.
 10. Indicate surface preparation, primer, and coating requirements, including systems specified in other Sections.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
- B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU, or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (AC 172) and is experienced in fabricating AECS similar to that indicated on this Project.
- B. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P3 or SSPC-QP 3.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Use special care in handling AECS to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage during fabrication, delivery, and erection. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep AECS members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect AECS members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
1. Do not store AECS materials on structure in a manner that might cause

distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where AECS is indicated to fit against other construction, verify actual dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements of ANSI/AISC 303, Sections 1 through 9 and as modified in Section 10, "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel."

2.2 FILLER

- A. Polyester filler intended for use in repairing dents in automobile bodies.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
 - 1. Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 2. SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.
 - 3. Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Primer: MPI#26.
 - 1. Etching Cleaner: MPI#25, for galvanized steel.
 - 2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate and assemble AECS to the maximum extent possible. Locate field joints at concealed locations if possible. Detail assemblies to minimize handling and to expedite erection.
 - 1. Use special care handling and fabricating AECS before and after shop painting to minimize damage to shop finish.
- B. Category AECS 2:
 - 1. Comply with overall profile dimensions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M for welded built-up members. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
 - 2. Prepare surfaces according to Part 2 "Shop Priming" Article and SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
 - 3. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges to remove burrs and provide

- smooth surfaces and eased edges.
4. Make intermittent welds appear continuous, using filler or additional welding.
 5. Seal weld open ends of hollow structural sections with **3/8-inch** closure plates.
 6. Limit butt and plug weld projections to **1/16 inch**.
 7. Install bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
 8. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
 9. Remove blemishes and surface irregularities resulting from temporary braces or fixtures by filling or grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
 10. Grind tack welds smooth unless incorporated into final welds.
 11. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
 12. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance to one-half that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
 13. Limit as-fabricated curved structural steel tolerance to that permitted for structural-steel materials in ANSI/AISC 303.
 14. Limit as-fabricated straightness tolerance of welded built-up members to one-half that permitted by AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 15. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
 16. Make welds uniform and smooth.
- C. Cleaning Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering) AESS: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.

2.5 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

2.6 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A123/A123M.
1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
 2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 3. Galvanize AESS lintels attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of **2 inches**.

2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 4. Corrosion-resisting (weathering) steel surfaces.
 5. Galvanized surfaces .
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean nongalvanized surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 11.
 2. SSPC-SP 6 (WAB)/NACE WAB-3.
 3. SSPC-SP 5 (WAB)/NACE WAB-1.
- C. Preparing Galvanized Steel for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner .
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Examine AECS for twists, kinks, warping, gouges, and other imperfections before erecting.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep AECS secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Take special care during erection to avoid marking or distorting the AECS and to minimize damage to shop painting. Set AECS accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
1. Remove welded tabs that were used for attaching temporary bracing and safety

- cabling and that are exposed to view in the completed Work. Take care to avoid any blemishes, holes, or unsightly surfaces resulting from the use or removal of temporary elements.
 - 2. Grind tack welds smooth.
 - 3. Remove backing and runoff tabs, and grind welds smooth.
 - 4. Orient bolt heads on the same side of each connection and maintain orientation consistently from one connection to another.
 - 5. Remove erection bolts in AECS, fill holes with weld metal or filler, and grind or sand smooth to achieve surface quality approved by Architect.
 - 6. Fill weld access holes in AECS with weld metal or filler and grind, or sand smooth to achieve surface quality as approved by Architect.
 - 7. Conceal fabrication and erection markings from view in the completed structure.
- B. In addition to ANSI/AISC 303, Section 10 requirements, comply with the following.
- 1. Erection of Category AECS 1 and Category AECS 2:
 - a. Erect AECS to the standard frame tolerances specified in ANSI/AISC 303 for non-AECS.
 - b. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Keep appearance and quality of welds consistent. Maintain true alignment of members without warp exceeding specified tolerances.
 - c. Remove weld spatter, slivers, and similar surface discontinuities.
 - d. Grind off butt and plug weld projections larger than **1/16 inch**.
 - e. Continuous welds are to be of uniform size and profile.
 - f. Ream holes that must be enlarged. Use of drift pins or burning is not permitted. Replace misaligned connection plates where holes cannot be aligned with acceptable appearance.
 - g. Splice members only where indicated on Drawings.
 - h. No torch cutting or field fabrication is permitted.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

3.5 REPAIR

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and touchup galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting, to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-

SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

2. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to inspect AESS as specified in Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing." The testing agency is not responsible for enforcing requirements relating to aesthetic effect.
- B. Architect will observe AESS in place to determine acceptability relating to aesthetic effect.

END OF SECTION 051213

**SECTION 053100
STEEL DECKING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof deck.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Roof deck.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with SDI QA/QC and the following welding codes:
 - 1. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store products in accordance with SDI MOC3. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck in accordance with AISI S100.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
053100 - 1

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, **No. 10** minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi**, not less than **0.0359-inch** design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi**, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI standards for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, **0.0747 inch** thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- I. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories in accordance with SDI C, SDI NC, and SDI RD, as applicable; manufacturer's written instructions; and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOF DECK

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than **1-1/2 inches** long, and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: **5/8 inch**, nominal.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds **18 inches** apart, maximum.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or **18 inches**, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches**, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped **2 inches** minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than **12 inches** apart with at least one weld at each corner.
 - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld or mechanically fasten.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR DECK

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: **3/4 inch**, nominal.
 - 2. Weld Spacing:
 - a. Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of **16 inches** apart, but not more than **18 inches** apart.

- b. Space and locate welds as indicated.
- 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or **36 inches**, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 - 3. Fasten with a minimum of **1-1/2-inch** long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches**, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure in accordance with SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, in accordance with SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
- F. Install piercing hanger tabs at **14 inches** apart in both directions, within **9 inches** of walls at ends, and not more than **12 inches** from walls at sides unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting:
 - 1. Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
 - 2. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
 - a. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
 - 2. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 053100

**SECTION 061000
ROUGH CARPENTRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood products.
 - 2. Wood-preservative-treated lumber.
 - 3. Fire-retardant-treated lumber.
 - 4. Dimension lumber framing.
 - 5. Miscellaneous lumber.
 - 6. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than **2 inches nominal** size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal** size or greater but less than **5 inches nominal** size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS

- A. Maximum Moisture Content:
 - 1. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent for **2-inch nominal** thickness or less; no limit for more than **2-inch nominal** thickness unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
061000 - 1

1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
 6. Grounds.
 7. Utility shelving.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.
- C. Utility Shelving: Lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species and grades:
1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or No. 2 Common (Sterling) grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
 3. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
 4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
- E. Roofing Nailers: Structural- or No. 2-grade lumber or better; kiln-dried Douglas fir, southern pine, or wood having similar decay-resistant properties.
- F. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.3 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **3/4-inch** nominal thickness.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches** into wood substrate.
1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:
 - 1. Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.025 inch**.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- D. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches** o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than **96 inches** o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
 - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than **96 inches** o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and **2-inch nominal** thickness.
 - 3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

061000 - 3

sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than **100 sq. ft.** and to solidly fill space below partitions.

- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- I. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- J. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach wood blocking to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Attach wood roofing nailers securely to substrate to resist the designed outward and upward wind loads indicated on Drawings and in accordance with ANSI/SPRI ED-1, Tables A6 and A7.
- D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 062023
INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior trim.
 - a. Chair rail in the offices
 - b. Wood base
 - 2. Paneling.
 - a. Panel at the reception desk
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for priming and backpriming of interior finish carpentry.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Interior trim.
 - 2. Paneling.
 - 3. Shelving and clothes rods.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Third-Party Certifications: For each product.
 2. Third-Party Certified Life Cycle Assessment: For each product.
 3. Chain-of-Custody Certificates: For certified wood products. Include statement of costs.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- F. Samples for Verification:
1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with nonfactory-applied finish, with half of exposed surface finished; **50 sq. in.** for lumber and **8 by 10 inches** for panels.
 2. For foam-plastic moldings, with half of exposed surface finished; **50 sq. in.**
 3. For each finish system and color of lumber and panel products with factory-applied finish, **50 sq. in.** for lumber and **8 by 10 inches** for panels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.
1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
 2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- B. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.
- C. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- E. Melamine-Faced Particleboard: Particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, finished on both faces with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with ISO 4586-3, Grade VGS.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 PANELING

- A. Hardwood Veneer Plywood Paneling: Manufacturer's stock hardwood plywood panels complying with HPVA HP-1.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Chesapeake Plywood LLC
 - b. Holland Southwest International
 - 2. Face Veneer Species and Cut: plain sliced Black Walnut.
 - 3. Veneer Matching: Selected for similar color and grain.
 - 4. Backing Veneer Species: Any hardwood compatible with face species.
 - 5. Construction: Veneer core.
 - 6. Thickness: **7/16 inch**.
 - 7. Finish: Match Architect's samples.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
- B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
- C. Installation Adhesive for Foam-Plastic Moldings: Product recommended for indicated use by foam-plastic molding manufacturer.
- D. Paneling Adhesive: Comply with paneling manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives.
- E. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation, complying with ASTM D3498, that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:
 - 1. Interior standing and running trim, except shoe and crown molds.
 - 2. Wood-board paneling.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than **1 inch** in nominal thickness to **1/16-inch** radius and edges of lumber **1 inch** or more in nominal thickness to **1/8-inch** radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch** maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PANELING

- A. Reference Reception desk details.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
 - 1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.
- B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 062023

SECTION 064100
ARCHITECTURAL WOOD CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wood-veneer-faced casework for transparent finish.
 - 2. Plastic-laminate-clad casework.
 - 3. Wood materials.
 - 4. Shop finishing.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for standard, interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framing required for anchoring cabinets.
 - 3. Section 123661 "Simulated Stone Countertops."

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.
- B. Coordinate wood species, veneer, cut, grade, matching, finishing, and other requirements with wood doors wood paneling as specified in

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review locations and method of attachment of backing required for casework installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include panel material description and finish.
 - 2. Include accessories.
 - 3. Include hardware.
 - 4. Include shop finishing.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - a. Show large-scale details.

- b. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - c. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural cabinets.
 - d. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
- C. Samples for Verification: Provide a minimum of three samples showing the full range of color and/or grain to be expected in the finished work, for the following.
 - 1. Lumber for Transparent Finish: Not less than **8 inches** long by **3/4 inch** thick, and as wide as practical, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
 - 2. Veneer Leaves: Representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished cabinets. Samples to show the full range of color and grain to be expected.
 - 3. Veneer Panel for Transparent Finish: **8 by 8 inches** by **1/4 inch**, representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished casework.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Statements: For manufacturer and Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Employs skilled workers with minimum of 5 years of experience in installation of the similar product.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 30 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

- C. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD CASEWORK

- A. Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) Standard:
 - 1. Aesthetic Performance Grade: Premium.
- B. Casework Construction Type: Frameless.
- C. Door and Drawer-Front:
 - 1. Design: Flush panel.
 - 2. Style: Flush overlay.
 - a. Reveal Dimension: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate (HDPL) (PL1): ISO 4586-3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Wilsonart as noted in the drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ABET Inc.
 - b. Formica Corporation
 - c. Laminart LLC
 - d. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand
- E. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Match Architect's sample.
- F. Exposed Exterior Surfaces:
 - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: VGS.
 - 2. Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
 - 3. Edgebanding: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL) PVC or ABS, 0.018-inch minimum thickness.
- G. Exposed Interior Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL) the same color and pattern as exposed exterior surfaces.

1. Edgebanding: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL) PVC or ABS, **0.018-inch** minimum thickness.
- H. Semiexposed Surfaces:
1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL) cabinet liner Grade CLS, ISO 4586-3.
 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermally fused laminate (TFL) panels with PVC or polyester edgebanding.
 3. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL), ISO 4583-3, grade to match exposed surface.
 4. Drawer Bottoms: Thermally fused laminate (TFL) panels.
 5. Shelves: Adjustable.
 - a. Loading Capacity: 50 lb/sq. ft.
 6. Edgebanding: High-pressure decorative laminate (HDPL).

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than **3 inches** wide.
 2. Wood Moisture Content:
 - a. Non-Climate-Controlled Environments: 9 to 15 percent.
 - b. Climate-Controlled Environments: 6 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 2. Particleboard (Medium Density): ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
 4. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.
 5. Thermally Fused Laminate (TFL) Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of AWI 300.

2.3 CASEWORK HARDWARE

- A. Hinges:
1. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 160-180 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- B. Pulls and Knobs:
1. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, **5 inches** long, **5/16 inch** in diameter.
- C. Catches and Latches:

1. Magnetic Catches: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- D. Shelf Rests and Standards:
 1. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; two-pin plastic with shelf hold-down clip.
- E. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
 1. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.
 - a. Type: Full extension.
 - b. Material: Epoxy-coated polymer slides.
 - c. Motion Feature: self-closing mechanism.
 2. Drawer Types:
 - a. Pencil drawers not more than **3 inches** high and not more than **24 inches** wide provide **50 lb** load capacity.
 - b. General-purpose drawers more than **3 inches** high, but not more than **6 inches** high and not more than **24 inches** wide, provide **75 lb** load capacity.
 - c. File drawers more than **6 inches** high or more than **24 inches** wide provide **100 lb** load capacity.
 - d. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **24 inches**, but not more than **30 inches** wide, provide **150 lb** load capacity.
 - e. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **30 inches** wide provide **200 lb** load capacity.
 - f. Computer keyboard tray provides **75 lb** load capacity.
- F. Locks for Drawer and Hinged-Doors: Cylindrical (cam) type, five-pin tumbler, brass with chrome-plated finish, and complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.11, Grade 1.
 1. Provide a minimum of two keys per lock and six master keys.
 2. Provide locks on every door and drawer.
- G. Door Bumpers: Manufacturer's standard self-adhering clear silicone pads.
- H. Hardware Finish:
 1. Exposed Hardware: Provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.
 - a. Reference drawings.
 2. Concealed Hardware: Manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease sharp edges and corners.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times architectural cabinet

- fabrication will be complete.
2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

2.5 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Finish architectural cabinets at manufacturer's shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Transparent Finish:
1. Aesthetic Performance Grade: Premium.
 2. Finish System: TR-4, varnish, conversion.
 3. Wash Coat for Closed-Grain Woods: Apply wash-coat sealer to cabinets made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
 4. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
 5. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining, apply wash-coat sealer and allow to dry. Apply paste wood filler and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
 6. Sheen: Satin, 31-45 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
 2. Verify size and locations of cutouts for appliances, special equipment, sinks, plumbing, and other items to be mounted in or adjacent to casework.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CASEWORK

- A. Install casework to comply with requirements of the structural and aesthetic performance specified.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** using concealed shims.
 - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
- D. Anchor cabinets in accordance with AWI requirements or tested method to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to framing or substrates.
 - 1. Install cabinets to comply with seismic requirements as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Shop Finishes: Touch up finishing after installation of architectural cabinets. Fill nail holes with matching filler.
 - 1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are shop applied.
 - a. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Field Finishing: See Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for finishing of installed architectural cabinets.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program certifying that casework, including installation, complies with requirements of ANSI/AWI 0620 for the specified grade.
 - 1. AWI QCP Inspector to prepare and submit inspection report.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where impossible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware and other moving parts to function smoothly.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064100

SECTION 064116
PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Miscellaneous materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
 - 2. Cabinet hardware and accessories.
 - 3. Miscellaneous materials.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show large-scale details.
 - 3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - 4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's or manufacturer's standard size.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
 - 1. Plastic Laminates: **8 by 10 inches**, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.
 - a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material

applied to one edge.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations without Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations with Humidity Control: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 20 and 50 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for

trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: ISO 4586-3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listed in the finish legend or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ABET Inc.
 - b. Formica Corporation
 - c. Laminart LLC
 - d. Pionite; a Panolam Industries International, Inc. brand
 - e. Wilsonart LLC
- F. Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Plastic-Laminate Grade: HGS.
 - 2. Edges: PVC tape, 0.018-inch minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - 3. Pattern Direction: As indicated.
- G. Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC tape, 0.018-inch minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - b. Edges of Thermally Fused Laminate Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
 - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4586-3, grade to match exposed surface.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and

drawers unless located directly under tops.

- I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, ISO 4583-3, grade to match exposed surface.
- J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
 - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Match Architect's sample.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 4 to 9 percent.

2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Cabinet Hardware: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide listed in the casework schedule or or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Accuride International Inc.
 - b. CompX International, Inc.
 - c. Julius Blum & Co., Inc.
 - d. Knappe & Vogt Manufacturing Company
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B01602, 170 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 5 inches long, 2-1/2 inches deep, and 5/16 inch in diameter.
- E. Catches: Roller catches, ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B03071.
- F. Shelf Rests: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B04013; two-pin plastic with shelf hold-down clip.
- G. Drawer Slides: ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
 - 1. Heavy-Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mount.
 - a. Type: Full extension.
 - b. Material: Galvanized steel ball bearing slides.
 - c. Motion Feature: Self-closing mechanism.
 - 2. Pencil drawers not more than 3 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide 50 lb load capacity.

3. General-purpose drawers more than **3 inches** high, but not more than **6 inches** high and not more than **36 inches** wide, provide **75 lb** load capacity.
 4. File drawers more than **6 inches** high or more than **24 inches** wide, provide **100 lb** load capacity.
 5. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **24 inches** but not more than **30 inches** wide, provide **150 lb** load capacity.
 6. Lateral file drawers more than **6 inches** high and more than **30 inches** wide, provide **200 lb** load capacity.
 7. Computer keyboard tray, provide **75 lb** load capacity.
- H. Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, B07063; aluminum.
- I. Door Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- J. Drawer Locks: ANSI/BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- K. Door and Drawer Silencers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- L. Grommets for Cable Passage: **2-inch** OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
1. Color: match countertop color.
- M. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for ANSI/BHMA finish number indicated.
1. Dark, Oxidized, Satin Bronze, Oil Rubbed: ANSI/BHMA 613 for bronze base; ANSI/BHMA 640 for steel base; match Architect's sample.
- N. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in ANSI/BHMA A156.9.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Type II water-resistant type as selected by fabricator to comply with requirements.
1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural

- cabinet fabrication will be complete.
2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches** using concealed shims.
1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than **16 inches** o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

**SECTION 072100
THERMAL INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 075423 "Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
 - 2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.
 - 3. Section 133419 "Metal Building Systems" for pre-engineered insulation system.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.
 - 1. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, indicate initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area, and number of bags installed.
 - 2. Sign, date, and post the certification in a conspicuous location on Project site.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
 - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes less than Class A, 25 and 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119 or UL 263; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from listings of another qualified testing agency.
- C. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- D. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation **12 inches** and wider in width.
- E. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): R-value as indicated below in accordance with ASTM C518.
 - 1. R-Value at walls: 19.

2.2 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; complying with ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Rockwool International A/S: AFB evo or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
 - b. Owens Corning
 - c. ROCKWOOL
 - d. Or approved equal.

2.3 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Insulation Fastener Accessories: Provide double-pointed weld pins, lagging pins, quilting pins, duct liner pins, insulation hangers, specialty washers, special caps, j-hooks, capacitor discharge annular weld pins, capacitor discharge acoustical lagging pins, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by insulation fastener manufacturer to produce complete insulation supports.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.

2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.
- B. Miscellaneous Application Accessories:
1. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
 2. Crack Sealer: Closed-cell insulating foam in aerosol dispenser recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer for filling gaps in board insulation.
 3. Curtain-Wall Insulation Clips: Z-shaped galvanized steel as recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer.
 4. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.
 5. Detailing Foam Insulation for Voids: Urethane foam complying with AAMA 812, low expansion pressure suitable for filling insulation gaps and voids adjacent to openings to protect against water, air, and sound intrusion.
 6. Tapes for Reflective Insulation and Barriers:
 - a. Aluminum-foil tape for repairs or splicing material.
 - b. Double-sided tape for adhering to metal framing or overlapping material.
 - c. Reinforced-foil tape for sealing tears or cuts in sheet vapor barrier.
 7. Clip-and-Pin Components:
 - a. Beam/Bar Joist Clips: For beams, bar joists, and Z-type purlins.
 - b. C-Purlin Clips: For C-type purlins.
 - c. Angle Clips: For sidewalks and floors.
 - d. Tube Clips: For wood beams and metal tubular framing.
 - e. Locking Washers: Aluminum; white to match reflective bubble insulation facing colors.
 8. Wire Mesh Lath Support for Insulation: ASTM C1032.
 - a. Material: Woven wire lath **1-1/2-inch** hexagonal-shaped mesh with minimum **0.0510-inch** diameter, galvanized-steel wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or those that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products, applications and applicable codes.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.

- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches** o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
 - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
- B. Mineral-Wool Board Insulation: Install insulation fasteners **4 inches** from each corner of board insulation, at center of board, and as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit courses of insulation between masonry wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
 - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members in accordance with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain **3-inch** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 - 5. Where glass-fiber blankets are indicated for sound attenuation above ceilings, install unfaced blanket insulation over ceiling area in thickness indicated. Where partitions occur, extend insulation up either side of partition.
 - 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets in accordance with ASTM C1320 and as follows:
 - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
 - 7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.

- a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward exterior of construction.
 - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately **2.5 lb/cu. ft.**
 - 2. Detailing Foam Insulation for Voids: Apply in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply in accordance with ASTM C1015 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
 - 2. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Technical Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Building Insulation."
- D. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked.
 - 2. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
- B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 075423
THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Accessory roofing system materials.
3. Vapor retarder.
4. Roof insulation and accessories.
5. Cover board.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for premanufactured copings and counterflashings.
3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, Roofing System Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after

- installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
 2. Base and sheet flashings and membrane termination details.
 3. Flashing details at penetrations.
 4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
 5. Roof plan showing orientation of roof deck and orientation of roofing membrane, fastening spacings, and pattern for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
 6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
 7. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
 8. Tie-in with adjoining wall system air barrier.
- C. Wind-Uplift-Resistance Submittal: For roofing system indicating compliance with wind-uplift performance requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Certificates:
1. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roofing membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- B. Product Test Reports: For roofing membrane and insulation, tests performed by an independent qualified testing agency indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- C. Sample warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, certified, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing system materials to Project site in original containers with seals

unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 2. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources.
 - 1. Store in a dry location.
 - 2. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing system materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty to include all components of roofing system, such as vapor retarder, roof insulation, fasteners, adhesives, cover board, roofing membrane, base flashing sheet, walkways, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Roofing System Installer's Warranty: Submit Roofing System Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Roofing System Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system, such as vapor retarder, roof insulation, fasteners, adhesives, cover board, roofing membrane, base flashing sheet, walkways and other components of roofing system.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain components for roofing system from roofing membrane manufacturer or manufacturer approved by roofing membrane manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings to withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing system and flashings to remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing membrane to withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roofing membrane to resist impact damage when tested in accordance with ASTM D3746/D3746M, ASTM D4272/D4272M, or the Resistance to Foot Traffic Test in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing system materials to be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind-uplift pressures when tested in accordance with FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; when tested by a qualified testing agency in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.
 - 1. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING SYSTEM

- A. TPO Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, fabric-backed TPO sheet.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carlisle Construction Materials; Carlisle Companies: FleeceBACK® TPO or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Syntec Systems
 - b. GAF
 - c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
 - d. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc
 - e. Versico Roofing Systems; Carlisle Construction Materials
 - f. Or approved equal.
 - 2. Thickness: 60 mil, nominal.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.4 ACCESSORY ROOFING SYSTEM MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials as recommended in writing by roofing membrane manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing system components.
- B. Base and Sheet Flashings: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material,

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

075423 - 4

type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as roofing membrane.

- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended in writing by roofing membrane manufacturer.
- D. Roof Vents: As recommended in writing by roofing membrane manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Not less than **4-inch** diameter.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Flexible FAST adhesive at full spray or 4" o.c. beads; or approved equal.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch** thick; with anchors.
- G. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing system components to substrate; tested for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing membrane manufacturer.
- H. Safety Accessories: Roofing membrane manufacturer's standard yellow seaming tape for designating safety perimeters and rooftop hazards.
- I. Miscellaneous Accessories: As recommended in writing by roofing membrane manufacturer.

2.5 ROOF INSULATION AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing membrane manufacturer, approved for use in listed roof assemblies.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1 felt facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Syntec Systems
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - c. GAF
 - d. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
 - e. Or approved equal.
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carlisle Construction Materials; Carlisle Companies: InsulBase Polyiso or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Syntec Systems
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - c. GAF
 - d. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company
 - e. Or approved equal.
 - 3. Compressive Strength: Grade 2, **20 psi**.
 - 4. Size: **48 by 96 inches**.
 - 5. Thickness:
 - a. Base Layer: 2 inches.

- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
1. Material: Match roof insulation.
 2. Minimum Thickness: **1/4 inch**.
 3. Slope:
 - a. Roof Field: **1/4 inch per foot** unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Saddles and Crickets: **1/2 inch per foot** unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- D. Roof Insulation Accessories, General: As recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
1. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation and to another insulation layer as follows:
 - a. Modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive.
 - b. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 - c. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
 2. Insulation Fasteners: Insulation manufacturer's standard factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

2.6 COVER BOARD

- A. General: Cover board as recommended in writing by roofing membrane manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing system components.
- B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Cover Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, water-resistant gypsum board.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
 - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
 - d. USG Corporation
 - e. Or approved equal.
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Gold Bond Building Products: DexCELL Glass Mat Roof Board or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
 - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
 - d. USG Corporation
 - e. Or approved equal.
 3. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately **3/16 inch** thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Size: Approximately **36 by 60 inches**.
 - 2. Fully adhered.
 - 3. Color: Contrasting with roofing membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Roofing System Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING SYSTEM, GENERAL

- A. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.
- B. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF INSULATION AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Coordinate installation of roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written installation

instructions. Install minimum of two layers of insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness.

- C. Install each layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than **24 inches** in adjacent rows and offset not less than **12 inches** from previous layer.
 - 1. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tightly to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - 2. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch** in width.
 - 3. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump, with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches**.
 - 4. Trim insulation, so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - 5. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch** with insulation.
 - 6. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - 7. Secure insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
 - 8. Place thermal spacers and plates on insulation in required fastening patterns and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 - a. Install plates and fasteners tight and flat to substrate with no dimpling, and with fastener extending **1 inch** minimum into roof deck; do not overdrive fasteners.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARD

- A. Install cover board over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches** in each direction.
 - 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
 - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - 3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - 4. Adhere cover board to substrate in accordance with FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Install slip sheet over cover board and beneath roofing membrane.
- C. Place plates on cover board in required fastening patterns and secure in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Install plates and fasteners tight and flat to substrate with no dimpling, and with fastener extending **1 inch** minimum into roof deck; do not overdrive fasteners.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF TPO ROOFING MEMBRANE

- A. Install roofing membrane over roof area for adhered application method in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Unroll roofing membrane and allow it to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel and

Owner's testing and inspection agency.

- D. Accurately align roofing membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps. Apply roofing membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- E. Adhered Application: Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of roofing membrane at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roofing membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roofing membrane.
 - 1. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roof area.
- F. Mechanically Attached Application: Secure roofing membrane over area to receive roofing in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Mechanically fasten or adhere roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- G. Seams and End Laps: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane, and hot-air-weld side seams and end laps of roofing membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roofing membrane and sheet flashings.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF BASE AND SHEET FLASHINGS

- A. General: Install and adhere base and sheet flashing and preformed flashing accessories to substrates in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of flashings at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air-weld side seams and end laps to ensure a watertight installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
075423 - 9

- a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
 - b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - c. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - d. As required by roofing membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
2. Provide **6-inch** clearance between adjoining pads.
3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Walkways are to be fully adhered.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, and installation of roofing membrane, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Perform the following tests:
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
 1. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075423

SECTION 077100 ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Manufactured units for the following applications:
 - 1. Copings.
 - 2. Underlayment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 077253 "Snow Guards" for prefabricated devices designed to hold snow on the roof surface, allowing it to melt and drain off slowly.
 - 3. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, roofing-system testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing-system manufacturer's representative, Installer, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties, including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
 - 2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
 - 3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof specialty.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.
 - 1. Plans, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between factory pre manufactured- and field-assembled installation.
 - 2. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 - 3. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 4. Details of special conditions.
- C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

- E. Samples for Verification:
1. Include Samples of each type of roof specialty to verify finish and color selection, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
 2. Include copings reglets and counterflashings made from **12-inch** lengths of full-size components in specified material, and including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of roof specialty copings that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.
- B. Product Test Reports: For copings, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Qualification Statements: For manufacturer.
- D. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roof specialties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer offering products that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested to specified design pressure.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate roof specialties with roofing system, exterior wall system, air barrier, flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
1. Performance Coordination: Coordinate with the Work of roofing and exterior wall Sections to ensure that roof specialties provided under the Work of this Section meet or exceed specified roofing and exterior wall design performance

requirements.

- B. Confirm and coordinate compatibility of materials and comply with warranty requirements of roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Coordinate roof specialties layout and seams with sizes and locations of joints and seams in adjacent materials.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section 075423 "Thermoplastic-polyolefin (TPO) Roofing."
- B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties to withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install copings that are listed in FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.3 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding **12 ft.**, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Berridge Manufacturing Company
 - 2. Metallic-Coated Steel Coping Caps: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Match Metal Wall Panel.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
 - 4. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on, fabricated from coping-cap material.
 - a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, **12 inches** wide, with integral cleats.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with minimum ASTM A792/A792M, **Class AZ50** coating designation; structural quality. Mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
 - 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

2.5 UNDERLAYMENT

- A. Felt-backed Thermoplastic-polyolefin (TPO) roofing wrapping over parapet

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Roof specialty manufacturer's recommended fasteners, designed to meet performance requirements, suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Fasteners for Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip

zinc-coated steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M.

- C. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- D. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roof specialties in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer's written installation instructions.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
 - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of **12 ft.** with no joints within **18 inches** of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between **40 and 80 deg F**, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended in writing by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roof specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below **40 deg F**.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF COPINGS

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
 - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting in accordance with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting."
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- C. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 077253 SNOW GUARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 1. Rail-type, seam-mounted snow guards.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans showing layouts and attachment details of snow guards.
 - 1. Include details of rail-type snow guards.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of snow guard, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating load at failure of attachment to roof system identical to roof system used on this Project.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit adhesive-mounted snow guards to be installed, and adhesive cured, according to adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide snow guards that withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Structural Performance: Snow guards to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 RAIL-TYPE SNOW GUARDS

A. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide SnoBlox-SnoJax; ColorBar (6 foot) or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Alpine SnowGuards
 - b. Berger; division of OmniMax International, Inc.
 - c. IceBlox Inc.
 - d. LMCurbs
 - e. PMC Industries, Inc
 - f. Rocky Mountain Snow Guards, Inc.
 - g. S-5! Metal Roof Innovations, Ltd.
 - h. TRA Snow and Sun, Inc.
2. Description: Snow guard rails fabricated from metal pipes, bars, or extrusions, anchored to brackets and equipped with one rail with integral track to accept color-matching inserts of material and finish used for metal roof.
3. Ice stoppers: Mill finish integral ice stops at each panel
4. Brackets and Baseplate: **ASTM B209** aluminum; mill finished ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 stainless steel; 320-grit polished finish, oil-ground, uniform, fine, directionally textured finish.
5. Bars: **ASTM B221** aluminum; mill finish.
 - a. Profile: with integral track to accept color-matching inserts of material and finish used for metal roof.
6. Seam Clamps: **ASTM B221** aluminum extrusion or ASTM B85/B85M aluminum casting with stainless steel set screws incorporating round nonpenetrating point; designed for use with applicable roofing system to which clamp is attached.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, snow guard attachment, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare substrates for bonding snow guards.
- B. Prime substrates according to snow guard manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install snow guards according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Space rows as indicated on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Space rows as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Attachment for Standing-Seam Metal Roofing:
 - 1. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roofing or fastening methods that void metal roofing finish warranty.
 - 2. Rail-Type, Seam-Mounted Snow Guards:
 - a. Install brackets to vertical ribs in straight rows.
 - b. Secure with stainless steel set screws, incorporating round nonpenetrating point, on same side of standing seam.
 - c. Torque set screw in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - d. Install cross members to brackets.

END OF SECTION 077253

**SECTION 079200
JOINT SEALANTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Urethane joint sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in **1/2-inch-** wide joints formed between two **6-inch-** long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
 - 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
 - 2. Manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Type of substrate material.
 - 4. Proposed test.
 - 5. Number of samples required.
- B. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: For each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested from sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.

- C. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- D. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers' special warranties.
- B. Installer's special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other

atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew Resistant, Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Sika Corporation - Building Components
 - b. The Dow Chemical Company
 - c. Or approved equal
- B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Soudal Accumetric
 - b. The Dow Chemical Company
 - c. Or approved equal

2.4 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.

2.5 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, P, 35, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 35, Uses T and NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bostik; Arkema
 - b. Or approved equal
- B. Urethane, M, NS, 50, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation
 - b. Or approved equal

2.6 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.

2.7 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- B. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants in accordance with requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile at in accordance with Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
 - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at in accordance with Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joints in horizontal surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Joints between dissimilar materials.
 - d. Joints as indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: S, P, 35, T, NT
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of

colors.

B. Joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in masonry.
 - b. Interior finish materials.
 - c. Joints between dissimilar materials.
 - d. Joints as indicated on drawings.
2. Joint- Sealant: silicone, nonstaining; S, NS, 50, NT
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

C. Joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal non-traffic surfaces in areas of high humidity.

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, or counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - c. Joints as indicated on drawings.
2. Joint Sealant: silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing; S, NS, 25, NT.
3. Joint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

D. Concealed mastics.

1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Aluminum thresholds.
 - b. Sill plates.
 - c. Joints as indicated on drawings.
2. Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079200

**SECTION 081113
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
 - 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings in accordance with NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
 - 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access

- control systems, and security systems.
- 7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
- 8. Details of accessories.
- 9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
- D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
 - 2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
 - 3. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly fire-rated borrowed-lite assembly windborne-debris impact resistance door thermally rated door assemblies for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
 - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum **4-inch**- high wood blocking. Provide minimum **1/4-inch** space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Ceco Door; AADG, Inc.; ASSA ABLOY
 2. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; ASSA ABLOY Group
 3. Gensteel Doors
 4. Titan Metal Products
 5. Or approved equal

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 2. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 4 for enhanced protection.
 1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within **30 feet** of grade.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
 SW23-01-01
 06/06/2025
 081113 - 3

materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
 - b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches**.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.042 inch**.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard with sound attenuation insulation..
2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.
 - b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
 - c. Construction: Full profile welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

C. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
 - b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches**.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Core: Manufacturer's standard with sound attenuation insulation..
 - g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener core for fire-rated and temperature-rise-rated doors.
2. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.
 - b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
 - c. Construction: Full profile welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.
 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule on Drawings.

- b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches**.
 - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**, with minimum **A40** coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
 - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
 - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
 - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
 - h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
 - i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener with insulation core for fire-rated doors.
2. Frames:
- a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**, with minimum **A40** coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch**.
- B. Construction: Full profile welded.
- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 HOLLOW-METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow-metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as adjacent door assemblies.

2.7 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
 - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each **24 inches** of frame height above **7 feet**.
 - 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum **3/8-inch**- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.

- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than **2-inch** height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), **04Z** coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum **3/4 inch** beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
 - 1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.

- a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- 4. Terminated Stops (Hospital Stops): Terminate stops **6 inches** above finish floor with a 45-degree angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule on Drawings, and templates.
 - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted hairline joints.
 - 1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with beveled stops unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 - 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
 - 4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
 - 5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.

2.10 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
 - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
 - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
 - 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
 - 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
 - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
 - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged

areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 081113

**SECTION 081416
FLUSH WOOD DOORS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core seven-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.
 - 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for field finishing doors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Solid-core seven-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product, including the following:
 - 1. Door core materials and construction.
 - 2. Door edge construction
 - 3. Door face type and characteristics.
 - 4. Door trim for openings.
 - 5. Door frame construction.
 - 6. Factory-machining criteria.
 - 7. Factory-finishing specifications.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Door schedule indicating door and frame location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
 - 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
 - 3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
 - 4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
 - 5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
 - 6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 7. Clearances and undercuts.
 - 8. Requirements for veneer matching.
 - 9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately **8 by 10 inches**, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent

finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
 - 2. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUSH WOOD DOORS AND FRAMES, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with the Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

2.2 SOLID-CORE SEVEN-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS AND TRANSOM PANELS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors, Seven-Ply Veneer-Faced:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide VT Industries, Architectural Wood Doors or an approved comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Algoma Hardwoods
 - b. Eggers Industries
 - c. Graham Wood Doors
- 2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty.
- 3. Performance Grade by Location:
 - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: public toilets janitor's closets assembly spaces exits.
- 4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Quality Grade: Premium.
- 5. Architectural Woodwork Standards Quality Grade: Premium.
- 6. Faces: two-ply wood panel with wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
 - a. Species: Maple WH.
 - b. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
 - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
 - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.
 - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
- 7. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
 - a. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf 475 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 8. Core for non-fire-rated doors, ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2 particleboard.
 - a. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

2.3 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
 - 2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
 - 3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
- B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.

1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
 2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
 4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
 5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.5 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
 3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Factory finish doors that are indicated on Drawings to receive transparent finish.
- D. Factory finish doors where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.
- E. Transparent Finish:
1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
 - a. System-9, UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester or Urethane.
 2. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
 3. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.

2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors and frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.
 1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches**.
 2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
 - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
 - b. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
 - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- D. Job-Fitted Doors:
 1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
 - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
 2. Machine doors for hardware.
 3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
 4. Clearances:
 - a. Provide **1/8 inch** at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
 - b. Provide **1/8 inch** from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide **1/4 inch** from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock and hinge edges.
 6. Bevel fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- E. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- F. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
 1. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure,

each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

- B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083613
SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sectional-door assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
 - 2. For power-operated doors, include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranty .

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Finish warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions in the U.S. Department of Justice's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" applicable to sectional doors.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Failure of components or operators before reaching required number of operation cycles.
 - c. Faulty operation of hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
 - e. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Provide sectional doors that comply with performance requirements specified without failure from defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads.
 - 1. Design Wind Load: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Testing: In accordance with ASTM E330/E330M or DASHMA 108 for garage doors and complying with DASHMA 108 acceptance criteria.
 - 3. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
 - a. Deflection of door sections in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed

- 1/120 of door width.
- b. Deflection of horizontal track assembly shall not exceed 1/240 of door height.

2.3 SECTIONAL-DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Sectional Door: Provide aluminum and glass sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated so that finished door assembly is rigid and aligned with tight hairline joints; free of warp, twist, and deformation; and complies with requirements in DASMA 102.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Overhead Door Corporation; Aluminum Glass Door 521 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Clopay Building Products
 - b. Martin Door Manufacturing
 - c. Overhead Door Corporation
 - d. Wayne Dalton; a division of Overhead Door Corporation
 - e. Or approved equal.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 10,000 25,000 operation cycles. One operation cycle is complete when door is opened from closed position to the open position and returned to closed position.
- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 0.4 cfm/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 or DASMA 105.
- D. U-Value: 0.052 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
- E. Steel Door Sections: ASTM A653/A653M, zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel sheet with G60 zinc coating.
 - 1. Door-Section Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - 2. Section Faces:
 - a. Thermal-Break Construction: Provide sections with continuous thermal-break construction separating the exterior and interior faces of door.
 - b. Exterior Face: Fabricated from single sheets, not more than 24 inches high; with horizontal meeting edges rolled to continuous, interlocking, keyed, rabbeted, shiplap, or tongue-in-groove, weather- and pinch-resistant seals and reinforcing flange return.
 - c. Interior Face: Enclose insulation completely within steel exterior facing and interior facing material, with no exposed insulation. Provide the following interior-facing material:
 - 3. End Stiles: Enclose open ends of sections with channel end stiles formed from galvanized-steel sheet not less than 0.040-inch nominal coated thickness and welded to door section.
 - 4. Intermediate Stiles: Provide intermediate stiles formed from not less than 0.040-inch- thick galvanized-steel sheet, cut to door section profile, and welded in place. Space stiles not more than 48 inches apart.
 - 5. Section Reinforcing: Horizontal and diagonal reinforcement as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Provide galvanized-steel bars, struts, trusses, or strip steel, formed to depth and bolted or welded in place. Ensure that reinforcement

does not obstruct vision lites.

- a. Bottom Section: Reinforce section with a continuous channel or angle conforming to bottom-section profile and allowing installation of astragal (weatherseal).
 - b. Hardware Locations: Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
6. Thermal Insulation: Insulate interior of steel sections with door manufacturer's standard CFC-free insulation of type indicated below:
- a. Board Insulation: Polystyrene or polyurethane, secured to exterior face sheet.
 - b. Foamed-in-Place Insulation: Polyurethane, foamed in place to completely fill interior of section and pressure bonded to face sheets to prevent delamination under wind load.
 - c. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, in accordance with ASTM E84.
- F. Aluminum Sections: **ASTM B221** extruded-aluminum stile and rail members of alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated; in minimum thickness required to comply with requirements; with rail and stile dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings; and with overlapped or interlocked weather- and pinch-resistant seal at meeting rails.
1. Door-Section Thickness: **1-3/4 inches**.
 2. Section Reinforcing: Continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
 - a. Hardware Locations: Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
 3. Insulated Stiles and Rails: Fill stiles and rails manufacturer's standard polyurethane expanding foam.
 4. Glazed Panels: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-framed section with glazing sealed with glazing tape and matching vinyl glazing bead. Glazing as follows:
 - a. Float Glass: 3 mm thick and complying with ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
 - b. Tempered Glass: 3 mm thick and complying with ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
 - c. Insulating Glass Units: Manufacturers' standard unit with tempered glass lites complying with ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- G. Track: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel, standard-lift track system. Provide complete system including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement to ensure rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides.
1. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A653/A653M, minimum **G60** zinc coating.
 2. Size: As recommended in writing by manufacturer for door size, weight, track configuration and door clearances indicated on Drawings.
 3. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Provide galvanized-steel members to support track without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors. Slot vertical sections of track spaced **2 inches** apart for door-drop safety

device.

- a. Horizontal Track: Provide continuous reinforcing angle from curve in track to end of track, attached to track and supported at points by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.
- H. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom top jambs of door.
- I. Windows: Manufacturer's standard window units of shape and size and in locations indicated on Drawings. Set glazing in vinyl, rubber, or neoprene glazing channel. Provide removable stops of same material as door-section frames. Provide the following glazing:
 1. Clear Float Glass: 3 mm thick and complying with ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality-Q3.
 2. Insulating Glass Units: Manufacturer's standard.
- J. Hardware: Heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
 1. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than **0.079-inch** nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations for door size.
 - a. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is impossible.
 - b. Provide double-end hinges where required for doors more than **16 ft.** wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer in writing.
 2. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Match roller-tire diameter to track width.
 - a. Roller-Tire Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each door with galvanized-steel lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.
- K. Locking Device:
 1. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on single-jamb side, operable from inside only.
 2. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.
- L. Counterbalance Mechanism:
 1. Torsion Spring: Adjustable-tension torsion springs complying with requirements of DASMA 102 for number of operation cycles indicated, mounted on torsion shaft.
 2. Cable Drums and Shaft for Doors: Cast-aluminum cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised.
 - a. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft.
 - b. Provide one additional midpoint bracket for shafts up to **16 ft.** long and two additional brackets at one-third points to support shafts more than **16 ft.** long unless closer spacing is recommended in writing by door

manufacturer.

3. Cables: Galvanized-steel, multistrand, lifting cables with cable safety factor of at least 5 to 1.
4. Cable Safety Device: Include a spring-loaded steel or bronze cam mounted to bottom door roller assembly on each side and designed to automatically stop door if lifting cable breaks.
5. Bracket: Provide anchor support bracket as required to connect stationary end of spring to the wall and to level the shaft and prevent sag.
6. Bumper: Provide spring bumper at each horizontal track to cushion door at end of opening operation.

M. Manual Door Operator:

1. Push-Up Operation: Lift handles and pull rope for raising and lowering doors located on inside and outside of bottom section; with counterbalance mechanism designed so that required lift or pull for door operation does not exceed **25 lbf**.

N. Metal Finish: Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Factory Prime Steel Finish: Compatible with field-applied finish and in manufacturer's standard color. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
 - a. Aluminum Finish: Comply with AAMA 2603 requirements for pigmented organic coatings applied to aluminum extrusions and panels.
 - b. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Tracks:
 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing with fasteners

- spaced not more than **24 inches** apart.
- 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weather-resistant fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Touchup Painting Galvanized Material: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION 083613

SECTION 084113
ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 3. Full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 4. Connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish.
 - 1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.
- E. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system.
- B. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Source Quality-Control Reports: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- D. Sample Warranties: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
- B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront. Include ASTM C1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Entity that is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) and that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer and who are certified under the Architectural Glass and Metal Technician (AGMT) certification program.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- C. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C1401 for design and installation of storefront systems that include structural glazing.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
- 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Deflection of Framing Members Supporting Glass: At design wind load, as follows:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of length of span of the framing

- member for lengths of up to **13 feet 6 inches** and to 1/240 of length of span of the framing member plus **1/4 inch** for lengths greater than **13 feet 6 inches**.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than **1/8 inch**.
 - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum **1/16-inch** clearance between framing members and operable units.
- D. Structural: Test in accordance with ASTM E330/E330M as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test in accordance with ASTM E331 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested in accordance with a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than **6.24 lbf/sq. ft.**
- F. Energy Performance: Certified and labeled by manufacturer for energy performance as follows:
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: U-factor for the system of not more than **0.41 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F** as determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
 - b. Entrance Doors: U-factor of not more than **0.68 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F** as determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: SHGC for the system of not more than 0.35 as determined in accordance with NFRC 200.
 - b. Entrance Doors: SHGC of not more than 0.35 as determined in accordance with NFRC 200.
 3. Air Leakage:
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: Air leakage for the system of not more than **0.06 cfm/sq. ft.** at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.** when tested in accordance with ASTM E283.
 - b. Entrance Doors: Air leakage of not more than **1.0 cfm/sq. ft.** at a static-air-pressure differential of **1.57 lbf/sq. ft.**
 4. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF):
 - a. Fixed Glazing and Framing Areas: CRF for the system of not less than 35

- as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
 - b. Entrance Doors: CRF of not less than 57 as determined in accordance with AAMA 1503.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: **120 deg F**, ambient; **180 deg F**, material surfaces.
- H. Structural-Sealant Joints:
 - 1. Designed to carry gravity loads of glazing.
- I. Structural Sealant: ASTM C1184. Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by structural-sealant-glazed, aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant to occur before adhesive failure.
 - 1. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
 - 2. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate, because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.

2.3 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer Company, Inc; TriFab Versaglaze 451/451T Framing System or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. EFCO Corporation
 - 2. Kawneer Company, Inc.; Arconic Corporation
 - 3. Manko Window Systems, Inc.
 - 4. YKK AP America Inc.
 - 5. Or approved equal
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
 - 2. Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
 - 3. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 4. Glazing Plane: Front.
 - 5. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
 - 6. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
 - 7. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 8. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.

1. Door Construction: **2-inch** overall thickness, with minimum **0.188-inch**- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
2. Door Design: Wide stile; **5-inch** nominal width.
3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
4. Finish: Match adjacent storefront framing finish.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door, to comply with requirements in this Section.
 1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products equivalent in function and comparable in quality to named products.
 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
 3. Opening-Force Requirements:
 - a. Egress Doors: Not more than **15 lbf** to release the latch and not more than **30 lbf** to set the door in motion and not more than **15 lbf** to open the door to its minimum required width.
 - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than **5 lbf** to fully open door.
- C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, quantity, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
 1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
 2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.

2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant

and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed storefront manufacturers for this use.

1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**.
- B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B221**.
- C. Structural Profiles: ASTM B308/B308M.
- D. Steel Reinforcement:
 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1008/A1008M.
 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- E. Steel Reinforcement Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of **1 inch** that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for **30-mil** thickness per coat.
- E. Rigid PVC filler.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project in accordance with Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCE AND STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not install damaged components.
- C. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- D. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- E. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
- F. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- H. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- I. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- J. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- K. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- L. Install entrance doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware in accordance with entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
- M. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- N. Install structural glazing as follows:
 - 1. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
 - 2. Set glazing into framing in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and standard practice. Use a spacer or backer as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Set glazing with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
 - 4. Hold glazing in place using temporary retainers of type and spacing recommended by manufacturer, until structural sealant joint has cured.
 - 5. Apply structural sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer and framing manufacturer's written instructions and in compliance with local codes.
 - 6. Apply structural sealant at temperatures indicated by sealant manufacturer for

- type of sealant.
7. Allow structural sealant to cure in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 8. Clean and protect glass as indicated in Section 088000 "Glazing."
 9. After structural sealant has completely cured, remove temporary retainers and insert backer rod between lites of glass as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
 10. Install weatherseal sealant to completely fill cavity, in accordance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to produce weatherproof joints.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 1. Plumb: **1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.**
 2. Level: **1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.**
 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to **1/2 inch** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch.**
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from **1/2 to 1 inch** wide, limit offset from true alignment to **1/8 inch.**
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of **1 inch** wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to **1/4 inch.**
 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch** over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests: Perform the following tests on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems.
 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect to be tested in accordance with AAMA 501.2 and to not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.
- B. Inspection Agency: Owner will engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections.
- C. Inspections:
 1. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each aluminum-framed entrance door equipped with panic hardware, located in an exit enclosure, electrically controlled, and equipped with special locking arrangements, in accordance with NFPA 101, Ch. 7 "Means of Egress," Section "Means of Egress Components," Article "Inspection of Door Openings."
- D. Aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware Maintenance:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.

END OF SECTION 084113

**SECTION 087100
DOOR HARDWARE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

3.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware
 - 2. Electronic access control system components
- B. Section excludes:
 - 1. Windows
 - 2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
 - 3. Signage
 - 4. Toilet accessories
 - 5. Overhead doors
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
 - 3. Division 08 Sections:
 - a. "Flush Wood Doors"
 - b. "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"
 - 4. Division 26 "Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
 - 5. Division 28 "Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

3.2 REFERENCES

- A. UL LLC
 - 1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
 - 2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
 - 3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
 - 4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware
- B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute
 - 1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
 - 2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
 - 3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
 - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware
- C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
 3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
 5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies
- D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute
1. ANSI A117.1 – 2017 Edition – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
 2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
 3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
 4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
 5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames

3.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
 - a. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
 - b. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
 - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
 - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
 - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
 - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
 - 4) Risers.
3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
 - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.
4. Door Hardware Schedule:
 - a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.

- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
 - c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
 - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
 - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
 - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
 - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.
5. Key Schedule:
- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
 - b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
 - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
 - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
 - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
 - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.

C. Informational Submittals:

- 1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
- 2. Provide Product Data:
 - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
 - b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.

D. Closeout Submittals:

- 1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
 - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
 - b. Catalog pages for each product.
 - c. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
 - d. Final keying schedule
 - e. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
 - f. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit written reports to the Owner and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) of the results of functional testing and inspection for:
 - a. Fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
 - b. Required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.

3.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with a minimum of 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project. Supplier to be recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturer of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in the Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
 - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
 - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
 - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
 - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

B. Certifications:

1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
 - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by UL LLC, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
 - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
 - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
3. Electrified Door Hardware

- a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 4. Accessibility Requirements:
 - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.
- C. Pre-Installation Meetings
 - 1. Keying Conference
 - a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
 - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3) Requirements for key control system.
 - 4) Requirements for access control.
 - 5) Address for delivery of keys.
 - 2. Pre-installation Conference
 - a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
 - d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
 - e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
 - f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.
 - 3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:
 - a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

3.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.

3.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

3.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
 - a. Mechanical Warranty
 - 1) Locks
 - a) Schlage L Series: 10 years
 - 2) Exit Devices
 - a) Von Duprin: 10 years
 - 3) Closers
 - a) LCN 4000 Series: 30 years
 - b. Electrical Warranty
 - 1) Locks
 - a) Schlage: 3 years
 - 2) Exit Devices
 - a) Von Duprin: 3 years

3.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

3.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Approval of alternate manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category are only to be considered by official substitution request in accordance with Section 012500.
- B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

3.2 MATERIALS

- A. Fabrication
 - 1. Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. provide screws according to manufacturer's recognized installation standards for application intended.
 - 2. Finish exposed screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
 - 3. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible for hardware units exposed when door is closed. Coordinate with "Metal Doors and Frames", "Flush Wood Doors", "Stile and Rail Wood Doors" to ensure proper reinforcements. Advise the Architect where visible fasteners, such as thru bolts, are required.
- B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
 - 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.
- C. Cable and Connectors:
 - 1. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
 - 2. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices.
 - 3. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

3.3 HINGES

- A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Ives 5BB series
 - b. Or approved equal.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
2. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
4. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
5. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
6. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
7. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
8. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
 - e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins
9. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

3.4 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.

5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

3.5 ELECTRIC POWER TRANSFER

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Von Duprin EPT-10
 - b. Or approved equal.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
2. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.

3.6 FLUSH BOLTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide automatic, constant latching, and manual flush bolts with forged bronze or stainless-steel face plates, extruded brass levers, and with wrought brass guides and strikes. Provide 12 inch (305 mm) steel or brass rods at doors up to 90 inches (2286 mm) in height. For doors over 90 inches (2286 mm) in height increase top rods by 6 inches (152 mm) for each additional 6 inches (152 mm) of door height. Provide dust-proof strikes at each bottom flush bolt.

3.7 COORDINATORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Where pairs of doors are equipped with automatic flush bolts, an astragal, or other hardware that requires synchronized closing of the doors, provide bar-type coordinating device, surface applied to underside of stop at frame head.
2. Provide filler bar of correct length for unit to span entire width of opening, and appropriate brackets for parallel arm door closers, surface vertical rod exit device strikes, or other stop mounted hardware. Factory-prepared coordinators for vertical rod devices as specified.

3.8 MORTISE LOCKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Schlage L Series Mortise Lock
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide motor based electrified locksets that comply with the following requirements:
2. (KEY OVERRIDE OPTION WHEN XL13-439 IS SPECIFIED IN HARDWARE SETS)
Provide locks with a key override feature built into the chassis that allows the outside key to retract the deadbolt and/or latchbolt, overriding the inside thumbturn when it is being held in the locked position.
3. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
 - a. Vandlgard: Provide levers with vandal resistant technology for use at heavy traffic or abusive applications.
 - b. Lever Design: 17

3.9 THREE POINT LOCK

A. Manufacturer and Product:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Schlage LM9300
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide three-point locking system as part of integrated assembly including door, frame, and hardware.
2. Tornado Applications: Provide assembly UL approved to FEMA 361 and FEMA 320 guidelines for inswing and outswing single or pair doors. Must be used with tested and approved door and frame system.
3. Security Applications: Provide inswing and outswing single or pair doors. Must be used with tested and approved door.
4. Units to comply with life safety requirements outlined in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101 and approved for use on up to 3-hour fire rated openings.
5. Latchbolt Construction:

- a. Top Bolt: 5/8-inch (16 mm) Stainless Steel square bolt with 3/4-inch (19 mm) projection. 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick steel top plate. Stainless steel sill strike and fasteners.
 - b. Mortised Center Latchbolt: Stainless Steel latch. Fully wrapped, 12-gauge plated steel lock case. 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset. ANSI/BHMA curved lip strike 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) x 4-7/8 inches (124 mm) with dust box, non-handed.
 - c. Bottom Bolt: 5/8-inch (16 mm) Stainless Steel square bolt with 5/8-inch (16 mm) projection. Stainless steel sill strike and fasteners.
6. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses or escutcheon as scheduled and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
- a. Lever Design: 17

3.10 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Von Duprin 99/33A series
 - b. Or approved equal.

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
- 2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
- 3. Provide grooved touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
- 4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
- 5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
- 6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
- 7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
- 8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
- 9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
- 10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
- 11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
- 12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
- 13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
- 14. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
- 15. Top latch mounting: double- or single-tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
- 16. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

3.11 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 Series
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.
2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
4. Provide power supplies with the following features:
 - a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
 - b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
 - c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.
 - d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
 - e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
 - f. Fused primary input.
 - g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
 - h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.
 - i. Tested and certified to meet UL294.
 - j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
 - k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
 - l. High voltage protective cover.

3.12 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. PRIMUS FSIC PERM CORE (OR TYPE AS REQ TO MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM)
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylinders/cores, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide high security dual-locking cylinder with permanent core and nickel silver bottom pins.

3.13 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY
- B. Requirements:
 1. Provide cylinders/cores to match Owner's existing key system, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.

3.14 KEYING

- A. Scheduled System:
 1. New factory registered system:
 - a. Provide a factory registered keying system, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.
- B. Requirements:
 1. Construction Keying:
 - a. Temporary Construction Cylinder Keying.
 - 1) Provide construction cores that permit voiding construction keys without cylinder removal, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
 - a) Split Key or Lost Ball Construction Keying System.
 - b) 3 construction control keys, and extractor tools or keys as required to void construction keying.
 - c) 12 construction change (day) keys.
 - 2) Owner or Owner's Representative will void operation of temporary construction keys.
 2. Permanent Keying:
 - a. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
 - 1) Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
 - b. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
 - c. Provide keys with the following features:
 - 1) Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
 - 2) Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).
 - 3) Geographically Exclusive: Where High Security or Security cylinders/cores are indicated, provide nationwide, geographically exclusive key system complying with the following restrictions.
 - d. Identification:
 - 1) Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
 - 2) Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
 - 3) Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
 - 4) Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.

- 5) Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
- e. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
 - 1) Permanent Control Keys: 3.
 - 2) Master Keys: 6.
 - 3) Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core that is keyed differently
 - 4) Key Blanks: Quantity as determined in the keying meeting.

3.15 KEY CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Telkee
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. HPC
 - b. Lund
 - c. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide key control system, including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150% of number of locks required for Project.
 - a. Provide complete cross index system set up by hardware supplier, and place keys on markers and hooks in cabinet as determined by final key schedule.
 - b. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.

3.16 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
 - a. LCN 4040XP series
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. Certify surface mounted mechanical closers to meet fifteen million (15,000,000) full load cycles. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
- 2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
- 3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) diameter with 11/16-inch (17 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
- 4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

087100 - 14

5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers. When closers are parallel arm mounted, provide closers which mount within 6-inch (152 mm) top rail without use of mounting plate so that closer is not visible through vision panel from pull side.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI/BHMA Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

3.17 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates, push bars, pull plates, pulls, and hands-free reversible door pulls with diameter and length as scheduled.

3.18 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide protection plates with a minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.
2. Sizes plates 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, pairs of doors with a mullion, and doors with edge guards. Size plates 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs without a mullion or edge guards.
3. At fire rated doors, provide protection plates over 16 inches high with UL label.

3.19 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
 - a. Glynn-Johnson

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
 SW 23-01-01
 06/06/2025
 087100 - 15

- b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.

3.20 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide concave type where lockset has a push button or thumbturn.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide overhead stop.
4. Provide roller bumper where doors open into each other and overhead stop cannot be used.

3.21 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Zero International
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

3.22 SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Ives
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

3.23 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
 - a. Schlage
 - b. Or approved equal

B. Requirements:

1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

3.24 FINISHES

A. FINISH: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); EXCEPT:

1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
2. Aluminum Geared Continuous Hinges: BHMA 628 (US28)
3. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
4. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
5. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
6. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
7. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
8. Latch Protectors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
9. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum
10. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

- C. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
 - 3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
 - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20
- B. Install door hardware in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and provide post-install inspection, testing as specified in section 1.03.E unless otherwise required to comply with governing regulations.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- D. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- E. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- F. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- G. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.
- H. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- I. Lock Cylinders:
 - 1. Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
 - 2. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.
 - 3. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- J. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:
 - 1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
 - 2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
 - 3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
 - 4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
 - 5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
 - 6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.

- K. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- L. Continuous Hinges: Re-locate the door and frame fire rating labels where they will remain visible so that the hinge does not cover the label once installed.
- M. Door Closers & Auto Operators: Mount closers/operators on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers/operators so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- N. Overhead Stops/Holders: Mount overhead stops/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- O. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- P. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- Q. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- R. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- S. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- T. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 - 1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door can close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
 - 2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
 - 3. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.

D. Hardware Sets:

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 002

Provide each CO door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
	NOTE	CASED OPENING, NO HARDWARE		

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 101

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	OFFICE/ENTRY LOCK	L9050T 17A L583-363	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 200C WITHOUT CARD READER, REFER C200C FOR DOORS WITH CARD READER

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	AUTO FLUSH BOLT	FB31P/FB41P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL X MB X HW PREPS	628	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ OMIT AT DATA/IT CLOSET	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	SET	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) (OMIT @ NON-RATED DOORS)	AA	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 201

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 204

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	AUTO FLUSH BOLT	FB31P/FB41P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL X MB X HW PREPS	628	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	SET	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET)	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 205

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	PRIMUS FSIC PERM CORE (OR TYPE AS REQ TO MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM)	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 212S

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P/FB61P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	L9080T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
2	EA	OH STOP	900S SERIES X SIZE & MTG AS REQ	630	GLY
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	SET	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) (OMIT @ NON-RATED DOORS)	AA	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 341

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK W/ OUTSIDE INDICATOR	L9040 17A L583-363 OS-OCC	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

-OCCUPIED/VACANT INDICATOR ON OUTSIDE OF DOOR.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 700AC

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY	628	IVE
2	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	3347A-L-LBR-17 LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
2	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	20-061 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
2	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MFR		
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MFR		

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 700C

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
2	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	9947-L-LBR-17 (WDC @ WD) LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
2	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
2	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
2	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 725

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	99-EO LENGTH AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER

-EXIT ONLY. NO ENTRY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 730

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
2	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	9947-DT LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
2	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
2	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 801HL

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM DEAD LOCK	L463T	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 4" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	PULL PLATE	8303 10" 4" X 16" F	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP/HOLDER	WS445/WS449 AS REQ	626	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

-PROVIDE CUTOUT FOR CYLINDER/THUMBTURN IN PUSH/PULL PLATES AS REQ.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C205

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092T EU 17A RX CON (FAIL SECURE)	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	PRIMUS FSIC PERM CORE (OR TYPE AS REQ TO MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM)	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)	LGR	SCE

- INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
- FREE EGRESS BY LEVER.
- COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.
- OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C207

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092T EU 17A RX CON (FAIL SECURE)	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	900S SERIES X SIZE & MTG AS REQ	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)	LGR	SCE

- INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
- FREE EGRESS BY LEVER.
- COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.
- OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C710

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-9947-L-DT-LBR-17-CON (WDC @ WD) LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-9947-L-NL-LBR-17-CON (WDC @ WD) LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
2	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
2	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)		VON

- INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
- FREE EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.
- COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.
- OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C710AC

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-3347A-EO-LBR-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-3347A-NL-OP-LBR-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
2	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190-O 10"	630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MFR		
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MFR		
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)		VON

- INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
- FREE EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.
- COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.
- OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C714

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-9947-DT-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-9947-NL-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	PRIMUS FSIC PERM CORE (OR TYPE AS REQ TO MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM)	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	SET	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET)	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 900-BBK 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)		VON

- INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.
- FREE EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.
- COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.
- OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C714A

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-3347A-EO-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-3347A-NL-OP-CON LENGTH & HEIGHT AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	20-057 ICX W/KEYED CONST. CORE	626	SCH
1	EA	PRIMUS CORE ONLY	PRIMUS FSIC PERM CORE (OR TYPE AS REQ TO MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM)	626	SCH
2	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190-O 10"	630	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE X AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA DW + 4" (OMIT @ COVERED OPENINGS)	AA	ZER
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MFR		
1	SET	ASTRAGAL	MEETING STILE SEAL BY DOOR MFR		
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A	A	ZER
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
2	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY SECURITY CONTRACTOR		
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 900-BBK 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)		VON

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-FREE EGRESS BY THE PUSH PADS.

-COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.

-OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. T201H

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>	<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	MULT PT STOREROOM	LM9380T 17A	626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP MC TBWMS X MTG BRKT, SP	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP/HOLDER	WS445/WS449 AS REQ	626	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J	BK	ZER

-FOR USE WITH STEELCRAFT PALADIN DOOR ASSEMBLY.

-MEETS ICC 500-2020 AND FEMA 320/361.

-MAXIMUM DOOR SIZE 4'0 X 8'0 (SINGLE) AND 8'0 X 8'0 (PAIR).

-IF ANOTHER DOOR MFR. IS USED CONSULT WITH THEM FOR APPROVED HARDWARE, DOORS AND HARDWARE ARE SOLD AS A COMPLETE TESTED ASSEMBLY.

-GC TO PROVIDE SIGNAGE THAT MEETS ICC 500-2020 REQUIREMENTS, AS NEEDED.

-OUTSIDE LEVER NORMALLY LOCKED, LATCHBOLTS RETRACTED BY INSIDE LEVER.

-KEY OUTSIDE INSERTED AND TURNED 280 DEGREES UNLOCKS, ALLOWING OUTSIDE LEVER TO RETRACT LATCHES.

-REMOVAL OF OUTSIDE KEY RETURNS LEVER TO LOCKED STATE.

-FREE EGRESS BY THE INSIDE LEVER.



HARDWARE GROUP NO. C200C WITH CARD READER

For use on Door #(s):

146 IT/DATA

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

<u>QTY</u>		<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>CATALOG NUMBER</u>		<u>FINISH</u>	<u>MFR</u>
5	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5		652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8		652	IVE
1	EA	AUTO FLUSH BOLT	FB31P/FB41P AS REQ		630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2		626	IVE
1	EA	EU MORTISE LOCK	L9092T EU 17A RX CON (FAIL SECURE)		626	SCH
1	EA	FSIC PERMANENT CORE	MATCH AND VERIFY OWNER'S KEYWAY		626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL X MB X HW PREPS		628	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ		689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)		BK	ZER
1	SET	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) (OMIT @ NON-RATED DOORS)		AA	ZER

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ			SCH
1	EA	WIRE HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W - CONNECTION LEADS			SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	AS SPECIFIED IN DIVISION 28			UNK
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ		BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC (OMIT 2RS BOARD WHERE NOT REQ)		LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CREDENTIAL READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-FREE EGRESS BY LEVER.

-COORDINATE POWER SUPPLY WITH SECURITY CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO SUBMITTALS.

-OMIT POWER SUPPLY WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY.

END OF SECTION 087100

**SECTION 088000
GLAZING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glass products.
 - 2. Insulating glass.
 - 3. Glazing sealants.
 - 4. Glazing tapes.
 - 5. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; **12 inches** square.
 - 1. Tinted glass.
 - 2. Insulating glass.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For glass.
- B. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by

a qualified testing agency.

1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- C. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.
- B. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- C. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
 1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
 2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other

causes.

1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below **40 deg F**.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the IBC and ASTM E1300:
 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Basic Wind Speed: **110 mph**.
 - c. Exposure Category: B.
 2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or **1 inch**, whichever is less.
 4. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.

- C. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites of thickness indicated.
 - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
 - 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 - 4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as **Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F**.
 - 5. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
 - 6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
 - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- D. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Guardian Glass LLC
 - b. Vitro Architectural Glass
 - c. Or approved equal
- B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Guardian Glass LLC
 - b. Vitro Architectural Glass
 - c. Or approved equal
- C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Vitro Architectural Glass
 - b. or approved equal
- F. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in NGA's "Engineering Standards Manual."

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.
 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:

1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

B. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Sika Corporation
 - b. The Dow Chemical Company
 - c. Tremco Incorporated
 - d. or approved equal

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:

1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as primary sealant.
2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks:
 - 1. Neoprene with Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
 - 2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Spacers:
 - 1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
 - 2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- E. Edge Blocks:
 - 1. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than **50 inches**.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide **1/8-inch-** minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.

- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.7 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear Glass Type - GL3: Fully tempered float glass.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
088000 - 9

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm or 1/4".
2. Safety glazing required.

3.8 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Tinted Insulating Glass Type , Tempered, Low-E Coated - GL2:

1. Overall Unit Thickness: **1 inch**.
2. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
3. Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
4. Tint Color: Bronze.
5. Interspace Content: Argon.
6. Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
7. Low-E Coating per Manufacturer.
8. Visible Light Transmittance: 53 percent minimum.
9. Safety glazing required.

B. Low-E-Coated, Tinted Insulating Glass Type GL1:

1. Overall Unit Thickness: **1 inch**.
2. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6 mm.
3. Outdoor Lite: Tinted annealed float glass.
4. Tint Color: Bronze.
5. Interspace Content: Argon.
6. Indoor Lite: Clear annealed float glass.
7. Low-E Coating per manufacturer.
8. Visible Light Transmittance: 53 percent minimum.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092216
NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Nonstructural steel framing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of nonstructural steel framing and fastening and anchorage details.
 - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, and attachments to adjoining work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For code-compliance certification of studs and track.
- B. Evaluation Reports: From an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction showing compliance with Project requirements, for the following:
 - 1. Firestop track.
 - 2. Post-installed anchors.
 - 3. Power-actuated fasteners.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. Protect materials from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling in accordance with AISI S202.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated on Drawings, provide assemblies incorporating nonstructural steel framing identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance in accordance with ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Where indicated on Drawings, provide assemblies incorporating nonstructural framing identical to those of assemblies tested in

accordance with ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 NONSTRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with requirements in AISI S220 for conditions indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Protective Coating: ASTM A653/A653M, **G40** or coating with demonstrated equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
 - a. Equivalent Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction demonstrates corrosion resistance equivalent to specified protective coating.
- B. Studs and Track: Conventional members, roll-formed into standard shapes without surface deformations to stiffen framing members.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich: ProSTUD Drywall Framing or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
 - b. ClarkDietrich
 - c. Marino\WARE
 - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies
 - e. Or approved equal
 - 2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: **0.0296 inch**.
 - 3. Minimum Yield Strength: **33 ksi**.
 - 4. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Rigid Hat-Shaped Furring Channels:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ClarkDietrich; Furring Channel or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
 - b. ClarkDietrich
 - c. Marino\WARE
 - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company; Stone Group of Companies
 - e. Or approved equal
 - 2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: **0.0329 inch**.
 - 3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Adjustable Wall-Furring Brackets: ASTM A653/A653M **G40** hot-dip galvanized steel sheet in minimum **0.0329-inch**- base-steel thickness with serrated edges for attaching furring channels to exterior masonry or concrete walls.

- C. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 1. Adjustable Wall-Furring Brackets for Tie Wire: Use minimum double strand of **0.0625-inch-** diameter wire, or triple strand of **0.0475-inch-** diameter wire to attach furring channels.
 - 2. Suspended-Ceiling Systems:
 - a. Splicing Carrying Channels and Furring Members: Use double loops of minimum **0.0625-inch-** diameter wire.
 - b. Saddle Tying Main Runners and Cross Furring: Use minimum **0.0625-inch-** diameter wire, or double strand of **0.0475-inch-** diameter wire.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- E. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, **0.162 inch** in diameter.
- F. Flat Hangers: ASTM A653/A653M **G40** hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, **1 by 3/16 inch** by length indicated on Drawings.
- G. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
 - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, **1/8 inch** thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, substrates, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices required to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling track to surfaces indicated on Drawings to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than **24 inches** o.c.
 - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent

necessary for installation of nonstructural steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated on Drawings. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF NONSTRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
 - 1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C841 that apply to framing installation.
 - 2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C1063 that apply to framing installation.
 - 3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C844 that apply to framing installation.
 - 4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF NONSTRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

- A. Install framing system components at spacings indicated on Drawings, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: **16 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: **16 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: **16 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install track at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated on Drawings to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum **1/2-inch** clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in

- finished assembly.
- c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
- 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings and support closures to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
- 5. STC-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with STC-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
- 6. Curved Partitions:
 - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
 - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of at least two studs at ends of arcs, place studs **6 inches** o.c.
- E. Direct Furring:
 - 1. Screw to wood framing.
 - 2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches** o.c.
- F. Wall-Furring Bracket Systems: Install brackets with serrated edges facing upward spaced at minimum **48 inches** o.c. vertically with **6 inches** maximum from floor and ceiling, and minimum **36 inches** o.c. horizontally with **4 inches** maximum from abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- G. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
 - 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced **24 inches** o.c.
 - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches** o.c.
 - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than **12 inches** from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- H. Suspended Assemblies: Isolate suspension assemblies from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
 - 1. Hangers: Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system spaced as indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective

- means.
- b. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 1) Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 - c. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - d. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - e. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 - f. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 - g. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 - h. Do not connect or suspend framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- 2. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- I. Installation Tolerances for Nonstructural Steel Framing:
 - 1. Framing Members: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than **1/8 inch** from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.
 - 2. Suspended Assemblies: Install suspension systems that are level to within **1/8 inch in 12 ft.** measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
 - 2. Tile backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for nonstructural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
 - 2. Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings in accordance with ASTM E119; tested by a qualified testing agency.

2.3 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide panel products in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system specified or indicated on Drawings.

2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
 - c. USG Corporation
 - d. Or approved equal
 - 2. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
 - c. USG Corporation
 - d. Or approved equal
 - 2. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M; manufactured with moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available

manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC
 - c. USG Corporation
 - d. Or approved equal
2. Core: **5/8 inch**, Type X.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
 4. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. PermaBASE Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
 - b. USG Corporation
 - c. Or approved equal
 2. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
- B. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. American Gypsum
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - c. Gold Bond Building Products, LLC provided by National Gypsum Company
 - d. Or approved equal
 2. Core: **5/8 inch**, Type X.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
 1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.

- d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - f. Expansion (control) joint.
 - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C1047.
- 1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M requirements.
- 1. Mold-Resistant Joint Compound: Use mold-resistant formulations with mold-resistant panel products.
- B. Joint Tape:
- 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
 - 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 - 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
- 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
- 1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
 - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended in writing by sheathing board manufacturer.
- E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
- 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended in writing by backing panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended in writing by backer unit manufacturer.

3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended in writing by manufacturer for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise specified or indicated on Drawings.
 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch** thick.
 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers as follows:
 1. Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Glass or slag or rock wool.
 2. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

2.9 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended in writing by textured finish manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840 requirements.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than **1/16 inch** of open space between panels. Do not force into

place.

- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft.** in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch-** wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch-** wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 requirements and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound-attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Gypsum Wallboard: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Gypsum Board, Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Gypsum Board, Type C: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Gypsum Ceiling Board: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 5. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 6. Acoustically Enhanced Gypsum Board: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
3. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, **16 inches** minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over studs or furring members and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated on Drawings or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.
 1. Install with **1/4-inch** open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
 2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at showers, tubs, and where indicated on Drawings. Install with **1/4-inch** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- C. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with **1/4-inch** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- D. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.6 APPLICATION OF JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Finishing Panel Products: Treat joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare panel surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.

- C. Apply joint tape over panel joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Interior Gypsum Board: Finish panels to levels indicated below and in accordance with ASTM C840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 5. Level 5: Not used.
- E. Exterior Gypsum Board for Ceilings and Soffits: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Install control joints to provide the following maximum unjointed lengths or areas:
 - 1. Partitions and Soffits: 24 foot maximum straight run.
 - 2. Frames: Where practical, locate partition control joints aligned with door, cased opening, or window frames and as follows;
 - a. Single Door: Latch side of jamb from head of opening to top of partition.
 - b. Pair of Doors: Each side of jamb from head of opening to top of partition.
 - c. Cased Opening: Each side of jamb from head of opening to top of partition.
 - d. Window Opening: Each side of jamb from head of opening to top of partition and from sill to floor.
 - 3. Ceilings: 50 foot with perimeter relief, maximum 30 foot without perimeter relief in one direction and at change of direction or irregular shapes.
 - 4. Ceiling Area: Maximum 2,500 square feet with perimeter relief, maximum 900 square feet without perimeter relief.
- I. Install suitable backing material to maintain required rating where control or expansion joints occur in fire or sound rated assemblies.
- J. Install corner bead where partition or ceiling abuts structural element or dissimilar wall or ceiling.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from joint compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-gypsum board surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during gypsum board installation and finishing.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight,

construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Porcelain tile.
 - 2. Waterproof membranes.
 - 3. Crack isolation membranes.
 - 4. Setting material.
 - 5. Grout materials.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of movement joints in tile surfaces.
 - 2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for tile backing panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Large Format Tile: Tile with at least one edge **15 inches** or longer.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations, plans, and elevations, of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of movement joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
 - 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
 - 3. Metal flooring tinchrransitions **6-inch** lengths.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
 - 1. Add what we want this to be.
- B. Product Test Reports:

1. Tile-setting and -grouting products.
2. Certified porcelain tile.
3. Slip-resistance test reports from qualified independent testing agency.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Tile and Trim Units:
 - a. Tile: Any open boxes plus one full box of each type and color..
 - b. Trim Units: Any cut pieces more then 24 inches.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Installer is with 10 plus years of experience installing ceramic tiled of similar project types and size..

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. In addition to the construction warranty, extend any manufacturing and installation warrantees.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Tile: Obtain tile of each type from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Tiling System: Obtain system products from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas
 - b. Custom Building Products
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation
 - e. Or approved equal
 - 2. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Obtain underlayment from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
 - 4. Obtain waterproof membrane, crack isolation, and other required membranes from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
 - 5. Obtain joint sealants from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Accessory Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Stone thresholds.
 - 2. Backer units.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard Grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2.3 PORCELAIN TILE

- A. Porcelain Tile Type: Unglazed.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product..

- a. American Olean; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation
 - b. Crossville, Inc.
 - c. Daltile; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation
 - d. Florida Tile, Inc.
 - e. Marazzi USA; a brand of Dal-Tile Corporation
- 2. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
 - 3. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and ANSI A118.12 and is recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Fluid Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide C-Cure; Red Waterproofing and Prevention Membrane or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas
 - b. Bostik; Arkema
 - c. MAPEI Corporation

2.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for and is recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Crack Isolation Membrane, Fluid Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide C-Cure; Red Waterproofing and Prevention Membrane or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bostik; Arkema
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.15.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide C-Cure: Strata 914 or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation
 - d. Bostik
 - e. TEC

2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to other requirements in ANSI A118.15.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide C-Cure: Perfect 930 or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ARDEX Americas
 - b. Bostik; Arkema
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation
 - e. TEC

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting and adhesive materials for installations indicated.
- B. Self-Leveling Underlayment and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- C. Leveling clips: Use "RIDGID LevelMax Anti-Lippage Tile Leveling System" or equal.
- D. Metal Flooring Transitions: Profile designed specifically for flooring applications; height to match tile and setting-bed thickness.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or an approved comparable product.
 - a. Blanke Corporation
 - b. Dural USA, Inc.
 - c. Profilitec Corp.
 - d. Progress Profiles America Inc.
 - e. Schluter Systems L.P.
- E. Metal Edge Trim: Profile designed for wall terminations and edge protection.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or an approved comparable product.
 - a. Blanke Corporation
 - b. Dural USA, Inc.
 - c. Profilitec Corp.
 - d. Progress Profiles America Inc.
 - e. Schluter Systems L.P.
 2. Terminations: End caps Inside corners Outside corners matching edge-protection

profile.

- F. Temporary Protective Coating: Formulated to protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout; compatible with tile, mortar, and grout products and easily removable after grouting is completed without damaging grout or tile.
- G. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- H. Grout Sealer: Grout manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds or other coatings, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- C. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1 and is sloped **1/4 inch per foot** toward drains.
- D. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

093013 - 6

and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

E. Substrate Flatness:

1. For tile shorter than **15 inches**, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to variation of **1/4 inch in 10 ft.** from the required plane, and no more than **1/16 inch in 12 inches** when measured from tile surface high points.
2. For large format tile, tile with at least one edge **15 inches** or longer, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to **1/8 inch in 10 ft.** from the required plane, and no more than **1/16 inch in 24 inches** when measured from tile surface high points.

F. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, precoat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE SYSTEM

- A. Install tile backing panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.
- B. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
 1. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.
- C. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
 1. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.
- D. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
 1. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
 2. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.
- E. Install tile in accordance with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of ANSI A108 series that are referenced in TCNA installation methods and specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Exterior tile floors and walls.
 - b. Tile floors in wet areas.

- c. Tile swimming pool decks.
 - d. Tile floors in laundries.
 - e. Tile floors consisting of tiles **8 by 8 inches** or larger.
 - f. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
2. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
 3. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
 4. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
 5. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
 6. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets, so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished Work.
 - b. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - c. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- F. Movement Joints: Provide movement joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated on Drawings. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Keep joints free of dirt, debris, and setting materials prior to filling with sealants. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- G. Metal Flooring Transitions: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- H. Metal Wall Trim: Install at locations indicated on Drawings.
- I. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Water Test:

1. Test of waterproofing membrane in showers and similar areas to be performed by Installation Contractor before setting tile.
 - a. Perform test after 24 hours of waterproof membrane installation.
 - b. Insert test plug in drain or waste line.
 - c. Fill shower base with water, high enough that the membrane-to-drain connection and floor-to-wall transition can be evaluated, and mark wall.
 - d. Check for leaks after 24 hours.
2. Test to be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Waterproof membrane will be considered defective if water level has dropped.
2. Remove and replace defective components and retest.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile in accordance with tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.7 EXTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Exterior Floor Installations:

1. TCNA F101 -16: Method ANSI A108.1B. Cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to concrete.

- a. Grout: Sand-portland cement grout.
- b. Joint Width: **1/8 inch** , 1/4 inch at perimeter per drawings.
- c. Movement Joints: Types located on Drawings.

3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 - 1. Interior Floor Installations, On Ground Concrete Subfloor:
 - a. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F113-16/F205-16; thinset mortar
 - 1) Ceramic Tile Type: Reference Finish Legend
 - 2) Trowelable Underlayment (use self-leveling underlayment when needed)
 - 3) Waterproofing: Waterproofing Material
 - 4) Crack Isolated: Crack Isolated Material
 - 5) Thinset Mortar: Improved modified dry-set mortar.
 - 6) Grout: High-performance unsanded grout
 - 7) Sealed: Sealer
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Masonry or Concrete:
 - 1. TCNA W202I .: Thinset mortar over waterproof membrane.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Ref. Finish Legend.
 - b. Waterproofing: Waterproofing material, fluid-applied
 - c. Crack Isolated: Crack Isolated Material, fluid-applied
 - d. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
 - e. Grout: Standard unsanded cement High-performance unsanded cement grout.
 - f. Sealer
 - g. Joint Width: **1/8 inch**.
- C. Interior Wall Installations - Water Resistant Gypsum Board, Metal Studs or Furring
 - 1. TCNA243-16; Thinset mortar on water resistance gypsum board.
 - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Ref finish legend.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095123
ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Acoustical tiles.
 - 2. Metal suspension system.
 - 3. Metal edge moldings and trim.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 095113 "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of mineral-base and glass-fiber-base acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems.
- C. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **6 inches** in size.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
 - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 - 4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
 - 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Diffusers.
 - c. Grilles.
 - d. Speakers.
 - e. Sprinklers.

- f. Access panels.
 - g. Perimeter moldings.
- 7. Show operation of hinged and sliding components adjacent to acoustical tiles.
- 8. Minimum Drawing Scale: **1/8 inch = 1 foot.**

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size tiles equal to 1 full box plus any open boxes.
 - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed component equal to any open boxes .

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations for Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceiling System: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile and its suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Suspended ceilings to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A in accordance with ASTM E1264.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES

- A. Acoustical Tiles:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide listed in the finish legend or an approve comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - c. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International
 - d. USG Corporation
 - 2. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E1264 classifications as designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Thickness: **3/4 inch**.
 - 4. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273, ASTM D3274, or ASTM G21 and evaluated in accordance with ASTM D3274 or ASTM G21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Concealed or Semi-Exposed Metal Suspension System:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listed in the finish legend or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries
 - b. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - c. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International
 - d. USG Corporation
 - 2. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system and accessories of type, structural classification, and finish indicated that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C635/C635M.
 - a. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and

classified for "severe environment performance" in accordance with ASTM C635/C635M.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
 - 1. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Metal Edge Moldings and Trim:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in finish legend and of the same manufacturer of ceiling panel or a or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 - b. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International
 - c. USG Corporation
 - d. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations complying with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for of suspension-system runners.
 - a. Edge moldings to fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
 - c. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
 - d. Finish: Painted white.
 - 3. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces,

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

095123 - 4

and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.

- a. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
- b. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Comply with ASTM C635/C635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
- c. Locations: Restrooms, Showers, and Kitchens if noted to receive ACT.
 - 1) Breakrooms can receive standard Roll-Formed.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Acoustical Tile Adhesive: Type recommended in writing by acoustical tile manufacturer, bearing UL label for Class 0-25 flame spread.
- B. Staples: **5/16-inch**- long, divergent-point staples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before adhesively bonding tiles to wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings in accordance with ASTM C636/C636M, seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 3. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 - 4. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 - 6. Space hangers not more than **48 inches** o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than **8 inches** from ends of each member.
 - 7. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
 - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than **16 inches** o.c. and not more than **3 inches** from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
 - 1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
 - 2. Install tiles with pattern running in one direction parallel to long axis of space.
 - 3. Install tiles in a basket-weave pattern.
- G. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
 - 1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
 - 2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced **12 inches** o.c.

3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts in accordance with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 12 feet**, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 12 feet**, non-cumulative.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095123

**SECTION 096513
RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermoset-rubber base.
 - 2. Rubber molding accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than **4 inches** long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than **10 linear feet** for every **500 linear feet** or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **50 deg F** or more than **90 deg F**.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **70 deg F** or more than **95 deg F**, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **55 deg F** or more than **95 deg F**.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been

completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listed in the finish legend or an approved comparable product.
 - 1. Mannington Mills, Inc.
 - 2. Roppe Corporation
 - 3. Tarkett USA

2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
 - 1. Outside and inside corners: Use when lengths of return are between 1/2 inches to 3 inches .
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
 - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than **3 inches** in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
 - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than **3 inches** in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

**SECTION 096813
TILE CARPETING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Carpet tile.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: For carpet tile installation, showing the following:
 - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
 - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
 - 3. Type of subfloor.
 - 4. Type of installation.
 - 5. Pattern of installation.
 - 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
 - 7. Pile direction.
 - 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
 - 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
 - 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
 - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: **3-inch-** long minimum Samples.
- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.
- C. Sample Warranties: For carpet tile.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 1 full box plus any open box for each type indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace

components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. More than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, and runs.
 - b. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
 - c. Excess static discharge.
 - d. Delamination.
 - e. Dimensional instability.
3. Warranty Period: Project warranty (reference general conditions) in addition to the manufacturer product warranty Project warranty (reference general conditions) in addition to the manufacturer product warranty years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, .
 1. Insert Manufacturers Name
 2. Insert Manufacturers Name

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Self Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive types to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and that are recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
- D. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with satin aluminum finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.
 1. Reference the transition details within the drawing documents.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances,

and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.

- B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
 - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed **1000 sq. ft.**, and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of **3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft.** in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions **1/8 inch** wide or wider, and protrusions more than **1/32 inch** unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Metal Substrates: Clean grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.

- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- I. Access Flooring: Stagger joints of carpet tiles so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 13.7.
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

**SECTION 097200
WALL COVERINGS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vinyl wall covering.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, memo size.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same production run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to unused roll. .

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

2.2 VINYL WALL COVERING (VWC)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Arc-Com Fabrics, Inc.
 - 2. Designtex; Design Tex Group Inc. (The)
 - 3. Knoll, Inc.
 - 4. Maharam Fabric Corporation; Herman Miller, Inc.
 - 5. MDC Interior Solutions
 - 6. Insert Manufacturers Name
- B. Wallcovering Trim , as manufactured by Fry Reglet, , or an approved comparable product, shall be installed. Aluminum shall be extruded 6063 T5, with chemical conversion coating, clear anodized, or other specified finish.
 - 1. Color to be selected from manufacturer full range of colors.
 - 2. Top edge: WCTF125-217
 - 3. Outside corner: WCTOSC
 - 4. Mid point connection: WCTF125-217

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation surfaces being true in plane and vertical and horizontal alignment, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, and mildew.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete

- masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
2. Plaster: Allow plaster to cure for at least 90 days. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Apply primer/sealer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 3. Metals: If not factory primed, clean and apply metal primer as recommended in writing by metal-primer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 4. Gypsum Board: Apply primer/sealer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 5. Painted Surfaces:
 - a. Check for pigment bleeding. Apply primer/sealer to areas susceptible to pigment bleeding as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer.
 - b. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finishes with fine sandpaper.
- D. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- E. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERING

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
 1. For solid-color, even-texture, or random-match wall coverings, reverse every other strip.
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Install seams vertical and plumb at least **6 inches** from outside corners and from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- F. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- G. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

SECTION 098433
SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sound-absorbing wall panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.
- B. SAA: Sound Absorption Average.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For unit assembly and installation.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting devices and details.
 - 2. Include details at panel head, base, joints, and corners; and details at ceiling, floor base, and wall intersections. Indicate panel edge profile and core materials.
 - 3. Include details at cutouts and penetrations for other work.
 - 4. Include direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Panel Edge: **12-inch-** long Sample(s) showing each edge profile, corner, and finish.
 - 2. Core Material: **12-inch-** square Sample at corner.
 - 3. Mounting Devices: Full-size Samples.
 - 4. Assembled Panels: Approximately **36 by 36 inches**, including joints and mounting methods.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Elevations and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Electrical outlets, switches, and thermostats.
 - 2. Items penetrating or covered by units including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.

- b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Alarms.
 - e. Sprinklers.
 - f. Access panels.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of unit.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of unit to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and units in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install units until a lighting level of not less than **50 fc** is provided on surfaces to receive the units.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect units from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install units under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify unit locations and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate them on Shop Drawings.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace units and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Acoustical performance.
 - b. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
 - c. Warping of core.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain wall units specified in this Section from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Units to comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Comply with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested in accordance with NFPA 265 Method B Protocol or NFPA 286.

2.3 SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

- A. Sound-Absorbing Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material stretched over front face of edge-framed core and bonded or attached to edges and back of frame is the same as the core..
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide in the finish legend or and approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries
 - b. Decoustics; CertainTeed Architectural Products; a Saint Gobain company
 - 2. Panel Shape: manufacture standard.
 - 3. Mounting:
 - a. Back mounted with manufacturer's standard adhesive metal clips or bar hangers, secured to substrate.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood Products: Verify formaldehyde emission rates are not greater than the following when tested in accordance with ASTM D6007 or ASTM E1333:
- B. Core Materials: Manufacturer's standard.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Standard Construction: Use manufacturer's standard construction unless otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally

stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine panels, substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting unit performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, install units with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align pattern and grain with adjacent units as indicated on Drawings.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb and Level: Plus or minus **1/16 inch** in **48 inches**, noncumulative.
- B. Variation of Joint Width: Not more than **1/16-inch** variation from reveal line in **48 inches**, noncumulative.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 098433

SECTION 098436
SOUND-ABSORBING CEILING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes shop-fabricated, acoustical panel units tested for acoustical performance, including the following:
 - 1. Ceiling panels.
 - 2. Baffle panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.
- B. SAA: Sound Absorption Average.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include panel edge, core material, and mounting indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For unit assembly and installation.
 - 1. Include reflected ceiling plans, elevations, sections, and mounting devices and details.
 - 2. Include details at joints and corners; and details at ceiling intersections and intersections with walls. Indicate panel edge profile and core materials.
 - 3. Include direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Panel Edge: **12-inch-** long Sample(s) showing each edge profile, corner, and finish.
 - 2. Fabric: Full-width by approximately memo size long Sample, but not smaller than required to show complete pattern repeat, from dye lot to be used for the Work, and with specified treatments applied. Mark top and face of fabric.
 - 3. Core Material: **12-inch-** square Sample at corner.
 - 4. Mounting Devices: Full-size Samples.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
098436 - 1

1. Electrical outlets.
 2. Suspended ceiling components above ceiling units.
 3. Structural members to which suspension devices will be attached.
 4. Items penetrating or covered by units including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Alarms.
 - e. Sprinklers.
 - f. Access panels.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of unit to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturer's written cleaning and stain-removal instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical ceiling area **96 inches** wide by full width of ceiling. Include intersection of wall and ceiling, corners, and perimeters.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with fabric and unit manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and units in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install units until a permanent level of lighting is provided on surfaces to receive the units.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect units from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install units under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.

- D. Field Measurements: Verify unit locations and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate them on Shop Drawings.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace units and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Acoustical performance.
 - b. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
 - c. Warping of core.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain ceiling units specified in this Section and wall units specified in Section 098433 "Sound-Absorbing Wall Units" from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Units shall comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.3 SOUND-ABSORBING CEILING UNITS

- A. Sound-Absorbing Ceiling Panel (AWP2): Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material stretched over front face of edge-framed core and bonded or attached to edges and back of frame.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listed in the finish legend an approvedcomparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries
 - b. Decoustics; CertainTeed Architectural Products; a Saint Gobain company
 - c. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International
 - d. STC Sound Control

- e. Felt Right
- 2. Panel Shape: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Mounting: Back mounted with manufacturer's standard as recommended by manufacturer, secured to substrate.
- 4. Facing Material: walnut wood slats.
- B. Sound-Absorbing Baffle Panel: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material .
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product.
 - a. Felt Right
 - b. Insert Manufacturers Name

2.4 MATERIALS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fabric, fabricated units, substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting unit performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, install units with edges in alignment with walls and other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align fabric pattern and grain with adjacent units.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Alignment with Surfaces: Plus or minus **1/16 inch** in **48 inches**, noncumulative.
- B. Variation from Level or Slope: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**.
- C. Variation of Joint Width: Not more than **1/16 inch** wide from hairline in **48 inches**, noncumulative.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials

according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 098436

**SECTION 099113
EXTERIOR PAINTING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Surface preparation of exterior substrates and application of the following:
 - 1. Primers.
 - 2. Water-based finish coatings.
 - 3. Solvent-based finish coatings.
 - 4. Floor sealers and paints.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" Section 051213 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel substrates.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat. Submit actual paint drawdowns as specified below for verification Samples.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, **8 inches** square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in applicable exterior painting schedule articles to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than **5 deg F** above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each paint product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 EXTERIOR PAINTS, GENERAL

- A. Exterior Paints: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in product types below and applicable exterior painting schedule articles for the paint category indicated.
- B. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system must be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule on Drawings.

2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Exterior Wood Preservative: Solvent-based, zinc or copper naphthenate, penetrating antifungal treatment for exterior wood.
- B. Water-Based, Galvanized-Metal Primer: Corrosion-resistant, pigmented, acrylic primer; formulated for use on cleaned/etched galvanized metal substrates to prepare it for subsequent water-based coatings.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Sherwin-Williams Company; Pro-Cryl Industrial Universal Primer B66-310 Series or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Or approved equal

2.4 WATER-BASED FINISH COATINGS

- A. Exterior, Water-Based, Light Industrial Coating: Corrosion-resistant, water-based, pigmented, emulsion coating formulated for resistance to water, alkalis, moderate abrasion, and mild chemical exposure and for use on exterior substrates.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the manufacturer listed in the Finish Legend or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
 - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)
 - c. The Pittsburgh Paints Company
2. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard semigloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 1. Cementitious Composition Board: 12 percent.
 2. Wood: 15 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with finishes and primers. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems specified in this Section.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, loose shop primer, and other loose foreign matter. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 1. SSPC-SP 11.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where

shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed substrates.

- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION OF EXTERIOR PAINT PRODUCTS

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in applicable exterior painting schedule articles may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting, Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - d. Metal conduit.
 - e. Plastic conduit.
 - f. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with

paint manufacturer's written instructions, apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
 1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
 2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
 4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, METAL SUBSTRATES

- A. Steel and Iron Substrates:
 1. Water-Based, Light Industrial Coating System: .
 - a. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section in which substrate is specified.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior, water-based, light industrial coating, semigloss.
- B. Galvanized Metal Substrates:
 1. Water-Based, Light Industrial Coating System: .
 - a. Prime Coat: Water-based, galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior, water-based, light industrial coating, semigloss.

END OF SECTION 099113

**SECTION 099123
INTERIOR PAINTING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Surface preparation of interior substrates and application of the following:
 - 1. Primers.
 - 2. Water-based finish coatings.
 - 3. Floor sealers and paints.
 - 4. Dry fall coatings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat. Submit actual paint drawdowns as specified below for verification Samples.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, **8 inches** square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in applicable interior painting schedule articles to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match paint products applied and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint Products: **1 gal.** of each material and color applied.

1.4 MOCKUPS

- A. Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least **50 sq. ft.**
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Owner specifically approves such deviations by Change Order.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.
 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than **5 deg F** above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each paint product from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 INTERIOR PAINTS, GENERAL

- A. Interior Paints: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in product types below and applicable interior painting schedule articles for the paint category indicated.
- B. Material Compatibility:
 1. Materials for use within each paint system must be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: as indicated in finish legend in the drawing documents.
 1. Reference the Finish Plan for location of accent walls and to determine the percent of surface area to be painted with deep tones.

2.3 WATER-BASED FINISH COATINGS

- A. Interior, High-Performance Architectural Latex: Water-based, pigmented, low-VOC, emulsion coating formulated to provide a significantly higher level of performance than conventional latex paints in the areas of scrub resistance, burnish resistance, and ease of stain removal.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the finish schedule or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
 - b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - c. Rodda Paint Co.
 - d. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)
 - e. The Pittsburgh Paints Company
 - 2. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard eggshell satin.

2.4 FLOOR SEALERS AND PAINTS

- A. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer: Clear, water-based, acrylic-copolymer-emulsion sealer formulated for oil, gasoline, alkali, and water resistance and for use on concrete traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide listed in the finish schedule or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
 - b. H&C Decorative Concrete Products; a brand of Sherwin-Williams Co.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)
 - d. The Pittsburgh Paints Company

2.5 DRY FALL COATINGS

- A. Dry Fall, Latex: Pigmented, water-based, emulsion-type, fast-drying coating for use on interior plaster, concrete, gypsum board, primed wood, and metal ceilings.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the finish schedule or an approved or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Behr Paint Company (Behr Process LLC)
 - b. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The)
 - d. The Pittsburgh Paints Company
 - e. Valspar; a brand of The Sherwin-Williams Company
 - 2. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard flat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Cementitious Composition Board: 12 percent.
 - 3. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
 - 4. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent. Verify that finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.
 - 6. Plaster: 12 percent. Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with finishes and primers. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, loose shop primer, and other loose foreign matter. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.

2. SSPC-SP 3.
 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- J. Wood Substrates:
1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for interior use in paint system indicated.
 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view and remove sanding dust.
 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- K. Canvas and Cotton Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.
- L. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION OF INTERIOR PAINT PRODUCTS

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 6. Primers specified in the applicable interior painting schedule articles may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush

marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed to view in equipment rooms:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 - h. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
2. Paint the following work where exposed to view in occupied spaces:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
 2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
 4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, CONCRETE SUBSTRATES

A. Horizontal (Traffic) Surfaces:

1. Concrete Stain System .:
 - a. First Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior concrete stain.
2. Solvent-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System .:
 - a. First Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Solvent-based concrete floor sealer.
3. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System .:
 - a. First Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Water-based concrete floor sealer.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, METAL SUBSTRATES

A. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System .:
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd quick-dry primer for metal Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Topcoat: Interior, high-performance architectural latex, satin.
2. Quick-Dry Enamel System .:
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd quick-dry primer for metal.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd paint, semigloss.
3. Alkyd Dry-Fall System .:
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd quick-dry primer for metal Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
 - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, alkyd, semigloss.
4. Alkyd Dry Fall over Quick-Drying Primer System .:
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-dry primer for shop application.
 - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, alkyd, semigloss.

B. Galvanized Metal Substrates:

1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System :
 - a. Prime Coat: Water-based galvanized primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior, high-performance architectural latex, semigloss.
2. Antiviral/Antibacterial Latex System :
 - a. Prime Coat: Water-based galvanized primer.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior, latex, antiviral/antibacterial coating, eggshell.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
3. Water-Based Dry-Fall System .:

- a. Prime Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, water-based for galvanized steel, flat.
4. Aluminum Paint System .:
- a. Prime Coat: Water-based galvanized primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint.

3.7 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, WOOD SUBSTRATES

- A. Finish Carpentry Substrates: Wood trim.
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System :
- a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer for wood.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior, high-performance architectural latex, satin.

3.8 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE, GYPSUM-BASED SUBSTRATES

- A. Gypsum Board and Plaster Substrates:
1. High-Performance Architectural Latex System :
- a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior, high-performance architectural latex, eggshell.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 099300
STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Related Requirements:

1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for stains and transparent finishes on concrete floors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of product.
2. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
3. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Verification: Sample for each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required on representative samples of actual wood substrates.

1. Size: **8 inches** square or **8 inches** long.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

C. Product List: Cross-reference to finish system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Stains and Transparent Finishes: Any open and unopen container purchased for the project of each material and color applied.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than **45 deg F**.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air

temperatures are between **50 and 95 deg F**.

- B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures of less than **5 deg F** above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each coating product from single source from single manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Maximum Moisture Content of Interior Wood Substrates: 10 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.
 - 1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew

removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.

C. Interior Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
2. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods to produce smooth, glasslike finish.
3. Sand surfaces exposed to view and dust off.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR WOOD-FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Wood Substrates, Wood Trim:

1. Semitransparent Stain System WD1:
 - a. Prime Coat: Stain, exterior, solvent based, semitransparent, matching topcoat.
 - b. Topcoat: Stain, exterior, solvent based, semitransparent.
2. Polyurethane Varnish over Stain System WD1:
 - a. Stain Coat: Stain, semitransparent, for interior wood.
 - b. First Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - c. Second Intermediate Coat: Polyurethane varnish matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Varnish, interior, polyurethane, oil modified, satin.

END OF SECTION 099300

SECTION 098433
SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sound-absorbing wall panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.
- B. SAA: Sound Absorption Average.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For unit assembly and installation.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting devices and details.
 - 2. Include details at panel head, base, joints, and corners; and details at ceiling, floor base, and wall intersections. Indicate panel edge profile and core materials.
 - 3. Include details at cutouts and penetrations for other work.
 - 4. Include direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Panel Edge: **12-inch-** long Sample(s) showing each edge profile, corner, and finish.
 - 2. Core Material: **12-inch-** square Sample at corner.
 - 3. Mounting Devices: Full-size Samples.
 - 4. Assembled Panels: Approximately **36 by 36 inches**, including joints and mounting methods.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Elevations and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Electrical outlets, switches, and thermostats.
 - 2. Items penetrating or covered by units including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.

- b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Alarms.
 - e. Sprinklers.
 - f. Access panels.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of unit.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of unit to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and units in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install units until a lighting level of not less than **50 fc** is provided on surfaces to receive the units.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect units from exposure to airborne odors, such as tobacco smoke, and install units under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify unit locations and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate them on Shop Drawings.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace units and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Acoustical performance.
 - b. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
 - c. Warping of core.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain wall units specified in this Section from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Units to comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Comply with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested in accordance with NFPA 265 Method B Protocol or NFPA 286.

2.3 SOUND-ABSORBING WALL UNITS

- A. Sound-Absorbing Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of facing material stretched over front face of edge-framed core and bonded or attached to edges and back of frame is the same as the core..
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide in the finish legend or and approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries
 - b. Decoustics; CertainTeed Architectural Products; a Saint Gobain company
 - 2. Panel Shape: manufacture standard.
 - 3. Mounting:
 - a. Back mounted with manufacturer's standard adhesive metal clips or bar hangers, secured to substrate.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Composite Wood Products: Verify formaldehyde emission rates are not greater than the following when tested in accordance with ASTM D6007 or ASTM E1333:
- B. Core Materials: Manufacturer's standard.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Standard Construction: Use manufacturer's standard construction unless otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally

stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine panels, substrates, areas, and conditions for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting unit performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in locations indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, install units with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other units, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installation of units using type of mounting devices indicated. Mount units securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align pattern and grain with adjacent units as indicated on Drawings.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb and Level: Plus or minus **1/16 inch** in **48 inches**, noncumulative.
- B. Variation of Joint Width: Not more than **1/16-inch** variation from reveal line in **48 inches**, noncumulative.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 098433

**SECTION 101100
VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Visual display board assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Visual display board assemblies.
 - 2. Floor-to-ceiling visual display assemblies.
 - 3. Glass markerboards.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, finishes, and accessories for visual display units.
 - 2. Include electrical characteristics for motorized units.
- C. Shop Drawings: For visual display units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
 - 2. Show locations of panel joints. Show locations of field-assembled joints for factory-fabricated units too large to ship in one piece.
 - 3. Include sections of typical trim members.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of visual display unit indicated.
 - 1. Visual Display Panel: Not less than **8-1/2 by 11 inches**, with facing, core, and backing indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.
- E. Product Schedule: For visual display units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For visual display units to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-fabricated visual display units completely assembled in one piece. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured unit size, or if unit size is impracticable to ship in one piece, provide two or more pieces with joints in locations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display units until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
 - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
 - 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. Per the manufacturer's warranty for product specified from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 VISUAL DISPLAY BOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or an approved comparable product.
 - 1. Claridge Products and Equipment, LLC.
- B. Markerboard Panel: Porcelain-enamel-faced markerboard panel on core indicated.

1. Color: White As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
 2. Manufacturer: Claridge Products
 3. Style: LCS Elite - Frameless Magnetic Whiteboard
 4. Size: 120 x 60 inches
 5. Mounting and Orientation: Invisimount / Landscape
- C. Accessories
1. High power magnets
 - a. MIKEDE
 - b. Round
 - c. Neodymium
 - d. Part No. 15P-S
 - e. Qty: (15)
 2. Dry Erase Markers
 - a. Minimum (4) colors per set
 - b. (1) set per board
 3. Microfiber Eraser
 - a. (1) per board
 4. Magnetic Tray for Markers
 - a. 1 foot long, minimum
 - b. (1) per board
- D. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricated from not less than **0.062-inch**- thick, extruded aluminum; slim size and standard shape of size and shape indicated on Drawings.
1. Aluminum Finish: Clear anodic finish.
 - a. Color: As indicated on FF&E schedule.
- E. Joints: Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints, balanced around center of board, as acceptable to Architect as indicated on approved Shop Drawings.

2.3 MARKERBOARD PANELS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Markerboard Panels: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction, consisting of moisture-barrier backing, core material, and porcelain-enamel face sheet with low-gloss finish. Laminate panels under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard, flexible waterproof adhesive.
- B. High-Pressure Markerboard Laminate Panels: Factory-laminated markerboard panel of three-ply construction, consisting of backing, fiberboard core material, and high-pressure markerboard laminate writing surface.
- C. Melamine Markerboard Panels: Fabricated from **1/4-inch**- thick, sealed and primed hardboard panels permanently bonded with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper writing surface.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: PEI-1002, with face sheet manufacturer's standard two- or three-coat process.
 - 1. Magnetic
 - 2. frameless
- B. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered.
- C. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-1.
- D. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- E. Fiberboard: ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber insulating board.
- F. Extruded Aluminum: **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063.
- G. Adhesives for Field Application: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive for use with specific type of panels, sheets, or assemblies; and for substrate application; as recommended in writing by visual display unit manufacturer.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA AMP 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for proper preparation and backing for visual display units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth where sliding visual display units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances, such as dirt, mold, and mildew, that could impair the performance of and affect the smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- C. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display units and wall surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Factory-Fabricated Visual Display Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display board assemblies with fasteners at not more than **16 inches** o.c. Secure tops and bottoms of boards to walls.
- C. Visual Display Board Assembly Mounting Heights: Install visual display units at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one removable cleaning instructions label to visual display unit in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- C. Cover and protect visual display units after installation and cleaning.

END OF SECTION 101100

SECTION 101416 PLAQUES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal plaques.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plaques.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show plaque mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each plaque at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of plaque, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Product Schedule: For plaques. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For plaques to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of plaques that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
- 2. Warranty Period: years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design".

2.2 METAL PLAQUES

- A. Cast Plaque: Cast-metal plaque with background texture, border, and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide A.R.K. Ramos or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Gemini Signage; Gemini, Inc.
 - b. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division
 - c. Metallic Arts
 - d. Southwell Company (The)
 - 2. Plaque Material: Cast aluminum.
 - 3. Plaque Thickness: **0.50 inch**.
 - 4. Finishes:
 - a. Integral Metal Finish: As selected by Architect from full range of industry finishes.
 - b. Integral Aluminum Finish: Anodized color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
 - c. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color to match Architect and City of Tulsa custom logos.
 - d. Overcoat: Manufacturer's standard baked-on clear coating.
 - 5. Background Texture: Leatherette.
 - 6. Integrally Cast Border Style: Raised flat band.
 - 7. Mounting: Concealed studs.
 - 8. Text and Typeface: Typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by plaque manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

- C. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of plaques, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 2. For exterior exposure, furnish nonferrous-metal devices unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Plaque Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of plaque, screwed into back of plaque, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of plaque unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by plaque manufacturer.
- C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, **0.045 inch** thick, with adhesive on both sides.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard plaques according to requirements indicated.
1. Preassemble plaques in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble plaques only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 5. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match plaque finish.
 6. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.
- B. Surface-Engraved Graphics: Machine-engrave characters and other graphic devices into indicated plaque surface to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.

1. Engraved Metal: Fill engraved graphics with manufacturer's standard baked enamel.
- C. Brackets: Fabricate brackets, fittings, and hardware for bracket-mounted plaques to suit plaque construction and mounting conditions indicated. Modify manufacturer's standard brackets as required.
 1. Aluminum Brackets: Factory finish brackets with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish to match plaque-background color unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Stainless Steel Brackets: Factory finish brackets to match plaque background finish unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.8 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 1. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
 2. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
 3. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
 4. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
 5. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.

2.9 LACQUER COATING FOR COPPER-ALLOY FINISHES

- A. Lacquer Coating: Clear, organic, waterborne, air-drying, acrylic lacquer called "Incralac"; specially developed for coating copper-alloy products; consisting of a

solution of acrylic resin, methyl methacrylate copolymer, leveling agent, and corrosion inhibitor benzotriazole.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that plaque-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate plaques without gaps or irregularities between backs of plaques and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL PLAQUES

- A. General: Install plaques using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install plaques level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with plaque surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Install plaques so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 - 3. Before installation, verify that plaque surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
 - 4. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Mounting Methods:
 - 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of plaque. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place plaque in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support plaque in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place plaque in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
 - 2. Brackets: Remove loose debris from substrate surface and install bracket supports in position, so that plaque is correctly located and aligned.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed plaques and plaques that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace plaques with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as plaques are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of plaques according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain plaques in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101416

SECTION 101419
DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Dimensional characters.
 - a. Cutout dimensional characters.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Sample of each type of dimensional character.
 - 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
- E. Product Schedule: For dimensional letter signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

101419 - 1

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Signs and supporting elements shall withstand the effects of gravity and other loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Uniform Wind Load: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cutout Characters: Characters with uniform faces; square-cut, smooth, eased edges; precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A.R.K. Ramos
 - b. Gemini Signage; Gemini, Inc.
 - c. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division
 - d. Metallic Arts
 - e. Southwell Company (The)
 - 2. Character Material: Sheet or plate aluminum.
 - 3. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of character.
 - 5. Finishes:
 - a. Integral Metal Finish: As selected by Architect from full range of industry

- finishes.
 - b. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - c. Overcoat: Manufacturer's standard baked-on clear coating.
 - d. Painted Edges: Paint edges of acrylic characters with laminated metal facing as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- 6. Mounting: Concealed studs.
 - 7. Typeface: Sans serif; as selected from manufacturer's typeface range.

2.3 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B209**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- E. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish nonferrous-metal devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, **0.045 inch** thick,

with adhesive on both sides.

- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 5. Internally brace dimensional characters for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners.
 - 6. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
 - 7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.
- B. Brackets: Fabricate brackets, fittings, and hardware for bracket-mounted signs to suit sign construction and mounting conditions indicated. Modify manufacturer's standard brackets as required.
 - 1. Aluminum Brackets: Factory finish brackets with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish to match sign-background color unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Stainless Steel Brackets: Factory finish brackets to match sign background finish unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Verify that electrical service is correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
 - 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Mounting Methods:
 - 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
 - 2. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on

back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.

- a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on studs, place sign in position, and push until spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
3. Through Fasteners: Drill holes in substrate using predrilled holes in sign as template. Countersink holes in sign if required. Place sign in position and flush to surface. Install through fasteners and tighten.
4. Back Bar and Brackets: Remove loose debris from substrate surface and install backbar or bracket supports in position, so that signage is correctly located and aligned.
5. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
6. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101423.16
ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

101423.16 - 1

trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
 - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: per construction warranty and/or manufacturer warranty from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1.

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements and an approved comparable product, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Amax Signs
 - b. KI - Take Form
 - 2. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
 - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size of sign.
 - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
 - c. Subsurface Graphics: Slide-in changeable insert.
 - d. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
 - a. Edge Condition: Square cut.

- b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.
 - c. Paint edge to match raised lettering color.
- 4. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated with concealed anchors two-face tape.
- 5. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- B. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive; die cut to form characters or images as indicated on Drawings and suitable for exterior applications.
- C. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. For exterior exposure, furnish nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized devices unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened sign unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Through Fasteners: Exposed metal fasteners matching sign finish, with type of head indicated, and installed in predrilled holes.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.
- C. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, **0.045 inch** thick, with adhesive on both sides.
- D. Hook-and-Loop Tape: Manufacturer's standard two-part tape consisting of hooked part on sign back and looped side on mounting surface.
- E. Magnetic Tape: Manufacturer's standard magnetic tape with adhesive on one side.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- C. Subsurface-Etched Graphics: Reverse etch back face of clear face-sheet material. Fill resulting copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply opaque manufacturer's standard background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- D. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
 - 1. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.

- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
 - 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
 - 2. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.16

SECTION 102113.17
PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Phenolic-core toilet compartments.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate requirements for overhead supports, blocking, reinforcing, and other supports concealed within wall to ensure that toilet compartments can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data.
 - 1. Phenolic-core toilet compartments.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
 - 3. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of toilet compartment.
 - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of toilet compartment, hardware, and accessory.
 - 1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.
- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements,

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

102113.17 - 1

and coordinate before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain phenolic-core toilet compartments from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Structural Performance: Where grab bars are mounted on toilet compartments, design panels to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Panels are able to withstand a concentrated load on grab bar of at least **250 lbf** applied at any direction and at any point, without deformation of panel.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

2.3 PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. ASI Accurate Partitions
 - 2. ASI Global Partitions
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored.
- C. Entrance-Screen Style: Floor anchored.
- D. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung Floor anchored.
- E. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid phenolic-core material with melamine facing on both sides fused to substrate during manufacture (not separately laminated), and with eased and polished edges. Provide minimum **3/4-inch**- thick doors and pilasters and minimum **1/2-inch**- thick panels. Provide with no-sightline system consisting of door and pilaster lapped edges on strike side of door and door and pilaster lapped edges on hinge side of door (unless continuous hinge is used).
- F. Entrance-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- G. Urinal-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- H. Pilaster Shoes: Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than **0.031-inch** nominal thickness and **3 inches** high, finished to match hardware.
- I. Pilaster Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than **0.031-inch**

nominal thickness and **3 inches** high, finished to match hardware.

- J. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters; with shoe and sleeve (cap) matching that on the pilaster.
- K. Brackets (Fittings):
 - 1. Stirrup Type: Ear or U-brackets, stainless steel.
 - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design, stainless steel.
- L. Phenolic Compartment Finish: One color in each room.
 - 1. Dark-Core Phenolic: Manufacturer's standard dark color core and edge.
 - a. Facing Sheet Color: as noted in the finish schedule.

2.4 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Door Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's operating hardware and accessories. Mount with through bolts.
 - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
 - 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel, surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at toilet enclosures designated as accessible.
 - 3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
 - 4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel, rubber-tipped bumper at outswinging doors.
 - 5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard stainless steel pull at outswinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at toilet enclosures designated as accessible.
- B. Door Hardware and Accessories, Heavy Duty: Manufacturer's heavy-duty institutional operating hardware and accessories.
 - 1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum **0.062-inch**-thick, stainless steel surface-mounted, paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through bolts.
 - 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, surface-mounted, cast stainless steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at toilet enclosures designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.
 - 3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, combination cast stainless steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through bolts.
 - 4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, rubber-tipped, cast stainless steel bumper at outswinging doors. Mount with through bolts.
 - 5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, cast stainless steel pull at outswinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units

on both sides of doors at toilet enclosures designated as accessible. Mount with through bolts.

- C. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- D. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters and walls to suit floor and wall conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Ceiling-Hung Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- E. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at pilasters and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- F. Urinal-Screen Posts: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies at posts and walls, with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of posts. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at posts to conceal anchorage.
- G. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide **24-inch-** wide, inswinging doors for standard toilet enclosures and **36-inch-** wide, outswinging doors with a minimum **32-inch-** wide, clear opening for toilet enclosures designated as accessible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels or Screens: **1/2 inch**.
 - b. Panels or Screens and Walls: **1 inch**.
 - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels or screens to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
 - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than **1-3/4 inches** into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than **2 inches** into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware in accordance with hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.17

**SECTION 102239
FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Operable acoustical panel partitions.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NIC: Noise Isolation Class.
- B. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.
- C. STC: Sound Transmission Class.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Operable acoustical panel partitions.
- B. Shop Drawings: For operable panel partitions.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, attachment details.
 - 2. Indicate stacking and operating clearances. Indicate location and installation requirements for hardware and track, blocking, and direction of travel.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed material, finish, covering, or facing.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Partition track, track supports and bracing, switches, turning space, and storage layout.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

- a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. HVAC ductwork, outlets, and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Smoke detectors.
 - f. Access panels.
- B. Setting Drawings: For embedded items and cutouts required in other work, including support-beam, mounting-hole template.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of operable panel partition.
 - 1. Include approval letter signed by manufacturer acknowledging Owner-furnished panel facing material complies with requirements.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For operable panel partitions to include in maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Panel finish facings and finishes for exposed trim and accessories. Include precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to finishes and performance.
 - b. Seals, hardware, track, track switches, carriers, and other operating components.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protectively package and sequence panels in order for installation. Clearly mark packages and panels with numbering system used on Shop Drawings. Do not use permanent markings on panels.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of operable panel partitions that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal

use.

2. Warranty Period: one year, plus manufacturer warranty terms years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide panels with finishes complying with one of the following as determined by testing identical products by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Complying with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested in accordance with NFPA 265 Method B Protocol or NFPA 286.
- B. Fire Resistance: Provide fire-rated operable panel partition assemblies complying with NFPA 80, based on testing in accordance with UL 10B for fire-rated door assemblies.
 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 OPERABLE ACOUSTICAL PANEL PARTITIONS

- A. Operable Acoustical Panel Partitions: Partition system, including panels, seals, finish facing, suspension system, operators, and accessories.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Modernfold, Inc: Acousti-Seal® Encore® Paired Panel or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Equipment Corporation
 - b. KWIK-WALL Company
 - c. Moderco Inc
 - d. Modernfold, Inc
- B. Panel Operation: Manually operated, paired panels.
- C. Panel Construction: As required to support panel from suspension components and with reinforcement for hardware attachment. Fabricate panels with tight hairline joints and concealed fasteners. Fabricate panels so finished in-place partition is rigid; level;

plumb; aligned, with tight joints and uniform appearance; and free of bow, warp, twist, deformation, and surface and finish irregularities.

- D. Dimensions: Fabricate operable acoustical panel partitions to form an assembled system of dimensions indicated and verified by field measurements.
 - 1. Panel Width: Standard widths.
- E. Finish Facing: Fabric wall covering.

2.3 SEALS

- A. Description: Seals that produce operable panel partitions complying with performance requirements and the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard seals unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Seals made from materials and in profiles that minimize sound leakage.
 - 3. Seals fitting tight at contact surfaces and sealing continuously between adjacent panels and between operable panel partition perimeter and adjacent surfaces, when operable panel partition is extended and closed.
- B. Horizontal Top Seals: Continuous-contact, resilient seal exerting uniform constant pressure on track or resilient, mechanical, retractable, constant-force-contact seal exerting uniform constant pressure on track when extended.
- C. Horizontal Bottom Seals:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard continuous-contact seal exerting uniform constant pressure on floor.
 - 2. Resilient, mechanical, retractable, constant-force-contact seal exerting uniform constant pressure on floor when extended, ensuring horizontal and vertical sealing and resisting panel movement.
 - a. Mechanically Operated for Acoustical Panels: Extension and retraction of bottom seal by operating handle or built-in operating mechanism, with operating range not less than **4 inches** between retracted seal and floor finish.

2.4 PANEL FINISH FACINGS

- A. Description: Finish facings for panels that comply with indicated fire-test-response characteristics and that are factory applied to operable panel partitions with appropriate backing, using mildew-resistant nonstaining adhesive as recommended by facing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply one-piece, seamless facings free of air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects, with edges tightly butted, and with no gaps or overlaps. Horizontal seams are not permitted. Tightly secure and conceal raw and selvage edges of facing for finished appearance.
 - 2. Where facings with directional or repeating patterns or directional weave are indicated, mark facing top and attach facing in same direction.
- B. Carpet Wall Covering: Manufacturer's standard nonwoven, needle-punched carpet with fibers fused to backing, from same dye lot, treated to resist stains.
 - 1. Color/Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- C. Fabric Wall Covering: Manufacturer's standard fabric, from same dye lot, treated to resist stains.
 - 1. Color/Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Paint: Manufacturer's standard factory-painted finish.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Cap-Trimmed Edges: Protective perimeter-edge trim with tight hairline joints concealing edges of panel and finish facing, finished as follows:
 - 1. Steel, Painted: Finished with manufacturer's color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Aluminum: Finished with manufacturer's standard color anodic finish.
- F. Trimless Edges: Fabricate exposed panel edges so finish facing wraps uninterrupted around panel, covering edge and resulting in an installed partition with facing visible on vertical panel edges, without trim, for minimal sightlines at panel-to-panel joints.

2.5 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tracks: Steel or aluminum mounted directly to overhead structural support, with adjustable steel hanger rods for overhead support, designed for operation, size, and weight of operable panel partition indicated. Size track to support partition operation and storage without damage to suspension system, operable panel partitions, or adjacent construction. Limit track deflection to no more than **0.10 inch** between bracket supports. Provide a continuous system of track sections and accessories to accommodate configuration and layout indicated for partition operation and storage.
 - 1. Panel Guide: Aluminum guide on both sides of the track to facilitate straightening of the panels; finished with factory-applied, decorative, protective finish.
 - 2. Head Closure Trim: As required for acoustical performance; with factory-applied, decorative, protective finish.
- B. Carriers: Trolley system as required for configuration type, size, and weight of partition and for easy operation; with ball-bearing wheels.
 - 1. Multidirectional Carriers: Capable of negotiating intersections without track switches.
- C. Track Intersections, Switches, and Accessories: As required for operation, storage, track configuration, and layout indicated for operable panel partitions, and compatible with partition assembly specified. Fabricate track intersections and switches from steel or aluminum.
 - 1. Center carrier stop.
- D. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish or manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, decorative finish unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Steel Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory-applied, corrosion-resistant, protective coating unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Storage Pocket Door: Full height at end of partition runs to conceal stacked partition; of

same materials, finish, construction, thickness, and acoustical qualities as panels; complete with operating hardware and acoustical seals at soffit, floor, and jams. Hinges in finish to match other exposed hardware.

1. Manufacturer's standard method to secure storage pocket door in closed position.
2. Rim Lock, Key Operated: Key-operated lock cylinder, keyed to master key system, to secure storage pocket door in closed position. Include two keys per lock.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine flooring, floor levelness, structural support, and opening, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of operable panel partitions.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF OPERABLE PANEL PARTITIONS

- A. Install operable panel partitions and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed in area of partition installation.
- B. Install panels in numbered sequence indicated on Shop Drawings.
- C. Broken, cracked, chipped, deformed, or unmatched panels are not acceptable.
- D. Broken, cracked, deformed, or unmatched gasketing or gasketing with gaps at butted ends is not acceptable.
- E. Light-Leakage Test: Illuminate one side of partition installation and observe vertical joints and top and bottom seals for voids. Adjust partitions for alignment and full closure of vertical joints and full closure along top and bottom seals.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operable panel partitions, hardware, and other moving parts to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust pass doors to operate smoothly and easily, without binding or warping.
- C. Verify that safety devices are properly functioning.

3.5 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service is to include 12 months' full maintenance by manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operable-partition operation. Parts and supplies are to be manufacturer's

authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain operable panel partitions.

END OF SECTION 102239

SECTION 102800
TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
 - 2. Public-use shower room accessories.
 - 3. Custodial accessories.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 - 3. Include electrical characteristics.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 - 2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For grab bars and shower seats.
 - 1. Include structural design calculations indicating compliance with specified structural-performance requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranties

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist **250 lbf** concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.
 - 2. Shower Seats: Installed units are able to resist **360 lbf** concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser (10.DTP):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - Amercian Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Description: Double-roll dispenser with shelf.
 - 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 4. Operation: Noncontrol delivery with standard spindle.
 - 5. Capacity: Designed for **5-inch-** diameter tissue rolls.
 - 6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Automatic Paper Towel (Roll) Dispenser (10.PTD):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI, - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Description: Automatic motion-sensing mechanism with user-adjustable delay and paper towel length; battery powered.
 - 3. Mounting: Semirecessed.
 - 4. Minimum Capacity: **8-inch-** wide, **800-foot-** long roll.
 - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- D. Combination Towel (Roll) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle (10.CPTD-12):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

2. Description: Combination unit for dispensing preset length of roll paper towels, with removable waste receptacle.
 3. Towel Mechanism: Automatic, battery-operated sensor.
 4. Mounting: Semirecessed.
 5. Minimum Towel-Dispenser Capacity: **8-inch-** wide, **800-foot-** long roll.
 6. Minimum Waste Receptacle Capacity: **12 gal..**
 7. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- E. Automatic Soap Dispenser (10.SDW):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bradley Corporation
 - b. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 2. Description: Automatic dispenser with infrared sensor to detect presence of hands; battery powered; designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
 3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 4. Materials: Stainless Steel - Satin.
 5. Refill Indicator: LED indicator.
 6. Low-Battery Indicator: LED indicator.
- F. Grab Bar (10.GB-18, 10.GB-36, 10.GB-42. & 10.GBSHR):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
 3. Material: Stainless steel, **0.05 inch** thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 4. OD: **1-1/2 inches.**
 5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- G. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit (10.FNW):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI, American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- H. Seat-Cover Dispenser (10.TSCW):
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
- 3. Minimum Capacity: 250 seat covers.
- 4. Exposed Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- 5. Lockset: Tumbler type.
- I. Mirror Unit (10.MU9648, 10.MU7248, & 10.MU3348):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Frame: Stainless steel angle, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- J. Hook:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide American Specialties, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Description: Double-prong unit.
 - 3. Mounting: Concealed.
 - 4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - 5. Location: Single Restroom with Shower
 - a. Back of Single Restroom Door @ 48" AFF.
 - b. Near shower entry @ 48" AFF
 - c. Near shower entry @ 60" AFF

2.3 PUBLIC-USE SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Shower Curtain Rod (10.SRHC):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

2. Description: 1-1/4-inch- OD, straight rod.
3. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Mounting Flanges: Concealed fasteners; in manufacturer's standard material and finish.
5. Rod Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

C. Shower Curtain (10.SRHC):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI, American Specialties, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Size: Minimum 12 inches wider than opening by 72 inches high.
3. Material: Duck, minimum 8 oz., white, 100 percent cotton.
4. Color: White.
5. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches o.c. through top hem.
6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.
 - a. Ball bearing at top of hooks.

D. Folding Shower Seat (10.RSS):

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - Amercian Specialties or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Configuration: Rectangular seat.
3. Seat: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin); 0.05-inch- minimum nominal thickness; with single-piece, pan-type construction and edge seams welded and ground smooth.
4. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

E. Soap Dish:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Redblock RB3 Moly Stainless Steel Shower Corner Shelf, <https://redblockindustries.com/product/rb3-stainless-steel-shower-corner-shelf> or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. ASI-American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Description: Surface mounted, with the following features:
 - a. Washcloth bar.
3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

F. Robe Hook:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, Inc or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Description: Double-prong unit.
3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI - American Specialties, 1315 or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc
 - b. Bradley Corporation
 - c. Gamco Commercial Restroom Accessories; Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
3. Length: 36 inches.
4. Hooks: Four.
5. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
6. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel.
 - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch- diameter stainless steel.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch- minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B19, flat products; ASTM B16/B16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch- minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A153/A153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

102800 - 6

- H. Mirrors: ASTM C1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
 - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.
- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

**SECTION 104413
FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguisher.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Babcock-Davis
 - 2. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International
 - 3. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc
 - 4. JL Industries; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
 - 5. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
 - 6. Modern Metal Products
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- C. Cabinet Construction: One-hour fire rated.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from **0.043-inch**- thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum **5/8-inch**- thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- D. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: **4-inch** backbend depth.
- F. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- G. Door Material: Stainless steel sheet.
- H. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.
- I. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim,, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- K. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
 - 3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

- a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
 - 2) Application Process: Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Red.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

L. Materials:

- 1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
 - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
 - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 2. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 3 mm thick.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 - 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 - 2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
 - 3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 - 4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 - 5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum **1/2 inch** thick.
 - 2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-PROTECTION CABINETS

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: **42 inches** above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
 - 4. Fire-Rated Cabinets:
 - a. Install cabinet with not more than **1/16-inch** tolerance between pipe OD and knockout OD. Center pipe within knockout.
 - b. Seal through penetrations with firestopping sealant as specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- C. Identification:
 - 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or

furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to fire extinguishers including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher.
- B. Product data: for each product provide fire extinguisher J-hook for mounting in FEC cabinet
- C. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet indicated.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Activar Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis
 - b. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company
 - c. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company
 - d. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International
 - e. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container (FEC): UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, **10-lb** nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 104416

**SECTION 105129
PHENOLIC LOCKERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Phenolic lockers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of phenolic locker.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Details full size.
 - 3. Locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - 4. Locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in lockers.
 - 5. Locker fillers, trim, base, sloping tops, and accessories.
 - 6. Locker identification system and numbering sequence.
- C. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of phenolic locker, hardware, and accessory.
 - 1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Statements: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranties: For phenolic lockers.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For phenolic lockers including adjusting, repairing, and replacing locker doors and latching mechanisms.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver lockers until spaces to receive them are clean, dry, and ready for their installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with lockers by field measurements, and coordinate before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concealed wood support bases.
 - 1. Requirements are specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of work specified in other Sections to ensure that lockers can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of lockers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation of locks or hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of finishes and materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: manufacturers standard period yearse of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain phenolic lockersand hardware and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Accessibility Regulations: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1 for lockers designated as

accessible.

2.3 PHENOLIC LOCKERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide ASI American Specialties, Inc.; ASI Group: PHENOLIC TRADITIONAL COLLECTION or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. ASI Storage Solutions
 - 2. Partition Systems International of South Carolina (PSISC); Columbia Systems International of South Carolina LLC
- B. Construction Style: Manufacturer's standard factory-assembled flush overlay units.
- C. Locker Body: Solid phenolic-core material with melamine facing on both sides fused to substrate during manufacture (not separately laminated), and with beveled and polished edges.
 - 1. Thickness:
 - a. Side Panels: Manufacturer's standard.
 - b. Back Panel: Manufacturer's standard.
 - c. Top Panel: Manufacturer's standard.
 - d. Bottom Panel: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Doors: Solid phenolic-core material with melamine facing on both sides fused to substrate during manufacture (not separately laminated), and with beveled and polished edges.
 - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. End Panels: Match style, material, construction, thickness, and finish of doors.
- F. Fixed Shelves: Match style, material, construction, and finish of locker body.
 - 1. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.
- G. Corners and Filler Panels: Match style, material, construction, thickness, and finish of doors.
- H. Continuous Finish Base: Match style, material, construction, thickness, and finish of doors; fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends of lockers.
- I. Phenolic Locker Finish:
 - 1. Black-Core Phenolic:
 - a. Facing Sheet Color:
 - 1) Locker Body: Reference finish legend.
 - 2) Doors: Same as Locker BodyInsert color.
 - b. Exposed Edges: Manufacturer's standard black edge.
- J. Pedestal Supports: Provide adjustable pedestal support legs with all necessary hardware for attachment of continuous finish base.

2.4 HARDWARE

- A. Locking Device:
 - 1. Padlock Hasp: Surface mounted, steel, through bolted.
 - a. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Hinges:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Frameless Hinges (European Type): Fully concealed, self-closing, with not less than 110 degrees of opening; manufacturer's standard material and finish.
 - a. Provide two hinges for doors. high and less.
- C. Handle:
 - 1. Accessible Handle: Metal, fixed, graspable lever handle and rose trim; surface mounted.
 - a. Material and Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Number Identification:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Number Plates: **1-1/2-inch**- diameter, etched, embossed, or stamped, aluminum or stainless steel plates with black numbers and letters at least **3/8 inch** high. Identify lockers in sequence indicated on Drawings.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Anchors: Material, type, size, and finish as required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate each locker with shelves, an individual door and frame, an individual top, a bottom, and a back, and with common intermediate uprights separating compartments.
 - 1. Fabricate lockers to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
 - 2. Reference Interior elevations.
- B. Fabricate lockers square, rigid, without warp, and with finished faces flat and free of dents, scratches, and chips. Accurately factory machine components for attachments. Make joints tight and true.
- C. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
 - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than **15 inches** above the floor.
- D. Venting: Fabricate lockers with space between doors and locker assembly of not less than **1/4 inch**.

- E. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible, before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Use only manufacturer's nuts, bolts, screws, and other devices for assembly.
- F. Shop cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and floors or support bases, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that furring is attached to concrete and masonry walls that are to receive lockers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wood support base with **1/2-inch-** thick, plywood top.
- B. Install lockers level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
 - 1. Connect single rows of lockers together side-to-side at each locker. Connect back-to-back lockers together side-to-side at each locker and back-to-back at each locker every other locker. Use manufacturer's standard connecting bolts, through predrilled holes, with no exposed fasteners on face frames. Fit lockers accurately together to form flush, tight, hairline joints.
 - 2. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than **36 inches** o.c., using manufacturer's standard concealed fasteners for material indicated.
 - a. Anchor single rows of lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers.
- C. Install lockers without distortion so doors fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors in openings, providing unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
- D. Installation Tolerance: No more than **1/8 inch in 96-inch** sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line. Shim as required with concealed shims.
- E. Scribe and cut corner and filler panels to fit adjoining work using fasteners concealed where practical. Repair damaged finish at cuts.
- F. Attach sloping-top units to lockers, with end panels covering exposed ends.
- G. Install number identification plates after lockers are in place.
 - 1. Attach number identification plate on each locker door, near top, centered, with at

least two screws with finish matching the plate.

- H. Movable Locker Benches: Place benches in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware. Adjust doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect lockers from damage, abuse, dust, dirt, stain, or paint. Do not permit use during construction.
- B. Touch up marred finishes, or replace lockers that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 105129

**SECTION 113013
RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cooking appliances.
 - 2. Kitchen exhaust ventilation.
 - 3. Refrigeration appliances.
 - 4. Cleaning appliances.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and finishes for each appliance.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Product Schedule: For appliances. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For manufacturers' special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each residential appliance to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard warranty period years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Appliances: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Gas-Fueled Appliances: Certified by a qualified testing agency for each type of gas-

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW23-01-01
06/06/2025
113013 - 1

fueled appliance according to ANSI Z21 Series standards.

- C. Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1.

2.2 COOKING APPLIANCES

- A. Gas Range: Freestanding range with one oven(s).
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product.
 - a. Bosch US; BSH Home Appliances Corporation
 - b. Frigidaire
 - c. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - d. Kenmore; Transformco SR Brands LLC
 - e. KitchenAid; Whirlpool Corporation
 - f. LG Electronics USA, Inc.; LG Electronics Inc.
 - g. Maytag; Whirlpool Corporation
 - h. Samsung Electronics America, Inc. (SEA); Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. (SEC)
 - i. Viking Range, LLC; Middleby Corporation
 - j. Whirlpool Corporation
- B. Microwave Oven:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product. :
 - a. Frigidaire
 - b. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - c. Jennair; Whirlpool Corporation
 - d. Kenmore; Transformco SR Brands LLC
 - e. KitchenAid; Whirlpool Corporation
 - f. LG Electronics USA, Inc.; LG Electronics Inc.
 - g. Maytag; Whirlpool Corporation
 - h. Miele
 - i. Samsung Electronics America, Inc. (SEA); Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. (SEC)
 - j. Sharp Electronics Corp.
 - k. Whirlpool Corporation
 - 2. Controls: Digital panel controls and timer display.

2.3 KITCHEN EXHAUST VENTILATION

- A. Overhead Exhaust Hood:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in the drawings (ref. MEP) or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Ref. MEP drawings and specifications

2.4 REFRIGERATION APPLIANCES

- A. Refrigerator/Freezer: Side by Side (REF1), Single glass door at Lab (REF2) undercounter refrigerator (REF3), and countertop freezer (FRZ) and complying with AHAM HRF-1.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Amana; Whirlpool Corporation
 - b. Bosch US; BSH Home Appliances Corporation
 - c. Frigidaire
 - d. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - e. Jennair; Whirlpool Corporation
 - f. Kenmore; Transformco SR Brands LLC
 - g. KitchenAid; Whirlpool Corporation
 - h. LG Electronics USA, Inc.; LG Electronics Inc.
 - i. Maytag; Whirlpool Corporation
 - j. Samsung Electronics America, Inc. (SEA); Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. (SEC)
 - k. Viking Range, LLC; Middleby Corporation
 - l. Whirlpool Corporation
 - m. Wolf; Sub-Zero Group, Inc.
- B. Freezer: One freezer compartment(s) with door(s) and complying with AHAM HRF-1.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Frigidaire
 - b. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - c. Maytag; Whirlpool Corporation
 - d. Whirlpool Corporation
 2. Appliance Color/Finish: Stainless steel.
- C. Icemaker:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product.
 - a. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - b. Jennair; Whirlpool Corporation
 - c. Viking Range, LLC; Middleby Corporation

2.5 CLEANING APPLIANCES

- A. Dishwasher: Complying with AHAM DW-1.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the appliance shown in drawings or an approved comparable product.
 - a. Bosch US; BSH Home Appliances Corporation
 - b. GE Appliances; Haier Group
 - c. Jennair; Whirlpool Corporation

- d. Kenmore; Transformco SR Brands LLC
- e. KitchenAid; Whirlpool Corporation
- f. LG Electronics USA, Inc.; LG Electronics Inc.
- g. Maytag; Whirlpool Corporation
- h. Samsung Electronics America, Inc. (SEA); Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. (SEC)
- i. Whirlpool Corporation

2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, and other conditions affecting installation and performance of residential appliances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before appliance installation.
- C. Examine walls, ceilings, and roofs for suitable conditions where overhead exhaust hoods will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

- A. Install appliances according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and that rough openings are completely concealed.
- C. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.
- D. Range Anti-Tip Device: Install at each range according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Perform visual, mechanical, and electrical inspection and testing for each appliance according to manufacturers' written recommendations. Certify compliance with each manufacturer's appliance-performance parameters.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.
- B. An appliance will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 113013

**SECTION 122413
ROLLER WINDOW SHADES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Manually operated, single-roller shades.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.
 - a. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - b. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, features, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of roller shade including actual shadeband material and installation accessories.
 - 1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.
- D. Product Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- B. Qualification Statements: For Installer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roller shades.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Defects in materials and workmanship beyond normal wear and tear.
 - b. Faulty operation of operating system components.
 - c. Deterioration of fabric beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. Roller Window Shades: Standard Manufacturer warranty in addition to the project warranty starting from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Fabric: Standard Manufacturer warranty in addition to the project warranty starting from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Window Covering Safety Standard: Provide roller window shades that comply with WCMA A100.1.
- B. Fire Performance: Tested in accordance with and meeting the flame propagation performance criteria of Test 1 or Test 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Accessibility Standards: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1 for roller window shades designated as accessible.

2.3 MANUALLY OPERATED ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

- A. Manually Operated, Single-Roller Shades: For interior use in rectangular openings.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Draper, Inc. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Hunter Douglas Architectural Window Coverings
 - b. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc
 - c. MechoShade Systems, LLC
 - d. Springs Window Fashions; SWFcontract
 2. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shadebands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shadebands for service.
 - a. Roller Drive-End Location: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back (exterior face) of roller.
 - c. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
 3. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to six inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
 4. Shadebands:
 - a. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 - b. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - 1) Type: Elliptical slot enclosed in sealed pocket of shadeband material.
 - 2) Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 5. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, with endcap covers where exposed, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and installation location and conditions indicated.
 6. Installation Accessories:
 - a. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and shadeband assembly and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
 - 1) Shape: L-shaped.
 - 2) Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than **3 inches**.
 - b. Exposed Headbox: Extruded-aluminum enclosure including front fascia, L-shaped top/back cover, and removable bottom closure, that fully conceals roller and shadeband assembly, and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
 - 1) Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband assembly when shade is fully open, but not less than **3 inches**.
 - c. Closure Panel and Wall Clip: Removable aluminum panel designed for

installation at bottom of site-constructed ceiling recess or pocket and for snap-in attachment to wall clip without fasteners.

- d. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 MANUAL OPERATION

A. Manual Corded Operation:

1. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
 - a. Bead Chains: Nickel-plated metal Stainless steel bead chain with WCMA A100.1 compliant tension device installed on roller window shade by manufacturer and mounted on wall jamb.
 - 1) Loop Length: Full length of roller shade or longer with bottom of shade is more than 48 inches above the finish floor..
 - 2) Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - b. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: Manufacturer's standard for balancing roller shade weight and for lifting heavy roller shades.
 - 1) Provide for shadebands that weigh more than **10 lb** or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criterion is more stringent.

2.5 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

A. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.

1. Source: Roller shade manufacturer.
2. Type: Woven polyester and PVC-coated polyester.
3. Weave: Mesh.
4. Thickness: 0.026 - 0.027 inches.
5. Weight: **15.1 - 16..**
6. Roll Width: **72 inches** Varies, reference drawings..
7. Orientation on Shadeband: Up the bolt.
8. Openness Factor: 3 5 percent.
9. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 FABRICATION OF ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

A. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at **74 deg F**:

1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less **1/4 inch** per side or **1/2-inch** total, plus or minus **1/8 inch**. Length equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less **1/4 inch**, plus or minus **1/8 inch**.
2. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated on Drawings, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.

- B. Shadeband Fabrication: Fabricate shadebands without battens or seams to extent possible, except as follows:
 - 1. Vertical Shades: Where width-to-length ratio of shadeband is equal to or greater than 1:4, provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband length to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion of the material.
 - 2. Skylight Shades: Provide battens and seams at uniform spacings along shadeband as required to ensure shadeband tracking and alignment through its full range of movement without distortion or sag of material.
 - 3. Railroaded Materials: Railroad material where material roll width is less than the required width of shadeband and where indicated. Provide battens and seams as required by railroaded material to produce shadebands with full roll-width panel(s) plus, if required, one partial roll-width panel located at top of shadeband.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, aligned and centered on openings, and aligned with adjacent units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Located so shadeband is not closer than **2 inches** to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: As indicated on Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller window shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction through full operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller window shade surfaces, after installation, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller window shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller window shades.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 123553.13
METAL LABORATORY CASEWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal laboratory casework.
 - 2. Auxiliary cabinets.
 - 3. Countertops.
 - 4. Laboratory casework systems.
 - 5. Laboratory accessories.
 - 6. Electrical and communication service fittings.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- B. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying requirements.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements for support of laboratory casework.
- B. Coordinate installation of laboratory casework with installation of laboratory equipment.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For laboratory casework.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachments to other work including blocking and reinforcements required for installation.
 - 2. Indicate types and sizes of casework.
 - 3. Indicate manufacturer's catalog numbers for casework.
 - 4. Show fabrication details, including types and locations of hardware.
 - 5. Indicate locations and types of service fittings.
 - 6. Include details of utility spaces showing supports for conduits and piping.
 - 7. Include details of support framing system.
 - 8. Include details of exposed conduits, if required, for service fittings.
 - 9. Indicate locations of and clearances from adjacent walls, doors, windows, other building components, and laboratory equipment.
 - 10. Include coordinated dimensions for laboratory equipment specified in other Sections.
- C. Keying Schedule: Include schematic keying diagram, and index each key set to unique designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of casework, exposed-hardware, and countertop-material finish, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish complete touchup kit for each type and color of casework finish provided. Include fillers, primers, paints, and other materials necessary to perform permanent repairs to damaged laboratory casework finish.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that produces casework of types indicated for this Project that has been tested for compliance with SEFA 8 M.
- B. The steel laboratory furniture contractor to provide and or coordinate all worktops and fume hoods to assure proper staging, shipment and installation.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finished surfaces during handling and installation with protective covering of polyethylene film or other suitable material.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install laboratory casework until building is enclosed, utility roughing-in and wet-work are complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where laboratory casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- C. Field Measurements: Where laboratory casework is indicated to fit to existing construction, verify dimensions of existing construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- D. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before enclosing them, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain laboratory casework from single source from single manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. System Structural Performance: Laboratory casework and support framing system are to withstand the effects of the following gravity loads and stresses without permanent deformation, excessive deflection, or binding of drawers and doors:
- B. Seismic Performance: Laboratory casework installation is to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Steel Casework Construction Performance:
 - 1. Base cabinets shall be constructed to support at least a uniformly distributed load 200 pounds per square foot of cabinet top area, including working surface without objectionable distortion or interference with door and drawer operation.
 - 2. Base cabinet leveling bolts shall support 500 pounds per corner, at 1-1/2" projection of the leveling bolt below the cabinet bottom.
 - 3. Each adjustable and fixed shelf 4 feet or shorter in length shall support an evenly distributed load of 40 pounds per square foot up to a maximum of 200 pounds, with nominal temporary deflection, but without permanent set.
 - 4. Full extension soft-close, self-closing ball bearing zinc plated drawer slide shall be rated for 100 pound loads.
 - 5. Swinging doors on floor-mounted inset style casework shall support 200 pounds suspended at a point 12" from hinged side, with door swung through an arc of 160 degrees. Weight load test shall allow only a temporary deflection, without permanent distortion or twist. Door shall operate freely after test and assume a flat plane in a closed position.
- D. Steel Paint System Finish and Performance Specification:
 - 1. Steel Paint System Finish:
 - 2. Performance Test Results (Heat Resistance): Hot water (190 degrees F - 205 degrees F) shall be allowed to trickle (with a steady stream at a rate not less than 6 ounces per minute) on the finished surface, which shall be set at an angle of 45 degrees from horizontal, for a period of five minutes. After cooling and wiping dry, the finish shall show no visible effect from the hot water treatment.
 - 3. Performance Test Results (Chemical Spot Tests):
 - a. Testing Procedure: Chemical spot tests for non-volatile chemicals shall be made by applying 5 drops of each reagent to the surface to be tested and covering with a 1-1/4" dia. watch glass, convex side down to confine the reagent. Spot tests of volatile chemicals shall be tested by placing a cotton ball saturated with reagent on the surface to be tested and covering with an inverted 2-ounce wide mouth bottle to retard evaporation. All spot tests shall be conducted in such a manner that the test surface is kept wet throughout the entire test period, and at a temperature of 77 degrees ±3 degrees F. For both methods, leave the reagents on the panel for a period

- of one hour. At the end of the test period, the reagents shall be flushed from the surface with water, and the surface scrubbed with a soft bristle brush under running water, rinsed and dried. Volatile solvent test areas shall be cleaned with a cotton swab soaked in the solvent used on the test area. Immediately prior to evaluation, 16 to 24 hour
- b. Test Evaluation: Evaluation shall be based on the following rating system. Level 0 – No detectable change. Level 1 – Slight change in color or gloss. Level 2 – Slight surface etching or severe staining. Level 3 – Pitting, cratering, swelling, or erosion of coating. Obvious and significant deterioration. After testing, panel shall show no more than three (3) Level 3 conditions.
 - c. Test Reagents Test No. Chemical Reagent Test Method 1. Acetate, Amyl Cotton ball & bottle 2. Acetate, Ethyl Cotton ball & bottle 3. Acetic Acid, 98% Watch glass 4. Acetone Cotton ball & bottle 5. Acid Dichromate, 5% Watch glass 6. Alcohol, Butyl Cotton ball & bottle 7. Alcohol, Ethyl Cotton ball & bottle 8. Alcohol, Methyl Cotton ball & bottle 9. Ammonium Hydroxide, 28% Watch glass 10. Benzene Cotton ball & bottle 11. Carbon Tetrachloride Cotton ball & bottle 12. Chloroform Cotton ball & bottle 13. Chromic Acid, 60% Watch glass 14. Cresol Cotton ball & bottle 15. Dichlor Acetic Acid Cotton ball & bottle 16. Dimethylformamide Cotton ball & bottle 17. Dioxane Cotton ball & bottle 18. Ethyl Ether Cotton ball & bottle 19. Formaldehyde, 37% Cotton ball & bottle 20. Formic Acid, 90% Watch glass 21. Furfural Cotton ball & bottle 22. Gasoline Cotton ball & bottle 23. Hydrochloric Acid, 37% Watch glass 24. Hydrofluoric Acid, 48% Watch glass 25. Hydrogen Peroxid
4. Performance Test Results (Impact Resistance): A one-pound ball (approximately 2" diameter) shall be dropped from a distance of 12 inches onto the finished surface of steel panel supported underneath by a solid surface. There shall be no evidence of cracks or checks in the finish due to impact upon close eye-ball examination.
 5. Performance Test Results (Bending Test): An 18 gauge steel strip, finished as specified, when bent 180o over a 1/2" diameter mandrel, shall show no peeling or flaking off of the finish.
 6. Performance Test Results (Adhesion): Ninety or more squares of the test sample shall remain coated after the scratch adhesion test. Two sets of eleven parallel lines 1/16" apart shall be cut with a razor blade to intersect at right angle thus forming a grid of 100 squares. The cuts shall be made just deep enough to go through the coating, but not into the substrate. They shall then be brushed lightly with a soft brush. Examine under 100 foot-candles of illumination. Note: This test is based on ASTM D2197-68, "Standard Method of Test for Adhesion of Organic Coatings".
 7. Performance Test Results (Hardness): The test sample shall have a hardness of 4-H using the pencil hardness test. Pencils, regardless of their brand are valued in this way: 8-H is the hardest, and next in order of diminishing hardness are 7-H, 6-H, 5-H, 4-H, 3-H, 2-H, F, HB, B (soft), 2-B, 3-B, 4-B, 5-B (which is the softest).

2.3 CASEWORK, GENERAL

- A. Casework Product Standard: Comply with SEFA 8 M, "Laboratory Grade Metal Casework."

- B. Flammable Liquid Storage: Where cabinets are indicated for solvent or flammable liquid storage, provide units that are listed and labeled as complying with requirements in NFPA 30 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.4 METAL LABORATORY CASEWORK

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kewaunee Scientific Corporation: Research Collection Kewaunee Scientific Corporation, Research Collection or an approved equal comparable product.
 - 1. ICI scientific
 - 2. Mott Manufacturing Ltd
- B. Materials:
 - 1. Steel Sheet: Cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M; matte finish; suitable for exposed applications.
 - 2. Composition Core Plywood: Composition core plywood shall be 3-ply and shall be compliant with ANSI A208.1-199, and/or ANSI A208.2-1994
- C. DRAWER AND DOOR STYLE:
 - 1. Overlay – Square Edge drawer and door, when closed, shall rest against face of cabinet shell, creating a 3/4" overlay front with 1/8" reveal. The outer drawer and door head shall have a channel formation on all four sides to eliminate sharp raw edges of steel. The top front corners of the door shall be welded and ground smooth. Cabinet shall be available with 5-knuckle, semi-concealed or concealed hinges and optional pulls.
- D. HARDWARE AND TRIM:
 - 1. Drawer and Door Pulls: Drawer and door pulls shall be mounted on 4" centers, offering a comfortable hand grip, and be securely fastened to doors and drawers. Anodized aluminum in a flat rectangular shape.
 - 2. Overlay Hinges: Overlay Concealed 170° Swing. Fully concealed hinges with a matte nickel finish. Hinge shall have three dimensional adjustment and provide up to 170° opening. It shall incorporate an integrated catch to keep the door closed without the use of additional catch hardware. Doors under 36" in height shall be hung on one pair of hinges, and doors over 36" in height shall be hung on three hinges.
 - 3. Drawer Slide: Heavy duty, full extension, soft-close, self-closing, zinc plated, ball bearing slides, rated for 100 pound loads.
 - 4. Locks: Pin Tumbler locks when shown or called for shall be a pin tumbler with heavy duty interchangeable cylinder. Exposed lock noses shall be dull nickel (satin) plated and stamped with identifying numbers. Locks shall have capacity of at least 2000 primary key changes, and the capacity to be Master Keyed, Grand-master Keyed, Sub-master Keyed, and Mason Keyed.
 - 5. Elbow Catches: Elbow catches and strike plates shall be used on left hand doors of double door cases where locks are used, and are to be burnished cast aluminum, with bright brass finish.

6. Shelf Adjustment Clips: Shelf adjustment clips shall be die formed, nickel-plated steel.
7. Leg Shoes: Leg shoes shall be a pliable, black vinyl material and shall be provided on all table legs, unless otherwise specified, to conceal leveling device. Use of a leg shoe, which does not conceal leveling device, will not be acceptable.
8. Base Molding: Provided by others.
9. Label Holders: Label holders, where shown or called for, shall be self-adhesive type aluminum with satin finish and designed for 2-1/2" x 1-1/8" cards, unless otherwise specified.
10. Number Plates: Number plates, where shown or called for, shall be self-adhesive type aluminum with indented black lettering.
11. Sink Supports: Sink supports shall be the hanger type, suspended from end panels of sink cabinet by four 1/4" dia. rods, threaded at bottom end and offset at top to hang from two full-depth reinforcements, welded to the top of end panels. Two 3/4" x 1-1/2" x 12 gauge channels shall be hung on the threaded rods to provide an adjustable sink cradle for supporting sinks.
12. Support Struts: Support struts shall consist of two 16 gauge channel uprights fastened top and bottom by two adjustable 12 gauge "U" shaped spreaders, each, 1-1/2" x length required, formed from galvanized steel. Struts shall be furnished to support drain troughs, and to support worktop at plumbing space under fume hood superstructures or other heavy loads. Support struts can be furnished with hangers at extra cost when specified, to support mechanical service piping and drain lines.

E. Steel Cabinet Construction:

1. General:
 - a. The steel furniture shall be of modern design and shall be constructed in accordance with the best practices of the Scientific Laboratory Equipment Industry. First class quality casework shall be insured by the use of proper machinery, tools, dies, fixtures and skilled workmanship to meet the intended quality and quantity for the project.
 - b. All cabinet bodies shall be flush front construction with intersection of vertical and horizontal case members, such as end panels, top rails, bottoms and vertical posts in same plane without overlap. Exterior corners shall be spot welded with heavy back up reinforcements.
 - c. Each cabinet shall be complete so that units can be relocated at any subsequent time without requiring field application of finished ends or other such parts.
 - d. Case openings of Inset style cabinets shall be rabbeted on all four sides for both hinged and sliding doors to provide a dust resistant case.
 - e. All cabinets shall have a cleanable smooth interior. Bottoms shall be formed down on sides and back to create easily cleanable corners with no burrs or sharp edges.
 - f. Cabinets shall be designed using a standardized grid pattern to allow reconfiguration of doors and drawers.
2. Steel Gauges: Gauges of steel used in construction of cases shall be 18 gauge, except as follows:
 - a. Leveling bolt reinforcements 12 gauge.
 - b. Top and intermediate front horizontal rails, apron rails, hinge reinforcements, and reinforcement gussets, 16 gauge.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

123553.13 - 6

- c. Drawer assemblies, door assemblies, bottom, bottom back rail, toe space rail, and adjustable shelves, 20 gauge.

F. Base Cabinet Construction:

1. End uprights shall be formed into not less than an L formation at top, bottom, back and a 3/4" wide front C formation. A pilaster shall be added to the inside front of the upright for cabinet and hinge reinforcement and shall be perforated for the support of drawer channels, intermediate rails, hinge screws, and shelf adjustment holes.
2. A 7/8" high top horizontal rail shall interlock with the flange at top of end panels for strength, but shall be flush at face of unit. Top rails not flush with face of end uprights are not acceptable.
3. Intermediate rails shall be provided between doors and drawers, but shall not be provided between drawers unless made necessary by locks in drawers. Intermediate rails shall be recessed behind doors and drawer fronts, and designed so that security panels may be added
4. Intermediate vertical uprights shall be furnished to enclose cupboards when used in a unit in combination with a half width bank of drawers.
5. Cabinet bottom shall be formed of one piece of steel, except in corner units, and shall be formed down on sides and back to create a square edge transition welded to cabinet end panels. Front edge shall include a C formation to form a 7/8" high bottom front rail and shall be flush with face of end uprights. Cabinet bottom front rails not flush with face of end uprights are not acceptable.
6. Toe space rail shall extend up and forward to engage bottom panel to form a smooth surfaced fully enclosed toe space, 3" deep x 4" high.
7. Back construction shall be one piece with integral channel formed for maximum strength and welded to back of top and bottom flanges of end uprights.
8. Each bottom corner of base cabinets shall have a 3/8"-16 leveling bolt, 2-1/2" long capable of supporting 500 lbs. Access to the leveling bolts shall be through plug buttons in the cabinet bottom. Access to leveling bolts through toe space or leveling bolts requiring special tools to adjust are not acceptable.
9. Adjustable shelves shall be formed down 3/4", returned back 7/8" and up 1/4" into a channel formation front and rear and formed down 3/4" at each end. Shelves over 42" long shall be further reinforced with a channel formation welded to underside of shelf. Shelves shall be adjustable on not more than 1" increments.
10. Each adjustable shelf shall include a lip that extends 1/2" above the front edge.
11. Steel Door assembly (two-piece) for solid panel swinging doors shall consist of an inner and outer door pan. Outer door pan shall be formed at all four sides. The corners on the pull side of the outer door pan shall be welded and ground smooth to prevent exposure of sharp edges of steel at these critical points. Inner door pan shall be flanged at all four sides with hinge reinforcements welded in place. The door assembly shall be 3/4" thick and contains sound deadening material. Door assemblies shall be painted prior to assembly, and shall be punched for attaching pulls. Inner pan formation of door shall be indented for in-field installation of locks when required.
12. Doors shall be readily removable and hinges easily replaceable. Hinges shall be applied to the cabinet and door with screws. Welding of hinges to either cabinet or door will not be acceptable.
13. Drawer Assemblies: Drawer bodies shall be made in one-piece construction including the bottom, two sides, back and front. They shall be fully coved at

interior bottom on all four sides for easy cleaning. The top front of the inner drawer body shall be offset to interlock with the channel formation in drawer head providing a 3/4" thick drawer head.(Choose One)

14. Knee space panels, where shown or specified, shall be 20 gauge, finished same as casework cabinets, and easily removable for access to mechanical service areas.

G. Special Purpose Storage Cabinets:

1. Acid Storage Fume Hood Cabinets: Acid storage fume hood cabinets shall utilize the same gauges of steel and construction features as other base cabinets except they shall be completely lined with a one piece polyethylene corrosion resistant liner. The liner shall be 1/4" thick, molded into a seamless tub, including top, sides and bottom, with a 1" lip at the bottom front to contain spills. Tubs shall include integral cleats at both ends and back to support an optional shelf. Each door shall have a set of louvers at the top and bottom, and have a 1/8" sheet polyethylene liner. Where specified, each cabinet shall be vented into the fume hood with a 1-1/2" vent pipe allowing a positive airflow directly into the fume hood exhaust system. When specified or shown on drawings, cabinet shall include a full-depth phenolic resin.
2. Solvent Storage Cabinets: Solvent storage cabinets shall be specifically designed for the storage of flammable and combustible liquids. Construction shall be based upon the requirements listed by UFC, OSHA and NFPA No. 30 - 1993, and cabinets shall be FM approved and labeled. The bottoms, top, sides and doors shall be fabricated of 18 gauge steel and shall be all double panel construction with a 1-1/2" air space between panels. All joints shall be welded, or screwed, to provide a rigid enclosure. The doors shall swing on full-length stainless steel piano hinges and shall be fully insulated. The doors are self-closing and synchronized so that both doors will always fully close. The right hand door is equipped with a three-point latching system that automatically engages when the doors close. Each door is equipped with a fusible-link hold-open feature that will ensure the door closes should the temperature outside the cabinet exceed 165 degrees Fahrenheit. Units 24" long have only one
3. Vacuum Pump Cabinets: Vacuum pump cabinets shall utilize the same gauges of steel and construction features as other base cabinets except they shall be provided without a bottom to allow vacuum pumps and other equipment to be rolled in and out of the cabinet. The interior of the cabinet shall be lined with a 1 inch thick neoprene foam for sound deadening and easy cleaning. Each cabinet shall be furnished with a 120 VAC, 20 amp, duplex receptacle mounted on the inside cabinet back and a pilot lighted toggle switch mounted in the top front panel. Each cabinet shall be furnished with a 1 1/2" diameter PVC vent pipe in the back for venting or access to the fume hood above. The toe kick shall be attached to the doors and shall allow total access to the front of the cabinet. Internal wiring from the switch and pilot light to the receptacle shall not be furnished unless otherwise specified.

H. Upper Cabinet Construction:

1. Upper cabinets shall have a completely finished interior same as exterior and shall be designed so that no mounting hardware is visible when installed.
2. End uprights shall be formed at front, bottom and back to provide maximum strength and rigidity. Front edge of end upright shall be 3/4" wide. A pilaster shall be added to the inside front of the upright for cabinet and hinge reinforcement

- and shall be perforated for hinge
3. Cabinet tops shall be formed with a 7/8" high C formation at the front edge and turned down at the back to engage a wall hanging rail.
 4. Cabinet flush bottoms shall be formed with a 7/8" high C formation at the front edge.
 5. Cabinet false bottoms shall be formed down on all four edges and shall be removable.
 6. Cabinet backs shall be welded to the top, bottom and ends. Backs shall be perforated for shelf adjustment holes. Holes shall be enclosed by end uprights.
 7. Adjustable shelves shall be formed down 3/4", returned back 7/8" and up 1/4" into a channel formation front and rear, formed down 3/4" at each end. Shelves over 42" long shall be further reinforced with a channel formation welded to underside of shelf. Shelves shall be adjustable on not more than 1" increments.
 8. Each adjustable shelf shall include a lip that extends 1/2" above the front edge.
 9. Glazed doors shall be 3/4" thick and consist of an inner and outer door pan welded together to form a single unit. Outer door pan shall be 18 gauge steel, formed into a channel or flanged shape at all four sides. It shall be pierced and formed to create a 3" wide frame with a beveled edge around the glass opening in the center of the door. Inner door pan shall be 18 gauge steel, flanged at all four sides, and pierced for a glass opening in center of the door. Glass shall be held in place by a rubber or vinyl gasket around the entire edge of the glass. Doors shall be glazed with 1/4" safety glass.
 - a. 1/8" float glass
 - b. 1/8" tempered glass
 10. Doors shall be glazed with
 11. Solid panel doors shall consist of an inner and outer door pan. Outer door pan shall be formed into a channel or flanged shape at all four sides. The corners on the pull side of the outer door pan shall be welded and ground smooth to prevent exposure of sharp edges of steel at these critical points. Inner door pan shall be flanged at all four sides with hinge reinforcements welded in place. The door assembly shall be 3/4" thick and contains sound deadening material.
 12. Sliding doors shall be suspended from the top in a roll formed steel track fastened to the cabinet top and shall glide on nylon rollers. Track shall be so designed to prevent accidental removal of doors.
 13. Swinging doors under 36" high shall be hung on one pair of hinges, doors over 36" high shall be hung on three hinges.
 14. Plate glass doors shall operate on an extruded aluminum track at the bottom of the cabinet, and in an extruded aluminum channel at the top. The bottom of each glass door shall be furnished with a continuous aluminum shoe the full length of the door, which shall be equipped with two nylon rollers that operate on the extruded aluminum track. The aluminum shoes on the bottom of the plate glass doors shall be equipped with pulls for operation of the doors, and also to prevent bypassing of the doors. Plate glass doors shall close against rubber bumpers. Plate glass doors shall be 1/4" safety glass.

I. Steel Full Height Cabinet Construction:

1. Full height storage cabinets shall have a completely finished interior same as exterior.
2. End uprights shall be formed at front, bottom and back to provide maximum strength and rigidity. Front fascia of upright shall be 1-1/4" wide with inside edge

formed in a channel 1/2" x 3/8". A full height box reinforcement shall be fitted to the channel, formed to provide a recessed strike for door and to reinforce the cabinet. The backside of the reinforcement shall be perforated with shelf adjustment holes spaced at not more than 1" centers. Back of upright shall be formed in a 2-1/2" formation. 16 gauge hinge reinforcement shall be welded to inner side of front uprights.

3. Cabinet tops shall be formed into a channel shape at front with flange at rear and sides for electro-welding cabinet top to cabinet back and ends. Front fascia channel shall be strengthened with electro-weld reinforcements.
4. Cabinet bottoms for storage cabinets shall be formed down on sides and back to create a square edge transition welded to cabinet end panels, and front edge shall be offset to create a seamless door recess rabbet for dust stop. Cabinet bottoms shall be formed to provide a flush 1" face rail with a return flange to give a 9/16" deep x 5" high toe space. All cabinets shall have a cleanable smooth interior.
5. Toe space rails shall interlock in back of bottom rail and with end panel to provide a welding plate, and shall extend to the floor with a flange turned back and up for support.
6. Cabinet backs shall be welded to the top, bottom and ends. Backs shall be perforated for shelf adjustment holes on not more than 1" centers. Holes shall be enclosed by a formation in cabinet back and enclosed by end uprights.
7. Adjustable shelves shall be formed down 3/4", returned back 7/8" and up 1/4" into a channel formation front and rear; formed down 3/4" at each end. Shelves over 42" long shall be further reinforced with a channel formation electro-welded to underside of shelf. Shelves shall be adjustable on not more than 1" increments.
8. Each adjustable shelf shall include a lip that extends 1/2" about the front edge.
9. Glazed doors shall be 3/4" thick and consist of an inner and outer door pan welded together to form a single unit. Outer door pan shall be 18 gauge steel, formed into a channel or flanged shape at all four sides. It shall be pierced and formed to create a 3" wide frame with a beveled edge around the glass opening in the center of the door. Inner door pan shall be 18 gauge steel, flanged at all four sides, and pierced for a glass opening in center of the door. Glass shall be held in place by a rubber or vinyl gasket around the entire edge of the glass. Doors shall be glazed with 1/4 inch safety glass.
10. Solid panel doors shall consist of inner and outer pan formations mechanically assembled
11. Sliding doors shall be suspended from the top in a roll formed steel track welded to cabinet top and shall glide on nylon rollers. Track shall be so designed to prevent accidental removal of doors.
12. Swinging doors under 36" high shall be hung on one pair of hinges, doors over 36" high shall be hung on three hinges.

J. Apron and Leg Assembly Construction:

1. In general, freestanding tables and/or apron and leg assemblies consist of welded leg assemblies connected to aprons by mechanical fasteners.
2. Table apron rails shall be formed of 16-gauge steel. The rails shall be 4" high, formed top and bottom into a channel formation. Where drawers occur, the apron rails shall provide the required opening.
3. Table legs shall be 2" square welded tubing. Securely welded to bottom end shall be a 14- gauge die formed gusset with four flanges. A threaded clinch nut shall

- accommodate a 3/8" 16 x 2-1/2" long leveling bolt. Leg shoes shall be provided on all table legs, unless otherwise specified, to conceal leveling bolts. Use of leg shoe which does not conceal leveling device will not be acceptable.
4. Stretchers shall be constructed of 18-gauge steel and furnished where indicated on drawings. They shall be formed into a 2-7/64" x 1-1/2" channel formation, and secured to table legs by a die-formed clip of 16-gauge steel. Clips shall be welded at ends of channel.

2.5 COUNTERTOPS

- A. General: Provide laboratory countertops with integral sink as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Epoxy: Factory-molded, modified epoxy-resin formulation with smooth, nonspecular finish.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kemresin Aas listed in the drawings or an approved comparable product.
 - a. American Epoxy Scientific LLC
 - b. Durcon; a Wilsonart Company
 - c. Prime Industries, Inc
 2. Physical Properties:
 - a. Flexural Strength: Not less than **10,000 psi**.
 - b. Modulus of Elasticity: Not less than **2,000,000 psi**.
 - c. Hardness (Rockwell M): Not less than 100.
 - d. Water Absorption (24 Hours): Not more than 0.02 percent.
 - e. Heat Distortion Point: Not less than **260 deg F**.
 3. Chemical Resistance: Minimum acceptable chemical-resistance performance is to result in no more than four Level 3 conditions when tested with indicated reagents in accordance with SEFA 3.
 4. Color: Reference Finish Legend in drawing documents.

2.6 WOOD FINISH

- A. Preparation: Sand lumber and plywood before assembling. Sand edges of doors, drawer fronts, and molded shapes with profile-edge sander. Sand after assembling for uniform smoothness at least equivalent to that produced by 220-grit sanding and without machine marks, cross sanding, or other surface blemishes.
- B. Staining: Remove fibers and dust and apply stain to exposed and semiexposed surfaces as necessary to match approved Samples. Apply stain to produce a consistent appearance. Apply wash-coat sealer before applying stain to closed-grain wood species.
- C. Chemical-Resistant Finish: Apply laboratory casework manufacturer's standard three-coat, chemical-resistant, transparent finish. Sand and wipe clean between coats. Topcoat(s) may be omitted on concealed surfaces.
 1. Chemical and Physical Resistance of Finish System: Finish complies with acceptance levels of cabinet surface finish tests in SEFA 8 M. Acceptance level for chemical spot test is to be no more than for Level 3 conditions.

2.7 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Countertops, General: Provide units with smooth surfaces in uniform plane, free of defects. Make exposed edges and corners straight and uniformly beveled. Provide front and end overhang of **1 inch**.
- B. Sinks, General: Provide sizes indicated or laboratory casework manufacturer's closest standard size of equal or greater volume, as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Outlets: Provide with strainers and tailpieces, **NPS 1-1/2**, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Overflows: For each sink except cup sinks, provide overflow of standard beehive or open-top design with separate strainer. Height **2 inches** less than sink depth. Provide in same material as strainer.
- C. Epoxy:
 - 1. Countertops: Fabricate with factory cutouts for sinks, holes for service fittings and accessories, and butt joints assembled with epoxy adhesive and concealed metal splines.
 - a. Marine-Edge Configuration: **1-inch** minimum thickness, with integral or applied raised edge.
 - 1) Edges and Corners: Beveled.
 - 2) Backsplash: Applied.
 - b. Construction: Uniform throughout full thickness.
 - 2. Sinks: Molded in one piece with smooth surfaces, coved corners, and bottom sloped to outlet; **1/2-inch** minimum thickness.
 - a. Provide with polypropylene strainers and tailpieces.
 - b. Provide integral sinks in epoxy countertops, bonded to countertops with invisible joint line.

2.8 LABORATORY ACCESSORIES

- A. Reagent Shelves: Provide as indicated, fabricated from same material as adjacent countertop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Burette Rods: Aluminum or stainless steel rods, **1/2 inch** in diameter and **18 inches** long, threaded on one end to fit tapered plug adapter for flush socket receptacle. Provide with tapered plug adapter and receptacle.
- C. Upright Rod Assembly and Metal Crossbar: Aluminum or stainless steel. Two vertical rods and one horizontal crossbar, **3/4 inch** in diameter and **36 inches** long unless otherwise indicated; two flush socket receptacles and two crossbar clamps. Ends of vertical rods are tapered to fit receptacles; other rod ends are rounded.
- D. Greenlaw Arm Assembly: Aluminum or stainless steel vertical rod, tapered on one end to fit flush socket receptacle. Adjustable crossbar of hardwood with black, acid-resistant finish, secured to upright with adjustable clamp. Provide with receptacle.
- E. Lattice Assembly: Aluminum or stainless steel, vertical and horizontal rod lattice assembly with **3/4-inch-** diameter rods at approximately **12 inches** o.c. with two flush socket receptacles for mounting.
- F. Plastic or Resin Pegboards: Polypropylene, epoxy, or phenolic-composite pegboards

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

123553.13 - 12

with removable polypropylene pegs and stainless steel drip troughs with drain outlet.

- G. Stainless steel Pegboards: Stainless steel pegboards with removable polypropylene pegs and stainless steel drip troughs with drain outlet.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CABINETS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2. Install level, plumb, and true in line; shim as required using concealed shims. Where laboratory casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical. Do not exceed the following tolerances:
 - 1. Variation of Tops of Base Cabinets from Level: **1/16 inch in 10 feet.**
 - 2. Variation of Bottoms of Upper Cabinets from Level: **1/8 inch in 10 feet.**
 - 3. Variation of Faces of Casework from a True Plane: **1/8 inch in 10 feet.**
 - 4. Variation of Adjacent Surfaces from a True Plane (Lippage): **1/32 inch.**
 - 5. Variation in Alignment of Adjacent Door and Drawer Edges: **1/16 inch.**
- B. Utility-Space Framing: Secure to floor with two fasteners at each frame. Fasten to partition framing, wood blocking, or metal reinforcements in partitions and to base cabinets.
- C. Base Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to utility-space framing, partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions, with fasteners spaced not more than **16 inches** o.c. Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform.
 - 1. Where base cabinets are installed away from walls, fasten to floor at toe space at not more than **24 inches** o.c. and at sides of cabinets with not less than two fasteners per side.
- D. Wall Cabinets: Fasten to hanging strips, masonry, partition framing, blocking, or reinforcements in partitions. Fasten each cabinet through back, near top, at not less than **16 inches** o.c.
- E. Install hardware uniformly and precisely.
- F. Adjust operating hardware so doors and drawers align and operate smoothly without warp or bind and contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF COUNTERTOPS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2. Abut top and edge surfaces true in plane with flush hairline joints and with internal supports placed to prevent deflection.

Locate joints where indicated on Shop Drawings.

- B. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in same manner as shop-made joints, using dowels, splines, fasteners, adhesives, and sealants recommended by manufacturer. Shop prepare edges for field-made joints.
- C. Fastening:
 - 1. Secure countertops, except for epoxy countertops, to cabinets with Z-type fasteners or equivalent, using two or more fasteners at each cabinet front, end, and back.
 - 2. Secure epoxy countertops to cabinets with epoxy cement, applied at each corner and along perimeter edges at not more than **48 inches** o.c.
 - 3. Where necessary to penetrate countertops with fasteners, countersink heads approximately **1/8 inch** and plug hole flush with material equal to countertop in chemical resistance, hardness, and appearance.
- D. Provide holes and cutouts required for service fittings.
- E. Seal unfinished edges and cutouts in plastic-laminate countertops with heavy coat of polyurethane varnish.
- F. Provide scribe moldings for closures at junctures of countertop, curb, and splash with walls as recommended by manufacturer for materials involved. Match materials and finish to adjacent laboratory casework. Use chemical-resistant, permanently elastic sealing compound where recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SINKS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2.
- B. Drop-in Installation of Epoxy Sinks: Rout groove in countertop to receive sink rim if not shop prepared. Set sink in adhesive and fill remainder of groove with sealant or adhesive. Use procedures and products recommended by sink and countertop manufacturers. Remove excess adhesive and sealant while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.
- C. Underside Installation of Epoxy Sinks: Use laboratory casework manufacturer's recommended adjustable support system for table- and cabinet-type installations. Set top edge of sink unit in sink and countertop manufacturers' recommended chemical-resistant sealing compound or adhesive, and firmly secure to produce a tight and fully leakproof joint. Adjust sink and securely support to prevent movement. Remove excess sealant or adhesive while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.
- D. Semiflush Installation of Stainless Steel Sinks: Before setting, apply sink and countertop manufacturers' recommended sealant under rim lip and along top. Remove excess sealant while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.
- E. Installation of Epoxy and Polypropylene Cup Sinks:
 - 1. Drop-in Installation: Rout groove in countertop to receive sink rim if not shop prepared. Set sink in adhesive and fill remainder of groove with sealant or adhesive. Use procedures and products recommended by sink and countertop manufacturers. Remove excess adhesive and sealant while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.

2. Surface Installation: Set sink in sealant or adhesive. Use procedures and products recommended by sink and countertop manufacturers. Remove excess sealant or adhesive while still wet and finish joint for neat appearance.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF LABORATORY ACCESSORIES

- A. Install accessories in accordance with Shop Drawings, installation requirements in SEFA 2, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Securely fasten adjustable shelving supports, stainless steel shelves, and pegboards to partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions.
- C. Install shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves. Install shelving level and straight, closely fitted to other work where indicated.
- D. Securely fasten pegboards to partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Comply with requirements in other Sections for installing water and laboratory gas service fittings and electrical devices.
- B. Install fittings in accordance with Shop Drawings, installation requirements in SEFA 2, and manufacturer's written instructions. Set bases and flanges of sink- and countertop-mounted fittings in sealant recommended by manufacturer of sink or countertop material. Securely anchor fittings to laboratory casework unless otherwise indicated.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean finished surfaces, touchup as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish.
- B. Clean worksurfaces and leave them free of all grease and streaks.
- C. Provide reasonable protective measures to prevent casework and equipment from being exposed to other construction activity.
- D. Protect countertop surfaces during construction with **6-mil** plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of **24 inches** o.c.
- E. Advise owner and/or his representative of procedures and precautions for protection of material, installed laboratory casework and fixtures from damage by work of other trades.

END OF SECTION 123553.13

SECTION 123661
SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid surface material countertops.
 - 2. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
 - 3. Accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of countertop material.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Plans, sections, details, edge and backsplash profiles, and attachment to other work.
 - 2. Locations and details of joints.
 - 3. Locations, quantity, and type of supports/brackets.
 - 4. Direction of directional pattern, if any.
 - 5. Locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in countertop.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Countertop material, **6 inches** square.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Indicate locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in countertops or backsplashes.
- B. Qualification Statements: For fabricator.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include product data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.
- B. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
- C. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work..

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with ANSI/AWI 1236 for grades of simulated stone countertops indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

2.2 SOLID SURFACE MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

- A. Solid Surface Countertop Type :
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous fabrication of mineral fillers and pigments bound together with a matrix of polymers and resins, complying with ISFA 2-01.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product listing in the drawings or an approved comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces; a Brand of Aristech Surfaces LLC
 - b. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
 - c. Formica Corporation
 - d. LG Hausys, Ltd.
 - e. Wilsonart LLC
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: Match Architect's samples.
 - 3. Countertop:
 - a. Thickness:
 - 1) **1/2-inch-** thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
 - b. Exposed Edge Treatment: square with eased edges.

- c. Backsplash: Detached straight.
 - 1) Height: 4 inches in restrooms.
 - 2) Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 3) Ceramic porcelain tile in breakroom and workroom.
- d. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- 4. Sink Bowls:
 - a. Separate unit for under-counter mounting.
 - b. Material: reference MEP.

2.3 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate Countertop Type :
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Quartz Agglomerate Material: Homogenous fabrication of natural quartz aggregates and pigments bound together with a matrix of polymers and resins, complying with ISFA 3-01.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. DuPont; DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
 - b. Wilsonart LLC
 - c. Insert Manufacturers Name

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Grommets:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
 - b. Hafele America Co.
 - c. W.W. Grainger, Inc.
 - d. Fry - reglet
- B. Support Brackets:
 - 1. Countertop SDSF:
 - a. Type: Hidden.
 - b. Style: as noted in the drawing documents
 - c. Material: Steel.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication,

and finishing.

1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.

C. Joints:

1. Fabricate countertops without joints.
2. Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
 - a. Joint Locations: Not within **18 inches** of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than **36 inches** long would result, unless unavoidable.
 - b. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.
 - c. Include joint location on shop drawings./

D. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting **3/16 inch** into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for grommets, plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

2.6 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- B. Adhesive: Product recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW23-01-01

06/06/2025

123661 - 4

installation areas.

- B. Examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SIMULATED STONE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with specified grade.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 - 1. Provide cutouts not finished in the shop. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
- C. Countertop Installation:
 - 1. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - 2. Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
 - 3. Anchor wall cleating necessary for proper setting for countertops not supported by casework.
 - 4. Install countertops level to a tolerance of **1/16 inch in 8 ft., 1/4 inch** maximum. Do not exceed **1/64-inch** difference between planes of adjacent units.
 - 5. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
 - 6. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
 - 7. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
 - 8. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - a. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 - b. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
 - 9. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - 10. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by

- manufacturer.
11. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace countertops. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.
- C. Protection: Provide Kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of **48 inches** o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 123661

**SECTION 133419
METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal building systems.
 - 2. Structural-steel framing.
 - 3. Metal roof panels.
 - 4. Metal wall panels.
 - 5. Metal soffit panels.
 - 6. Thermal insulation.
 - 7. Accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 03 concrete Sections for anchor rod installation, concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements.
 - 2. Section 077253 "Snow Guards" for devices designed to hold snow on the roof surface.
 - 3. Section 083613 "Sectional Doors" for sectional vehicular doors in metal building systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology Standard: See MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in standards referenced by this Section.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-rod inserts into foundation walls and footings. Anchor rod installation, concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03 concrete Sections.
- B. Coordinate imposed load of HVAC and Panel Folding Doors specified in other Sections with structural performance requirements specified in this Section.
- C. Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: By manufacturer of metal building systems. Indicate components by others. Include full building plan, elevations, sections, details, and the following:
1. Anchor-Rod Plans: Submit anchor-rod plans and templates before foundation work begins. Include location, diameter, and minimum required projection of anchor rods required to attach metal building to foundation. Indicate column reactions at each location.
 2. Structural-Framing Drawings: Indicate complete fabrication of primary and secondary framing; include provisions for openings. Indicate welds and bolted connections, distinguishing between shop and field applications. Include transverse cross-sections.
 - a. Indicate provisions for attaching roof curbs.
 3. Metal Panel Layout Drawings: Indicate roof and wall layouts of panels including methods of support. Include details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, clip spacing, trim, flashings, closures, and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work; indicate locations of exposed fasteners.
 - a. Indicate roof-mounted items including roof hatches, equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, lighting fixtures, and items mounted on roof curbs.
 - b. Indicate wall-mounted items including personnel doors, vehicular doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
 4. Accessory Drawings: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than **1-1/2 inches per 12 inches**:
 - a. Flashing and trim.
 - b. Gutters.
 - c. Downspouts.
 - d. Service walkways.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors for each type of exposed finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish.
1. Panels: Manufacturers' standard size. Include fasteners, closures, and other exposed panel accessories.
- E. Delegated Design Submittals: For metal building systems including anchor bolts, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Letter of Design Certification: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Include the following:
1. Name and location of Project.
 2. Order number.
 3. Name of manufacturer.
 4. Name of Contractor.

5. Building dimensions including width, length, height, and roof slope.
 6. Indicate compliance with AISC standards for hot-rolled steel and AISI standards for cold-rolled steel, including edition dates of each standard.
 7. Governing building code and year of edition.
 8. Design Loads: Include dead load, roof live load, collateral loads, roof snow load, deflection, wind loads/speeds and exposure, seismic design category or effective peak velocity-related acceleration/peak acceleration, and auxiliary loads (cranes).
 9. Load Combinations: Indicate that loads were applied acting simultaneously with concentrated loads, in accordance with governing building code.
 10. Building-Use Category: Indicate category of building use and its effect on load importance factors.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each of the following products, by a qualified testing agency:
1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 3. Tension-control, high-strength, and bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 4. Shop primers.
 5. Nonshrink grout.
- D. Source quality control reports.
- E. Field quality control reports.
- F. Qualification Statements: For manufacturer and erector.
- G. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: For metal building system.
- H. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panel finishes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
1. Accreditation: Manufacturer's facility accredited in accordance with IAS AC472.
 2. Engineering Responsibility: Metal building system design and preparation of comprehensive engineering analysis and Shop Drawings by a professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
- B. Delegated Design Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
- C. Erector Qualifications: An experienced erector who specializes in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
 SW23-01-01
 06/06/2025
 133419 - 3

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with panel installation only when weather conditions permit metal panels to be installed in accordance with manufacturers' written installation instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Metal Panel Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Weathertightness Warranty for Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that leak or otherwise fail to remain weathertight within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain metal building system components, including primary and secondary framing and metal panel assemblies, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal building system.
- B. Structural Performance: Metal building systems to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated in accordance with procedures in MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual":
 - 1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection and Drift Limits:
 - a. Design metal building system assemblies to withstand serviceability design loads without exceeding deflections and drift limits recommended in AISC's "Design Guide No. 3: Serviceability Design Considerations for Steel Buildings."
 - b. Deflection to be no greater than the following:
 - 1) Purlins and Rafters: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
 - 2) Girts: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the span.
 - 3) Metal Roof Panels: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
 - 4) Metal Wall Panels: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the span.
 - 5) Design secondary-framing system to accommodate deflection of primary framing and construction tolerances, and to maintain clearances at openings.
 - 6) Lateral Drift: Maximum of 1/200 of the building height.
- C. Seismic Performance: Metal building system to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where assemblies are indicated to have a fire-resistance rating, provide metal panel assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E119 or ASTM E108 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL Product iQ, FM Approvals' "Approval Guide," or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- F. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Exterior wall assemblies containing foam plastics pass NFPA 285 fire test.
- G. Structural Performance for Metal Panels: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing in accordance with ASTM E1592:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Air Infiltration for Metal Roof Panels: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E1680 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- I. Air Infiltration for Metal Wall Panels: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested in accordance with ASTM E283/E283M at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- J. Water Penetration for Metal Roof Panels: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- K. Water Penetration for Metal Wall Panels: No water penetration when tested in accordance with ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- L. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
 1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- M. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Approvals' "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.
 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A- 90.
 2. Hail Resistance: SH.
- N. Thermal Performance for Opaque Elements: Provide the following maximum U-factors and minimum R-values when tested in accordance with ASTM C1363 or ASTM C518:
 1. Roof:
 - a. R-Value: 30.
 2. Walls:
 - a. R-Value: 19.

2.3 METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Alliance Steel, Inc
 2. Nucor Building Systems; a Nucor company
 3. Metal Building Industries
 4. Encore Steel Building Co
- B. System Description: Provide a complete, integrated set of mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior.
 1. Primary-Frame Type:
 - a. Rigid Clear Span: Solid-member, structural-framing system without interior columns.
 - b. Lean-to: Solid- or truss-member, structural-framing system, designed to be partially supported by another structure.
 2. End-Wall Framing:

- a. Manufacturer's standard, for buildings not required to be expandable, consisting of primary frame, capable of supporting one-half of a bay design load, and end-wall columns.
- 3. Secondary-Frame Type: Manufacturer's standard purlins and joists and flush-framed girts.
- 4. Eave Height: As indicated on drawings.
- 5. Bay Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- 6. Roof Slope: As indicated on Drawings..
- 7. Roof System: Manufacturer's standard standing-seam, vertical-rib, metal roof panels.
- 8. Exterior Wall System: Manufacturer's standard exposed fastener, corrugate metal wall panels.

2.4 STRUCTURAL-STEEL FRAMING

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Structural Steel: Comply with AISC 360.
- C. Bolted Connections: Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
- D. Cold-Formed Steel: Comply with AISI S100 for design requirements and allowable stresses.
- E. Primary Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary-framing system, designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Primary framing includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafters, rake, and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing.
 - 1. General: Provide frames with attachment plates, bearing plates, and splice members. Factory drill for field-bolted assembly. Provide frame span and spacing indicated.
 - a. Slight variations in span and spacing may be acceptable if necessary to comply with manufacturer's standard, as approved by Architect.
 - 2. Rigid Clear-Span Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
 - 3. Rigid Modular Frames: I-shaped frame sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Provide interior columns fabricated from round steel pipes or tubes, or shop-welded, built-up steel plates.
 - 4. Truss-Frame, Clear-Span Frames: Rafter frames fabricated from joist girders, and I-shaped column sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Interior columns are not permitted.
 - 5. Truss-Frame Modular Frames: Rafter frames fabricated from joist girders, and I-shaped column sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes. Provide interior columns fabricated from round steel pipes or tubes, or shop-welded, built-up steel plates.
- F. End-Wall Framing: Manufacturer's standard primary end-wall framing fabricated for field-bolted assembly to comply with the following:
 - 1. End-Wall and Corner Columns: I-shaped sections fabricated from structural-steel

- shapes; shop-welded, built-up steel plates; or C-shaped, cold-formed, structural-steel sheet.
2. End-Wall Rafters: C-shaped, cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; or I-shaped sections fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes.
- G. Secondary Framing: Manufacturer's standard secondary framing, including purlins, girts, eave struts, flange bracing, base members, gable angles, clips, headers, jambs, and other miscellaneous structural members. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate framing from either cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or roll-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, prepainted with coil coating, to comply with the following:
1. Purlins:
 - a. C- or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; minimum **2-1/2-inch**- wide flanges.
 2. Girts: C- or Z-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes. Form ends of Z-sections with stiffening lips angled 40 to 50 degrees from flange, with minimum **2-1/2-inch**- wide flanges.
 - a. Depth: As required to comply with system performance requirements.
 3. Eave Struts: Unequal-flange, C-shaped sections; fabricated from built-up steel plates, steel sheet, or structural-steel shapes; to provide adequate backup for metal panels.
 4. Flange Bracing: Minimum **2-by-2-by-1/8-inch** structural-steel angles or **1-inch**-diameter, cold-formed structural tubing to stiffen primary-frame flanges.
 5. Sag Bracing: Minimum **1-by-1-by-1/8-inch** structural-steel angles.
 6. Base or Sill Angles: Manufacturer's standard base angle, minimum **3-by-2-inch**, fabricated from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 7. Purlin and Girt Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips fabricated from steel sheet. Provide galvanized clips where clips are connected to galvanized framing members.
 8. Framing for Openings: Channel shapes; fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet or structural-steel shapes. Frame head and jamb of door openings and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.
 9. Miscellaneous Structural Members: Manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from cold-formed, structural-steel sheet; built-up steel plates; or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; designed to withstand required loads.
- H. Bracing: Provide adjustable wind bracing using any method as follows:
1. Rods: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade **50**; or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade **50**; minimum **1/2-inch**- diameter steel; threaded full length or threaded a minimum of **6 inches** at each end.
 2. Cable: ASTM A475, minimum **1/4-inch**- diameter, extra-high-strength grade, Class B, zinc-coated, seven-strand steel; with threaded end anchors.
 3. Angles: Fabricated from structural-steel shapes to match primary framing, of size required to withstand design loads.
 4. Rigid Portal Frames: Fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand design loads.
 5. Fixed-Base Columns: Fabricated from shop-welded, built-up steel plates or structural-steel shapes to match primary framing; of size required to withstand

- design loads.
6. Diaphragm Action of Metal Panels: Design metal building to resist wind forces through diaphragm action of metal panels.
- I. Anchor Rods: Headed anchor rods as indicated in Anchor Rod Plan for attachment of metal building to foundation.
 - J. Materials:
 1. W-Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade **50 or 55**; or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade **50 or 55**.
 2. Channels, Angles, M-Shapes, and S-Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade **50 or 55**; or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade **50 or 55**.
 3. Plate and Bar: ASTM A36/A36M; ASTM A572/A572M, Grade **50 or 55**; or ASTM A529/A529M, Grade **50 or 55**.
 4. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
 5. Structural-Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled, ASTM A1011/A1011M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades **30 through 55**, or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel (HSLAS) or High-Strength Low-Alloy Steel with Improved Formability (HSLAS-F), Grades **45 through 70**; or cold-rolled, ASTM A1008/A1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grades **25 through 80**, or HSLAS, Grades **45 through 70**.
 6. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, SS, Grades **33 through 80**, or HSLAS or HSLAS-F, Grades **50 through 80**; with **G60** coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet Prepainted with Coil Coating: Steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, SS, Grades **33 through 80**, or HSLAS or HSLAS-F, Grades **50 through 80**; with **G90** coating designation.
 - b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792/A792M, SS, Grade **50 or 80**; with Class **AZ50** coating.
 8. Joist Girders: Manufactured in accordance with "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders," in SJI's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables, and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders"; with steel-angle, top- and bottom-chord members, and end- and top-chord arrangements as indicated on Drawings and required for primary framing.
 9. Steel Joists: Manufactured in accordance with "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series," in SJI's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables, and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders"; with steel-angle, top- and bottom-chord members, and end- and top-chord arrangements as indicated on Drawings and required for secondary framing.
 10. Non-High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts; ASTM A563/A563M carbon-steel hex nuts; and ASTM F844 plain (flat) steel washers.
 - a. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM F2329, Class C.
 11. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers, Grade A325 (Grade A325M): ASTM F3125/F3125M, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563/A563M, **Grade DH**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.

- a. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM F2329, Class C.
- 12. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers, Grade A490 (Grade A490M): ASTM F3125/F3125M, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563/A563M, **Grade DH**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
- 13. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A563/A563M, **Grade DH**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - a. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B695, Class 50.
- 14. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
 - a. Configuration: Straight.
 - b. Nuts: ASTM A563/A563M, heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - c. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - d. Washers: ASTM F436/F436M, hardened carbon steel.
 - e. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM F2329, Class C.
- 15. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 36.
 - a. Configuration: Straight.
 - b. Nuts: ASTM A563/A563M, heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - c. Plate Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - d. Washers: ASTM F436/F436M, hardened carbon steel.
 - e. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM F2329, Class C.
- 16. Threaded Rods: ASTM A193/A193M.
 - a. Nuts: ASTM A563/A563M, heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - b. Washers: ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel.
 - c. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM F2329, Class C.
- K. Finish: Factory primed. Apply specified primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
 - 1. Clean and prepare in accordance with SSPC-SP2.
 - 2. Coat with manufacturer's standard primer. Apply primer to primary and secondary framing to a minimum dry film thickness of **1 mil**.
 - a. Prime secondary framing formed from uncoated steel sheet to a minimum dry film thickness of **0.5 mil** on each side.

2.5 METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. Standing-Seam, Vertical-Rib, Metal Roof Panels : Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels.
 - 1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.030-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

- a. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 2. Clips: to accommodate thermal movement.
 - 3. Joint Type: Mechanically seamed.
 - 4. Panel Coverage: 18 inches.
 - 5. Panel Height: 2-3/8 inches.
 - 6. Basis of Design: Berridge Tee Lock Panel
- B. Finishes:
- 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

2.6 METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Exposed-Fastener, Tapered-Rib, Metal Wall Panels : Formed with alternating curved ribs, corrugated ; designed to be installed by lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching panels to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps.
- 1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.030-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Exterior Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymerKynar 500.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 1) Color Selection between Gridlines 8 and 9: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's premium or metallic range.
 - 2. Major-Rib Spacing: **12 inches** o.c.
 - 3. Panel Coverage: 34.6667 inches.
 - 4. Panel Height: .875 inches.
 - 5. Basis of Design: Berridge S-Deck Exposed Fastener Panel
- B. Finishes:
- 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

2.7 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Concealed-Fastener, Flush-Profile, Metal Soffit Panels : Formed with vertical panel edges and flush surface; with flush joint between panels; with **1-inch-** wide flange for

attaching interior finish; designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps.

1. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.024-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
 - a. Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Panel Coverage: **12 inches**.
3. Panel Height: **1.5 inches**.
4. Basis of Design: Berridge FW-12 Panel

2.8 THERMAL INSULATION

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Thermal Design, Inc.; Simple Saver System or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN
 2. DuPont
 3. Thermal Design, Inc.
 4. Or approved equal
- B. Faced Metal Building Insulation: ASTM C991, Type II, glass-fiber-blanket insulation; **0.5-lb/cu. ft.** density; **2-inch-** wide, continuous, vapor-tight edge tabs; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less.
- C. Retainer Strips: For securing insulation between supports, **0.025-inch** nominal-thickness, formed, metallic-coated steel or PVC retainer clips colored to match insulation facing.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide accessories as standard with metal building system manufacturer and as specified. Fabricate and finish accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- B. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same material as metal roof panels.
 2. Clips: Manufacturer's standard, formed from steel sheet, designed to withstand negative-load requirements.

3. Cleats: Manufacturer's standard, mechanically seamed cleats formed from steel sheet.
 4. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 5. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
 6. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal panels attach directly to purlins, provide thermal spacer blocks of thickness required to provide **1-inch** standoff; fabricated from extruded polystyrene.
- C. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same material as metal wall panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- D. Flashing and Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.018-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match adjacent metal panels.
1. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
- E. Gutters: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.018-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match roof fascia and rake trim. Match profile of gable trim, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch** long sections, sized in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Gutter Supports: Fabricated from same material and finish as gutters.
 2. Strainers: Bronze, copper, or aluminum wire ball type at outlets.
- F. Downspouts: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.018-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match metal wall panels. Fabricate in minimum **10-ft.** long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets.
1. Mounting Straps: Fabricated from same material and finish as gutters.
- G. Roof Curbs: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, **0.048-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness prepainted with coil coating; finished to match metal roof panels; with welded top box and bottom skirt, and integral full-length cricket; capable of withstanding loads of size and height indicated.
1. Curb Subframing: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel

sheet, **0.060-inch** nominal uncoated steel thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped metallic-coated steel sheet.

2. Insulation: **1-inch-** thick, rigid type.

H. Materials:

1. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide fasteners with heads matching color of materials being fastened by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
2. Fasteners for Metal Roof Panels:
 - a. Self-drilling or self-tapping, zinc-plated, hex-head carbon-steel screws, with a stainless steel cap or zinc-aluminum-alloy head and EPDM sealing washer.
 - b. Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless steel or zinc-alloy-steel hex washer head, with EPDM washer under heads of fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
3. Fasteners for Metal Wall Panels:
 - a. Self-drilling or self-tapping, zinc-plated, hex-head carbon-steel screws.
4. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws with hex washer head.
5. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets.
6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for **15-mil** dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
7. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
8. Metal Panel Sealants:
 - a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene-compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape of manufacturer's standard size.
 - b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; one part elastomeric polyurethane or polysulfide; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended by metal building system manufacturer.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. General: Design components and field connections required for erection to permit easy assembly.
 1. Mark each piece and part of the assembly to correspond with previously prepared erection drawings, diagrams, and instruction manuals.
 2. Fabricate structural framing to produce clean, smooth cuts and bends. Punch holes of proper size, shape, and location. Members to be free of cracks, tears, and ruptures.
- B. Tolerances: Comply with MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for fabrication and

erection tolerances.

- C. Primary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field assembly.
 - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using high-strength bolts.
 - 2. Join flanges to webs of built-up members by a continuous, submerged arc-welding process.
 - 3. Brace compression flange of primary framing with steel angles or cold-formed structural tubing between frame web and purlin web or girt web, so flange compressive strength is within allowable limits for any combination of loadings.
 - 4. Weld clips to frames for attaching secondary framing if applicable, or punch for bolts.
 - 5. Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces for shop priming in accordance with SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime primary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
- D. Secondary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section by roll forming or break forming, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.
 - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using non-high-strength bolts.
 - 2. Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated surfaces for shop priming in accordance with SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime uncoated secondary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
- E. Metal Panels: Fabricate and finish metal panels at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
 - 1. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of metal panel.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspection: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform source quality control inspections and to submit reports.
 - 1. Accredited Manufacturers: Special inspections will not be required if fabrication is performed by an IAS AC472-accredited manufacturer approved by authorities having jurisdiction to perform such Work without special inspection.
 - a. After fabrication, submit copy of certificate of compliance to authorities having jurisdiction, certifying that Work was performed in accordance with Contract requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with erector present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of

the Work.

- B. Before erection proceeds, survey elevations and locations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments to receive structural framing, with erector present, for compliance with requirements and metal building system manufacturer's tolerances.
 - 1. Engage land surveyor to perform surveying.
- C. Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition.
- B. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

- A. Erect metal building system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and erection drawings.
- B. Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer.
- C. Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated, in accordance with AISC specifications referenced in this Section. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.
- D. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
 - 3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- E. Align and adjust structural framing before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with framing. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure will be completed and in service.
- F. Primary Framing and End Walls: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to

line. Level baseplates to a true even plane with full bearing to supporting structures, set with double-nutted anchor bolts. Use grout to obtain uniform bearing and to maintain a level base-line elevation. Moist-cure grout for not less than seven days after placement.

1. Make field connections using high-strength bolts installed in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt type and joint type specified.
 - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened or pretensioned as required by manufacturer.
- G. Secondary Framing: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Field bolt secondary framing to clips attached to primary framing.
 1. Provide rake or gable purlins with tight-fitting closure channels and fasciae.
 2. Locate and space wall girts to suit openings such as doors and windows.
 3. Provide supplemental framing at entire perimeter of openings, including doors, windows, louvers, ventilators, and other penetrations of roof and walls.
- H. Steel Joists and Joist Girders: Install joists, girders, and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction in accordance with SJI's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables, and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
 4. Joint Installation:
 - a. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts unless otherwise indicated. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
 - c. Weld joist seats to supporting steel framework.
 5. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.
- I. Bracing: Install bracing in roof and sidewalls where indicated on erection drawings.
 1. Tighten rod and cable bracing to avoid sag.
 2. Locate interior end-bay bracing only where indicated.
- J. Framing for Openings: Provide shapes of proper design and size to reinforce openings and to carry loads and vibrations imposed, including equipment furnished under mechanical and electrical work. Securely attach to structural framing.
- K. Erection Tolerances: Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing within AISC 303.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF METAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate in accordance with equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Examination: Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that structural-panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by manufacturer.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels, to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seams before metal panel installation.
- D. General: Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Field cut metal panels as required for doors, windows, and other openings. Cut openings as small as possible, neatly to size required, and without damage to adjacent metal panel finishes.
 - a. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted unless approved in writing by manufacturer.
 - 2. Install metal panels perpendicular to structural supports unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures at perimeter of openings and similar elements. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Locate metal panel splices over structural supports with end laps in alignment.
 - 6. Lap metal flashing over metal panels to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Install screw fasteners using power tools with controlled torque adjusted to compress EPDM washers tightly without damage to washers, screw threads, or metal panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
 - 1. Arrange and nest side-lap joints so prevailing winds blow over, not into, lapped joints. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply metal panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated; or, if not indicated, provide types used in tested

assemblies meeting "Performance Requirements" Article.

1. Seal metal panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant the full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. General: Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
 1. Install ridge caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
 2. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves and rakes. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
- B. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint, at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Install clips to supports with self-drilling or self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
 4. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved motorized seamer tool so that clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
 5. Rigidly fasten eave end of metal roof panels and allow ridge end free movement for thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels for fasteners.
 6. Provide metal closures at peaks rake edges rake walls and each side of ridge and hip caps.
- C. Lap-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with exposed fasteners at each lapped joint, at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Provide metal-backed sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal roof panels.
 2. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal roof panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 3. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps and on side laps of nesting-type metal panels, on side laps of ribbed or fluted metal panels, and elsewhere as needed to make metal panels weatherproof to driving rains.
 4. At metal panel splices, nest panels with minimum **6-inch** end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- D. Metal Fascia Panels: Align bottom of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-drilling or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.
- E. Metal Roof Panel Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panels within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 ft.** on slope and location lines and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Install metal wall panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts, extending full height of building, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, begin metal panel installation at corners with center of rib lined up with line of framing.
 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
 3. When two rows of metal panels are required, lap panels **4 inches** minimum.
 4. When building height requires two rows of metal panels at gable ends, align lap of gable panels over metal wall panels at eave height.
 5. Rigidly fasten base end of metal wall panels and allow eave end free movement for thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels.
 6. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at eaves and rakes, and at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
 7. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 8. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
 9. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated on Drawings; if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 10. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-drilling or self-tapping screws.
 11. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Metal Wall Panels: Install metal wall panels on exterior side of girts. Attach metal wall panels to supports with fasteners as recommended by manufacturer using sealants and gaskets as required for a watertight installation.
- C. Insulated Metal Wall Panels: Install insulated metal wall panels on exterior side of girts. Attach panels to supports at each panel joint using concealed clip and fasteners at maximum **42 inches** o.c., spaced not more than manufacturer's written instruction. Fully engage tongue and groove of adjacent insulated metal wall panels.
1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated metal wall panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels as weather seal.
- D. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal wall panels within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, noncumulative; level, plumb, and on location lines; and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF THERMAL INSULATION

- A. General: Install insulation concurrently with metal panel installation, in thickness indicated to cover entire surface, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder toward warm side of construction unless otherwise indicated. Do not obstruct ventilation spaces except for firestopping.

2. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to the surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
 3. Install factory-laminated, vapor-retarder-faced blankets straight and true in one-piece lengths, with both sets of facing tabs sealed, to provide a complete vapor retarder.
- B. Blanket Roof Insulation: Comply with the following installation method:
1. Over-Framing Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing. Hold in place by metal roof panels fastened to secondary framing.
 2. Between-Purlin Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder between purlins. Carry vapor-retarder-facing tabs up and over purlin, overlapping adjoining facing of next insulation course and maintaining continuity of retarder. Hold in place with bands and crossbands below insulation.
 3. Over-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing. Install layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space formed by metal roof panel standoffs. Hold in place by panels fastened to standoffs.
 - a. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal roof panels attach directly to purlins, install thermal spacer blocks.
 4. Two-Layers-between-Purlin-with-Spacer-Block Installation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder between purlins. Carry vapor-retarder-facing tabs up and over purlin, overlapping adjoining facing of next insulation course and maintaining continuity of retarder. Install layer of filler insulation over first layer to fill space between purlins formed by thermal spacer blocks. Hold in place with bands and crossbands below insulation.
 - a. Thermal Spacer Blocks: Where metal roof panels attach directly to purlins, install thermal spacer blocks.
 5. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.
- C. Blanket Wall Insulation: Extend insulation and vapor retarder over and perpendicular to top flange of secondary framing. Hold in place by metal wall panels fastened to secondary framing.
1. Retainer Strips: Install retainer strips at each longitudinal insulation joint, straight and taut, nesting with secondary framing to hold insulation in place.
 2. Sound-Absorption Insulation: Where sound-absorption requirement is indicated for metal liner panels, cover insulation with polyethylene film and provide inserts of wire mesh to form acoustical spacer grid.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly, including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.

2. Install components for a complete metal wall panel assembly, including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
 3. Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements and manufacturer's written installation instructions. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 ft.** with no joints allowed within **24 inches** of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- C. Gutters: Join sections with riveted-and-soldered or lapped-and-sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced as required for gutter size, but not more than **36 inches** o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- D. Downspouts: Join sections with **1-1/2-inch** telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely **1 inch** away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches** o.c. in between.
1. Tie downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- E. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- F. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to panel as recommended by manufacturer.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform field quality control special inspections and to submit reports.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Doors: After completing installation, test and adjust doors to operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.

3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- C. Touchup Painting:
 - 1. After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing, bearing plates, and accessories.
 - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 or SSPC-SP 3.
 - b. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- D. Metal Panels: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
 - 1. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 133419

**SECTION 211119
FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exposed-type fire-department connections.
 - 2. Yard-type fire-department connections.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Refer to drawings for fire-department connection type.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 EXPOSED-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. It shall be the contractors responsibility to confirm final location, type, and size of fire department connection with the authority having jurisdiction before proceeding with work.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- F. Inlets:
 - 1. If Storz connection: 5" Storz matching jurisdiction requirements.
 - 2. If non-storz connection: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps:
 - 1. If Storz connection: Storz cap with gasket and chain.
 - 2. If non-storz connection: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
- I. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Size per system demand.

- K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "**AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE.**"
- L. Finish: Polished chrome plated, rough brass or bronze, or rough chrome plated.
- M. Outlet Size: Size per system demand, and local AHJ.

2.02 YARD-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. It shall be the contractors responsibility to confirm final location, type, and size of fire department connection with the authority having jurisdiction before proceeding with work.
- B. Standard: UL 405.
- C. Type: Exposed, freestanding.
- D. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- E. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- F. Inlets:
 - 1. If Storz connection: 5" Storz matching jurisdiction requirements.
 - 2. If non-storz connection: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- G. Caps:
 - 1. If Storz connection: Storz cap with gasket and chain.
 - 2. If non-storz connection: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- H. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, floor type.
- I. Outlet: Bottom, with pipe threads.
- J. Number of Inlets: Size per system demand.
- K. Sleeve: Brass.
- L. Sleeve Height: 18 inches.
- M. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "**AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE.**"
- N. Finish, Including Sleeve: Polished chrome plated, rough brass or bronze, or rough chrome plated.
- O. Outlet Size: Size per system demand, and local AHJ.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.

- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install yard-type fire-department connections in concrete slab support.
- C. Install three protective pipe bollards around each yard-type fire-department connection.
- D. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119

SECTION 211313
WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and fittings.
 - 2. CPVC pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Cover system for sprinkler piping.
 - 4. Specialty valves.
 - 5. Air vent.
 - 6. Sprinkler piping specialties.
 - 7. Sprinklers.
 - 8. Alarm devices.
 - 9. Manual control stations.
 - 10. Control panels.
 - 11. Pressure gauges.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 250 psig.
- B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated Design Submittals: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, prepared by a qualified designer.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler system plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and designer.

- C. Design Data: Approved sprinkler piping working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including documented approval by authorities having jurisdiction, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
 - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified designer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- D. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250-psig minimum.
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: See drawings
 - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - d. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.30 gpm/sq. ft. over 2500 sq. ft. area.
 - e. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.40 gpm/sq. ft. over 2500 sq. ft. area.
 - f. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Maximum protection area per sprinkler according to UL listing.
- F. Obtain documented approval of sprinkler system design from authorities having jurisdiction.

2.02 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight Steel Pipe: Galvanized and Black-steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30 Steel Pipe: Black-steel pipe, ASTM A135/A135M; or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Steel Pipe: Galvanized and black-steel pipe, ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- E. Nonstandard OD, Thinwall Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M thinwall with plain ends and wall thickness less than Schedule 10.
- F. Hybrid Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M lightwall, with wall thickness less than Schedule 10 and greater than Schedule 5.
- G. Schedule 5 Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M lightwall with plain ends.

- H. Steel Pipe Nipples: Galvanized and black steel, ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- I. Steel Couplings: Galvanized and uncoated steel, ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- J. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: Galvanized and uncoated gray-iron threaded fittings, ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- K. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- L. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- M. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: 'AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick', 'ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free', or EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M and ASME B16.9.
 - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- O. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 2. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: Painted grooved-end fittings, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.
- P. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings: UL 213, FM Global-approved, 175-psig pressure rating with steel housing, rubber O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with fitting manufacturers' pressure-seal tools.

2.03 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F442/F442M and UL 1821, SDR 13.5, for 175-psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, with plain ends. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER PIPE" markings.
- B. CPVC Fittings: UL listed FM Global approved, for 175-psig rated pressure at 150 deg F, socket type. Include "LISTED" and "CPVC SPRINKLER FITTING" markings.
 - 1. NPS 3/4 to NPS 1-1/2 (DN 20 to DN 40): ASTM F438 and UL 1821, Schedule 40, socket type.
 - 2. NPS 2 to NPS 3 (DN 50 to DN 80): ASTM F439 and UL 1821, Schedule 80, socket type.
 - 3. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC, one piece, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
 - 4. CPVC-to-Metal Transition Unions: CPVC, with dimensions equivalent to pipe; one end with threaded brass insert, and one socket end.
 - 5. Flanges: CPVC, one or two pieces.

- C. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Piping and Tubing: ASTM F493 solvent cement recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer, and made for joining CPVC sprinkler pipe and fittings. Include cleaner or primer recommended by pipe and fitting manufacturer.
- D. Plastic Pipe-Flange Gasket and Bolts and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

2.04 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
 - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
 - 2. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 250-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Alarm Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 193.
 - 2. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
 - 3. Drip cup assembly pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
 - 4. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 5. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gauge to read diaphragm-chamber pressure and manual control station for manual operation of deluge valve, and connection for actuation device.
- G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.05 AIR VENT

- A. Automatic Air Vent:
 - 1. Description: Automatic air vent that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention.
 - 2. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for use in wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems.
 - 3. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
 - 4. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
 - 5. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

2.06 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Branch Outlet Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.

2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.
- C. Branch Line Testers:
1. Standard: UL 199.
 2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Material: Brass.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet: Threaded.
 6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
 7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
 2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Length: Adjustable.
 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 1474.
 2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.07 SPRINKLERS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.

- D. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig minimum.
- E. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
 - 2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 3. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 - 4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: See sprinkler schedule on drawings.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards: UL 199, Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.08 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types to match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
 - 1. Standard: UL 753.
 - 2. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
 - 3. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
 - 4. Size: 8-1/2-inches diameter.
 - 5. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
 - 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 7. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.
- C. Electrically Operated Notification Appliances:
 - 1. Electric Bell:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - c. Size: 10-inch diameter.
 - d. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, 1 phase or 24 V dc.
 - e. Finish: Red-enamel or polyester powder-coat factory finish, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox.
 - 2. Strobe/Horn:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Tone: Selectable, steady, Temporal-3 (T-3) in accordance with ISO 8201 and ANSI/ASA S3.41, 2400 Hz, electromechanical, broadband.
 - c. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Effective Intensity: 110 cd.
 - e. Finish: Red, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox. White letters on housing identifying device as for "Fire."
 - f. Sign, Integrated: Mount between backbox and strobe/horn with text visible on both sides, above and below strobe/horn. Housing to be shaped to cover surface-mounted weatherproof backbox. Sign is to consist of white lettering on red plastic identifying it as a "Sprinkler Fire Alarm" and instructing viewers to call 911, police, or fire department.
- D. Water-Flow Indicators:
 - 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.

3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
 4. Type: Paddle operated.
 5. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
 6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.
- E. Pressure Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
 2. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 4. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.
- F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
1. Standard: UL 346.
 2. Type: Electrically supervised.
 3. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
 4. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.09 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.10 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Manual Control Stations, Electric Operation: Metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Panel Components:
 1. Power supply.
 2. Battery charger.
 3. Standby batteries.
 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 6. Lamp test facility.

7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
8. Rectifier.

2.11 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- C. Pressure Gauge Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- D. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- L. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- M. Pressurize and check preaction sprinkler system piping and air compressors.
- N. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- O. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- R. Install chrome one-piece or split-ring escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall and Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
 - I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
 - J. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
 - K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
 - L. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.
 - M. Plastic-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D2846/D2846M Appendix.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
 3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
- E. Air Vent:
 1. Provide at least one air vent at high point in each wet-pipe sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements. Connect vent into top of fire sprinkler piping.
 2. Provide dielectric union for dissimilar metals, ball valve, and strainer upstream of automatic air vent.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels. Coordinate with architect for final ceiling grid placement requirements.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.09 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves and pressure-maintenance pumps.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with 'threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded' or 'grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved' joints.

- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. CPVC pipe, Schedule 40 or Schedule 80 CPVC fittings, and solvent-cemented joints may only be used for light-hazard and residential occupancies.
- D. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) and Smaller, to be one of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
 - 6. Thinwall, Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall, or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 7. Thinwall, Schedule 10, nonstandard OD, thinwall, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
- E. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger, to be one of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 5. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
 - 6. Thinwall, Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 7. Thinwall, Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.
- F. High-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, to be one of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

4. Thinwall, Schedule 10, or hybrid black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. See sprinkler schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 211316
DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 3. Specialty valves.
 - 4. Dry-sprinkler system nitrogen generator with purge/vent.
 - 5. Preaction sprinkler system nitrogen generator with purge/vent.
 - 6. Sprinkler piping specialties.
 - 7. Sprinklers.
 - 8. Alarm devices.
 - 9. Manual control stations.
 - 10. Control panels.
 - 11. Pressure gauges.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, prepared by a qualified designer (minimum designer qualifications determined by the Authority Having Jurisdiction).

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinate with all building trades.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and designer.
- C. Design Data: Approved sprinkler piping working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including documented approval by authorities having jurisdiction, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
 - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified designer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air or nitrogen. Opening of sprinklers releases compressed air or nitrogen and permits water pressure to open dry-pipe valve. Water then flows into piping and discharges from opened sprinklers.

- B. Combined Dry-Pipe and Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air or nitrogen. Fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, actuates tripping devices that open dry-pipe valve without loss of [air] [nitrogen] pressure and actuates fire alarm. Water discharges from opened sprinklers.
- C. Single-Interlock Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing low-pressure air or nitrogen. Actuation of fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, opens preaction valve, permitting water to flow into sprinkler piping and to discharge from opened sprinklers.
- D. Double-Interlock Preaction Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing low-pressure air or nitrogen. Actuation of a fire-detection system, located in same area as sprinklers, will activate the normally closed solenoid but will not open the preaction valve. Activation of a sprinkler head will not permit water to flow into sprinkler piping. Activation of both the normally closed solenoid valve and automatic sprinkler is required to cause the preaction valve to open, permitting water to flow into sprinkler piping, and water will then discharge from opened sprinkler.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- D. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified designer, to design dry-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: **10** percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: See drawings.
 - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
 - d. Extra-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: [0.30 gpm/sq. ft. over 2500 sq. ft. area.
 - e. Extra-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: [0.40 gpm/sq. ft. over 2500 sq. ft. area.
 - f. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Maximum protection area per sprinkler according to UL listing.
- E. Obtain documented approval of sprinkler system design from authorities having jurisdiction.

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M; ASTM A795/A795M, or ASME B36.10M wrought steel, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

- C. Thinwall Galvanized-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Couplings: ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.
- F. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- I. Plain-End-Pipe Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron body with retainer lugs that require one-quarter turn or screwed retainer pin to secure pipe in fitting.
- J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 2. Galvanized, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.04 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18 pressure fittings.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22 pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
- E. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Copper-Tube, Mechanically Formed Tee Fitting: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F2014.
- H. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 - 1. Standard: UL 213.
 - 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B75 copper tube or ASTM B584 bronze castings.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: To fit copper tube dimensions; rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting EPDM-rubber gasket rated for minimum 180 deg F for use with ferrous housing and steel bolts and nuts; 300 psig minimum CWP pressure rating.

- I. Copper-Tube, Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings: Cast-brass, cast-bronze, or wrought-copper with EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
 - 2. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.05 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
 - 1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Dry-Pipe Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 260.
 - 2. Design: Differential-pressure type.
 - 3. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - 4. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - a. Standard: UL 260.
 - b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
 - c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
 - 5. Air Compressor:
 - a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - 1) Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 - c. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 - d. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
- G. Preaction Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 260.
 - 2. Design: Hydraulically operated, differential-pressure type.
 - 3. Include trim sets for alarm-test bypass, drain, electrical water-flow alarm switch, pressure gauges, drip cup assembly piped without valves and separate from main drain line, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 - 4. Dry, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include dry, pilot-line actuator; air- and water-pressure gauges; low-air-pressure warning switch; air relief valve; and actuation device. Dry, pilot-line actuator includes cast-iron, operated, diaphragm-type valve with resilient facing plate, resilient diaphragm, and replaceable bronze seat. Valve includes threaded water and air inlets and water outlet. Loss of air pressure on dry, pilot-line side allows pilot-line actuator to open and causes deluge valve to open immediately.
 - 5. Air-Pressure Maintenance Device:
 - a. Standard: UL 260.
 - b. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.

- c. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
- 6. Air Compressor:
 - a. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - b. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - 1) Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 - c. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 - d. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
- H. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1726.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 3. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
 - 4. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded.

2.06 DRY-SPRINKLER SYSTEM NITROGEN GENERATOR WITH PURGE/VENT

- A. Description: Nitrogen generator system to serve dry sprinkler zones for piping corrosion mitigation, including system venting. System is to provide required supervisory pressure within sprinkler zone. System is to include either an integrated, oil-less air compressor located within the nitrogen generator system package, or a separate vibration-isolation mounted air compressor, also provided by nitrogen generator manufacturer.
- B. Standards:
 - 1. FM Approvals 1035.
 - 2. UL 508A listed.
- C. Nitrogen Generator:
 - 1. Wall-mounted or skid-mounted nitrogen generator to provide minimum nitrogen purity of 98 percent to designated sprinkler systems.
 - 2. Power: 120 V ac.
 - 3. Bypass mode and nitrogen generating mode.
 - 4. Minimum Capacity: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Air Compressor:
 - 1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 - 2. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - a. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 - 3. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 - 4. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
 - 5. Minimum Capacity: Match capacity of nitrogen generator.
- E. Automatic Purge Vent/Valve:
 - 1. Vents oxygen during system nitrogen fill.
 - 2. Automatically closes when 98 percent minimum nitrogen has been reached.
 - 3. Sized to allow correct purge rate per manufacturer's written instructions and within 14 days.

4. Provide one venting device for each dry/preaction sprinkler system zone.
 5. Include a connection port for a portable nitrogen purity sensor or a nitrogen purity manifold.
- F. Supervisory Gas Monitoring - Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device:
1. Portable Handheld Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device: Portable sensing device to connect to the outlet of the automatic purge/vent valve during periodic inspections to obtain a nitrogen purity reading within each zone.
 2. Permanently Mounted Nitrogen Purity Monitoring Device or Manifold: Permanent monitoring device to continuously monitor system's nitrogen purity.
- G. BAS Alarm Integration:
1. Provide nitrogen generation system with integrated leak detection and bypass alarms. Program alarms into controller and connect to BAS.
 - a. Leak detection system is to alarm if leaks develop within fire suppression system piping.
 - b. Air bypass alarm is to alarm if nitrogen generation system is bypassed by air compressor.

2.07 PREACTION SPRINKLER SYSTEM NITROGEN GENERATOR WITH PURGE/VENT

- A. Description: Nitrogen generator system to serve preaction sprinkler zones for piping corrosion mitigation, including system venting. System is to provide required supervisory pressure within sprinkler zone. System is to include either an integrated, oil-less air compressor located within the nitrogen generator system package, or a separate vibration-isolation mounted air compressor, also provided by nitrogen generator manufacturer.
- B. Standards:
1. FM Approvals 1035.
 2. UL 508A listed.
- C. Nitrogen Generator:
1. Stand-alone nitrogen generator to provide minimum nitrogen purity of 98 percent to the designated sprinkler systems.
 2. Power: 120 V ac.
 3. Bypass mode and nitrogen generating mode.
 4. Minimum Capacity: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Air Compressor:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 2. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
 - a. Power: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.
 3. Sized for application and capable of achieving system supervisory pressure within 30 minutes in accordance with requirements of NFPA 13. Provide ASME air receiver tank as required to meet requirements on larger systems.
 4. Include filters, relief valves, coolers, automatic drains, and gauges.
 5. Minimum Capacity: Match capacity of nitrogen generator.
- E. Automatic Purge Vent/Valve:
1. Vents oxygen during system nitrogen fill.
 2. Automatically closes when 98 percent minimum nitrogen has been reached.
 3. Sized to allow correct purge rate per manufacturer's written instructions and within 14 days.
 4. Provide one venting device for each dry/preaction sprinkler system zone.

5. Include a connection port for a portable nitrogen purity sensor or a nitrogen purity manifold.
- F. Supervisory Gas Monitoring - Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device:
1. Portable Handheld Nitrogen Purity Sensing Device: Portable sensing device to connect to the outlet of automatic purge/vent valve during periodic inspections to obtain a nitrogen purity reading within each zone.
 2. Permanently Mounted Nitrogen Purity Monitoring Device or Manifold: Permanent monitoring device to continuously monitor system's nitrogen purity.
- G. BAS Alarm Integration:
1. Provide nitrogen generation system with integrated leak detection and bypass alarms. Program alarms into controller and connect to BAS.
 - a. Leak detection system is to alarm if leaks develop within fire-suppression system piping.
 - b. Air bypass alarm is to alarm if nitrogen generation system is bypassed by air compressor.

2.08 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.
- B. Branch Outlet Fittings:
1. Standard: UL 213.
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
 4. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
 5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
 6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
 7. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- D. Branch Line Testers:
1. Standard: UL 199.
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Brass.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet: Threaded.
 6. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
 7. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.
- E. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
 2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 3. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 5. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

- F. Adjustable Drop Nipples:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1474.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
 - 3. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM O-ring seals.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 5. Length: Adjustable.
 - 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- G. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: UL 1474.
 - 2. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.09 SPRINKLERS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175-psig maximum.
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250-psig minimum.
- E. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
 - 1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
 - 2. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
 - 3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- F. Sprinkler Finishes: See sprinkler schedule on drawings.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards: UL 199, Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.10 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types to match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
 - 1. Standard: UL 753.
 - 2. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
 - 3. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
 - 4. Size: 10-inch diameter.
 - 5. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
 - 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 7. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.
- C. Electrically Operated Alarm Notification Appliances:
 - 1. Electric Bell:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.

- b. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - c. Size: 10-inch diameter.
 - d. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, 1 phase or 24 V dc.
 - e. Finish: Red-enamel or polyester powder-coat factory finish, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox.
 - 2. Strobe/Horn:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Tone: Selectable, steady, Temporal-3 (T-3) in accordance with ISO 8201 and ANSI/ASA S3.41, 2400 Hz, electromechanical, broadband.
 - c. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Effective Intensity: 110 cd.
 - e. Finish: Red, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox. White letters on housing identifying device as for "Fire."
 - f. Sign, Integrated: Mount between backbox and strobe/horn with text visible on both sides, above and below strobe/horn. Housing to be shaped to cover surface-mounted weatherproof backbox. Sign is to consist of white lettering on red plastic identifying it as a "Sprinkler Fire Alarm" and instructing viewers to call 911, police, or fire department.
- D. Pressure Switches - Water-Flow Alarm Detection:
- 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised, pressure-activated water-flow switch.
 - 3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - 4. Design Operation: Rising pressure to 6 psi, plus or minus 2 psi signals water flow.
 - 5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
 - 6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch to provide separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low and high volume connections to comply with NFPA 70 Article 760 requirements.
- E. Pressure Switches - Low/High Air Pressure Supervisory:
- 1. Standard: UL 346.
 - 2. Type: Electrically supervised pressure supervisory switch.
 - 3. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - 4. Design Operation: Detects increase and/or decrease from normal supervisory air pressure.
 - 5. Adjustability: Each switch is to be independently adjustable.
 - 6. Wire Separation: Pressure switch to provide for separation of wiring to each switch connection to allow for low and high voltage connections to comply with NFPA 70 Article 760 requirements.
- F. Valve Supervisory Switches:
- 1. General Requirements for Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Standard: UL 346.
 - b. Type: Electrically supervised.
 - c. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
 - d. Wire Terminal Designations: Indicates normal switch position when switch is properly installed on the valve and valve is fully open.
 - 2. Requirements for OS&Y Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Components: One or two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Visual Switch Indication: Indicates device is properly installed and OS&Y valve is fully open.
 - d. Mounting Hardware: Mounting bracket to grip valve yoke and prevent movement of switch assembly on OS&Y valve.

- e. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable.
- 3. Requirements for PIV and Butterfly Valve Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw switches.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 and NEMA 6P enclosures suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Mounting Hardware: Removable nipple.
 - d. Trip Rod Length: Adjustable.
- 4. Requirements for Ball Valve Supervisory Switch:
 - a. Components: One single-pole, double-throw switch.
 - b. NEMA Rating: NEMA 4 enclosure suitable for mounting in any position indoors or outdoors.
 - c. Mounting Hardware: Suitable for mounting directly to pipe, ball valves or backflow preventers sized from up to NPS 2.

2.11 MANUAL CONTROL STATIONS

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" for hydraulic operation, with union, NPS 1/2 pipe nipple, and bronze ball valve.
- B. Include metal enclosure labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION" with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.

2.12 CONTROL PANELS

- A. Description: Single-area, two-area, or single-area cross-zoned-type control panel as indicated, including NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure, detector, alarm, and solenoid-valve circuitry for operation of deluge valves.
 - 1. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide" when used with thermal detectors and Class A detector circuit wiring.
 - 2. Electrical characteristics are 120-V ac, 60 Hz, with 24-V dc rechargeable batteries.
 - 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application
- B. Manual Control Stations, Electric Operation: Metal enclosure, labeled "MANUAL CONTROL STATION," with operating instructions and cover held closed by breakable strut to prevent accidental opening.
- C. Panel Components:
 - 1. Power supply.
 - 2. Battery charger.
 - 3. Standby batteries.
 - 4. Field-wiring terminal strip.
 - 5. Electrically supervised solenoid valves and polarized fire-alarm bell.
 - 6. Lamp test facility.
 - 7. Single-pole, double-throw auxiliary alarm contacts.
 - 8. Rectifier.

2.13 PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Standard: UL 393.
- B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- C. Pressure Gauge Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.

- D. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- E. Air System Piping Gauge: Include "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.02 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gauge, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
 - 1. Pressure gauges and controls.
 - 2. Electrical power system.

- 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- O. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air-pressure maintenance devices.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

- J. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- K. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of tube according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and copper pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- M. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- N. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
 - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
 - 2. Install dry-pipe and deluge valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
 - a. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range; and 175-psig maximum inlet pressure.
 - b. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.08 NITROGEN-GENERATION, CORROSION-MITIGATION SYSTEM

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Locate purge vent/valve in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- C. Route alarm signals in code-approved electrical conduit from nitrogen generator system control panel to the supervisory circuit of BAS.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Start and run air compressors.
 - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
 - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded or grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Copper-tube, extruded-tee connections may be used for tee branches in copper tubing instead of specified copper fittings. Branch-connection joints must be brazed.

- D. Standard-Pressure, Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight, Schedule 30, or thinwall, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
 - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 4. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 5. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 6. NPS 2, Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- E. Standard-Pressure, Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), to Be One of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 4. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; copper pressure-seal fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 5. Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- F. Standard-Pressure, Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150), to Be One of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
 - 3. Type L, hard copper tube with plain ends; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 4. Type L, hard copper tube with roll-grooved ends; copper, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. See sprinkler schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION 211316

**SECTION 220719
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material test reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.06 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. All Insulation Installed Indoors; Outdoors-Installed Insulation in Contact with Airstream: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 3. All Insulation Installed Indoors and Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.02 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in piping material schedule in plumbing drawings.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 1, unfaced.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ, ASJ-SSL, ASJ+, or PSK jacket.
 - 3. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450, ASTM C585, and ASTM C1639.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between minus 70 deg and 220 deg F. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials. Insulation shall be white in color.
- H. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.

1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, unfaced with factory-applied ASJ, factory-applied ASJ-SSL, with factory-applied ASJ+ jacket, or with factory-applied PSK jacket.
2. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 4. Color: Black.
- D. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- E. ASJ Adhesive and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.04 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements, with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 3. Color: White.

2.05 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F.
 3. Color: White or gray.

- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.06 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 - 4. ASJ+: Aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
 - 5. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil fiberglass reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing, complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

- 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union cover.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil-thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane, consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket (Asphaltic): 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with [white] [stucco-embossed] aluminum-foil facing.
- G. Self-Adhesive Indoor/Outdoor Jacket (Non-Asphaltic): Vapor barrier and waterproofing jacket for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors or indoors. Specialized jacket has five layers of laminated aluminum and polyester film with low-temperature acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive. Outer aluminum surface is coated with UV-resistant coating for protection from environmental contaminants.
1. Permeance: 0.00 perm as tested in accordance with ASTM F1249.
 2. Flame spread/Smoke Developed: 25/50 as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 3. Aluminum Finish: Embossed or Smooth.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
- B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in, in a Leno weave, for pipe.

2.09 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.

5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
1. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
1. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application

- methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
 - D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the contract documents.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Cleanouts.

3.03 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least

- 2 inches.
- 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.04 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 - 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the

- mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation. Where voids are difficult to fill with block insulation, fill the voids with a fibrous insulation material suitable for the specific operating temperature.
 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at

least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered or routed sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install prefabricated sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
 - 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install sections of pipe insulation and miter if required in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install prefabricated valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When prefabricated valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL WOOL INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched

- 4. staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
- 1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
- 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
- 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
- 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.09 FINISHES

- A. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to drawings for pipe insulation schedule.

3.13 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Refer to drawings for pipe jacket schedule.

3.14 UNDERGROUND, FIELD-APPLIED INSULATION JACKET

- A. For underground direct-buried piping applications, install underground direct-buried jacket over insulation material.

END OF SECTION 220719

**SECTION 221116
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 2. Piping joining materials.
 - 3. Encasement for piping.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Pipe and tube.
 - 2. Fittings.
 - 3. Joining materials.

1.03 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper, or ASTM B 88, Type K
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- F. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123, Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- G. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- H. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
 - 1. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
- I. Appurtenances for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
 - 1. Bronze Fittings for Grooved-End, Copper Tubing: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
 - 2. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End Copper Tubing:
 - a. Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606.
 - b. Ferrous housing sections.
 - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
 - d. Bolts and nuts.
 - e. Minimum Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

2.03 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.04 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

2.05 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - 1. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - 2. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - 3. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - 4. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - 5. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Piping Schedule: Refer to drawings.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance.
- E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves.
- G. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- Q. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump.
- R. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping.
- S. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Push-on Joints for Copper Tubing: Clean end of tube. Measure insertion depth with manufacturer's depth gage. Join copper tube and push-on-joint fittings by inserting tube to measured depth.
- G. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2144. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- H. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Copper Tubing: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of tubes. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of tubes or tube and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in tubing grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

3.04 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation.
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet : MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.06 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.07 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components.
 - 1. Provide valve tags and valve schedule.
 - 2. Label piping every 8' with system designation and flow arrows.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
- 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
 - a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.09 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.

2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.11 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

**SECTION 221316
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 4. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 5. CPVC pipe and fittings for chemical waste systems.
 - 6. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 7. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For drainage systems include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Construction Manager's or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig

2.03 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.04 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
 - 2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.05 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Copper Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.06 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
 - 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.07 CPVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC drainage pipe and fittings: ASTM F2618 pipe and drainage-pattern fittings.

2.08 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 3. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
 4. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description:

- 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66
- 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
- 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with industry standards for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
 - 2. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- O. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- P. Install CPVC drainage piping in accordance with ASTM D2321 and ASTM F1668.
- Q. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- R. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install backwater valves in sanitary waster gravity-flow piping.
 - 2. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping.
- S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors where the penetrations are not concealed.

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
- C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- E. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe according to AWWA C606. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections, over gasket, with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.

- F. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- G. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
 - 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.
 - 4. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

3.04 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
 - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Shutoff Valves:
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 - 2. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 3. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- C. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation.
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 - 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- I. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- K. Install hangers for CPVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 36 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3: 42 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6: 48 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
- L. Install supports for vertical CPVC piping every 48 inches.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main.
 2. Sewage Pump: To sewage pump discharge.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping every 8' with system labels and flow arrows.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before

inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.

4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. See Drawings.

END OF SECTION 221316

**SECTION 221414
STORM DRAINAGE PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 3. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 5. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
 - 3. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Specialty pipe fittings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, sections, elevations, and details.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Quality-Control Reports: Inspection reports signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide materials bearing label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.05 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm drainage service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm drainage service without Construction Manager's or Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are to be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 100 psig.

2.02 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.03 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
 - 2. Standard: ASTM A74.
 - 3. Class: Service weight cast iron.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C564, rubber.
- C. Caulking Materials: ASTM B29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.04 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM A888 and CISPI 301.
- B. Standard, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standards: ASTM C1277 and CISPI 310.
 - 2. Description: Stainless steel corrugated shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM A1056.
 - 2. Description: Two-piece ASTM A48/A48M, cast-iron housing; stainless steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.05 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Pipe:
 - 1. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 drain, waste, and vent.
 - 2. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F891, Schedule 40.
- B. PVC Socket Fittings:
 - 1. Standard: ASTM D2665, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

2.06 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C1173.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C564 rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926 PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926 PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
 4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: ASTM C1460.
 - b. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - c. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - b. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as pipes to be joined, and with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - c. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - d. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - e. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
 4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
 - a. Description:
 - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel-backing washers.
 5. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Description: Electroplated steel nipple.
 - b. Standards: ASTM F492, ASME B1.20.1.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

- d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.07 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch or linear low-density polyethylene film of 0.008-inch (0.20-mm) minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with project requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
- B. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations.
 - 1. Piping installed in equipment rooms, service areas, and where indicated may be exposed.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.

1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install piping at the slopes shown on drawings. If not indicated on drawings slope at 1/8 inch per foot downward in the direction of flow.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Ch IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- O. Install steel piping in accordance with applicable plumbing code.
- P. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- Q. Install underground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
- R. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- S. Install engineered controlled-flow drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- T. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install backwater valves in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
 2. Install cleanouts in storm drainage gravity-flow piping in accessible locations.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
 3. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
- U. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Caulked Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum caulked joints.
- C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- E. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendices.
- F. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:
 - 1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:
 - a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
 - b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 4 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
 - c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 - 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 - 3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
 - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF VALVES.

- A. Shutoff Valves:
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
 - 2. Install full port ball valve for piping NS 2 and smaller.
 - 3. Install gate or butterfly valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- C. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.

2. Install stainless steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
 3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 4. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Install hangers for PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- E. Support vertical cast-iron piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent, but as a minimum at base and at each floor.
- F. Support vertical PVC piping with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 2. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Test Procedure:
 - a. Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in.
 - b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - c. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - d. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
 - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping and drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- C. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by storm drainage piping installation.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. See drawings.

END OF SECTION 221414

SECTION 223400
FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Direct-vent, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Gas-fired, tankless, domestic-water heaters.
 - 3. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
 - 2. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, finned-tube, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV.
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year.
 - b. Gas-Fired, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Heat Exchanger: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Direct-Vent, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product.
 - 2. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.
 - 3. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: ASSE 1005.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Burner: For use with direct-vent, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - h. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
 - i. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valve: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 5. Direct-Vent System: Through-roof, coaxial- or double-channel vent assembly with domestic-water heater manufacturers outside intake/exhaust screen.

2.02 GAS-FIRED, TANKLESS, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3 for gas-fired, instantaneous, domestic-water heaters for indoor application.

- B. Construction: Copper piping or tubing complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable water, without storage capacity.
 - 1. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3. Heat Exchanger: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Jacket: Metal, with enameled finish, or plastic.
 - 5. Burner: For use with tankless, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - 6. Automatic Ignition: Manufacturer's proprietary system for automatic, gas ignition.
 - 7. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
- C. Support: Bracket for wall mounting.

2.03 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:
 - 1. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Tapping's: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - 3. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal.minimum.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.
- C. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- D. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
- E. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21/CSA 6.5, appliance, electrically operated, on-off automatic valve.
- F. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- G. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.
- H. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

- I. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater minimum of 18 inches above the floor.

2.04 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DOMESTIC WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base.
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Tankless, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install tankless, domestic-water heaters at least 18 inches above floor on wall bracket.
 - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 5. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- C. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping.
- D. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.
 - 1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.

2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural Gas Piping."
 5. Install vent/flue and combustion air systems per manufacturer's recommendation and terminate vent/flue and combustion air in code approved locations.
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains.
- G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters.
- H. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.
- J. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural Gas Piping."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components with permanent labels.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.

- 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223400

**SECTION 224200
PLUMBING FIXTURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Water closets & toilet seats
 - 2. Urinals
 - 3. Lavatories & faucets
 - 4. Sinks & faucets
 - 5. Drinking fountains – wall mounted
 - 6. Showers

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.03 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 See plumbing schedule on drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 WATER CLOSET INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Closet Installation:
 - 1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
 - 2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
 - 3. Install toilet seats on water closets.
 - 4. Install ADA water closets with proper ADA clearances to walls.

- B. Support Installation:
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
 - 2. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
 - 3. Measure support height installation from finished floor, not structural floor.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
 - 1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
 - 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
 - 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
 - 4. Install actuators in locations easily reachable for people with disabilities.
 - 5. Install new batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
 - 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 - 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- E. Joint Sealing:
 - 1. Seal joints between water closets and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 - 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
- F. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- G. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- H. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- I. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.
- J. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- K. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- L. During construction, install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- M. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.03 URINAL INSTALLATION

- A. Urinal Installation:
 - 1. Install urinals level and plumb according to rough-in drawings.
 - 2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
 - 3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
 - 4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC A117.1.
 - 5. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

- B. Support Installation:
 - 1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
 - 2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
 - 3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
 - 4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
 - 1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
 - 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
 - 3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
 - 4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
 - 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
 - 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- E. Joint Sealing:
 - 1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 - 2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
- F. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- G. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- H. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- I. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.
- J. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- K. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- L. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- M. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- N. During construction, install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- O. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.04 LAVATORY INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- E. Seal joints between lavatories and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Indicate on Drawings those lavatories that are required to be accessible.
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories.
- G. Install ASSE 1070 mixing valve per manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- I. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- J. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- K. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- L. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- M. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- N. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- O. During construction, provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- P. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.05 SINK INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install wall-mounted sinks at accessible mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - 1. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.

- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Indicate on Drawings those sinks that are required to be accessible.
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks.
- I. Install ASSE 1070 mixing valves on all sinks (except service sink) per manufacturer's instructions.
- J. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- K. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- L. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- M. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- N. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- O. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- P. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- Q. During construction, provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- R. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.06 DRINKING FOUNTAIN INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings provided by manufacturer.
- B. Set pedestal drinking fountains and bottle filling stations on flat surface in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- C. Install recessed, drinking fountains and bottle filling stations secured to wood blocking in wall construction.
- D. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- E. Install water-supply piping and shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings.

- H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.
- I. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- J. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- K. Install ball shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture.
- L. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- M. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- N. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- O. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
- P. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- Q. After installing fixtures, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- R. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- S. During construction, provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- T. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

3.07 SHOWER INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with shower.
 - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- E. Set shower basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- G. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

- H. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- I. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- J. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- K. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.
- L. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- M. After completing installation of showers and basins, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- N. Clean showers and basins, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- O. During construction, provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- P. Do not allow use of showers and basins for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224200

SECTION 230593
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
 - 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
 - 4. Procedures for exhaust hoods.
 - 5. HVAC-control system verification.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.

- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC, NEBB, or TABB as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- D. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in

AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design."
Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainer baskets are installed and clean.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- Q. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.

- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
- 2. Hydronics:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
 - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
 - f. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
 - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
 - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
 - i. Pump gauge connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
 - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.03 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.04 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings.

3.05 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.06 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.07 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
 - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
 - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
 - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
 - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
 - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
 - f. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
 5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow, so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
 - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.

- d. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
- 6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
- 7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets.
 - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
- 8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit, and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls Contractor.
- 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
 - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - d. Mark final settings.
 - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
 - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.08 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and equipment flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
 - 1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
 - 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 - 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 - 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
 - 5. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.
- D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
- E. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
- F. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
 - 1. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.09 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
 - 1. Measure total water flow.

- a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 3. Mark final settings.
- G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the pressure-differential sensor(s) is located as indicated.
 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no flow diversity:
1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system pressure-differential set point(s).
 7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.

- c. Mark final settings.
- D. For systems with flow diversity:
 1. Determine diversity factor.
 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by Architect.
 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
 9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system pressure-differential set point(s).
 10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.

11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
 - 3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 - 3. Motor rpm.
 - 4. Phase and hertz.
 - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
 - 8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
 - 1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 - 2. Measure and record water flow.
 - 3. Measure and record pressure drop.
 - 4. Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
 - 5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h of heating output.
 - 6. Fuel Consumption: If boiler fuel supply is equipped with flow meter, measure and record consumption.
 - 7. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.
 - 8. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each hydronic coil:
 - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 2. Water flow rate.
 - 3. Water pressure drop.
 - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 6. Airflow.
 - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 3. Airflow.
 - 4. Air pressure drop.
 - 5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

3.15 PROCEDURES FOR EXHAUST HOODS

- A. Room Pressure: Measure and record room pressure with respect to atmosphere and adjacent space with hoods in room initially not operating and then with hoods operating.
- B. Makeup Air: Systems supplying source of makeup air to hoods shall be in operation during testing and balancing of exhaust hoods.
 - 1. Measure and record temperature of makeup air entering hood. If hood makeup air is from multiple sources having different temperatures, measure and record the airflow and temperatures of each source and calculate the weighted average temperature.
 - 2. Use simulated smoke to observe supply air-distribution air patterns in vicinity of hoods. Consult with hood manufacturer and report conditions that have a detrimental effect on intended capture, containment, and other attributes effecting proper operation.
- C. Rooms with Multiple Hoods: Test each hood separately, one at a time, and repeat tests with all hoods intended to operate simultaneously by design.
- D. Kitchen Hoods:
 - 1. Type 1: Measure and record pressure drop and face velocity of hood filters and slots in accordance with hood manufacturer's instructions. Consult hood manufacturer to determine hood airflow using recorded information.
 - 2. Type 2: Measure and record airflow by duct traverse.
 - 3. Capture and Containment: Check each hood for proper capture and containment using a smoke-emitting device. Observe and report performance. Make adjustments to achieve optimum results.
- E. AHJ Tests: Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.16 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 - 1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
 - 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 - 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 - 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 - 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 - 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 - 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 - 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 - 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.
- C. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
 - 3. Supply and Exhaust Fans: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent.
 - 4. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 5 gpm, within 0.5 gpm.

- D. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.17 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.18 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents, including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.

- c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
 - e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - g. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - h. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- 16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
 - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
 - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - 5. Terminal units.
 - 6. Balancing stations.
 - 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and speed.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan speed.
 - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - j. Return airflow in cfm.

- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
 - 1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - k. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - l. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
 - m. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Fuel type in input data.
 - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
 - h. Ignition type.
 - i. Burner-control types.
 - j. Motor horsepower and speed.
 - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
 - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
 - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
 - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.

- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
 - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
 - l. Motor voltage at each connection.
 - m. Motor amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
- 1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and speed.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan speed.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.

- e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Air velocity in fpm.
 - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
 - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
 - f. Final velocity in fpm.
 - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
 - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
 - i. Pump speed.
 - j. Impeller diameter in inches.
 - k. Motor make and frame size.
 - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
 - m. Voltage at each connection.
 - n. Amperage for each phase.
 - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - p. Seal type.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
 - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
 - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
 - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
 - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.

- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Instrument Calibration Reports:

- 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

3.19 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the Architect.
- B. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
 - 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
 - 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.20 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply, exhaust, and outdoor air.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.06 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
- G. For operating temperatures higher than 250 deg F (121 deg C), use blanket insulation in first paragraph below. Retain ASTM C 1290 types as follows: Type I for insulation without jackets, Type II for insulation with vinyl jackets, and Type III for insulation with FSK or FSP jackets.
- H. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 450 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F and 250 deg F for jacketed and between 35 deg F and 450 deg F for unfaced in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.02 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.03 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Glass-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.04 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.

2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
4. Color: White.

2.05 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Color: White.

2.06 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 4. Color: Aluminum.
 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F
 4. Color: White.

2.07 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
 6. ASJ+: All-service jacket composed of aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
 7. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.08 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: Reference duct schedule. If color not specified on duct schedule, provide white jacket
- D. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket (Asphaltic): 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

2.09 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches.
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.

5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, Aluminum, or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, Aluminum, or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, aluminum, or stainless steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
 7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.
 - D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel, 0.062-inch soft-annealed, galvanized steel.

2.11 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC in accordance with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum in accordance with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces, free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.

4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with all code requirements for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with all code requirements.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and ASTM C1710.
- B. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Square and Rectangular Ducts and Plenums:
1. Provide 1/4 inch more per side for a tight, compression fit.
 2. Cut sheet insulation with the following dimensions:
 - a. Width of duct plus 1/4 inch, one piece.
 - b. Height of duct plus 1/4 inch, plus thickness of insulation, two pieces.
 - c. Width of duct plus 1/4 inch, plus two times the thickness of insulation, one piece.
 3. Insulate the bottom of the duct with the sheet from (a) above, then the sides with the two sheets from (b) above, and finally the top of the duct with the sheet from (c) above.
 4. Insulation without self-adhering backing:
 - a. Apply 100 percent coverage of manufacturer adhesive on the metal surface, then the insulation, except for the last 1/4 inch where sheets will butt together.
 - b. Roll sheet down into position.
 - c. Press two sheets together under compression and apply adhesive at the butt joint to seal the two sheets together.
 5. Insulation with self-adhering backing:
 - a. Peel back release paper in 6- to 8-inch increments and line up sheet.
 - b. Press firmly to activate adhesive.

- c. Align material and continue to line up correctly, pressing firmly while slowly removing release paper.
- d. Allow 1/4-inch overlap for compression at butt joints.
- e. Apply adhesive at the butt joint to seal the two sheets together.
- 6. Insulate duct brackets following manufacturer's written installation instructions.

D. Circular Ducts:

- 1. Determine the circumference of the duct, using a strip of insulation the same thickness as to be used.
- 2. Cut the sheet to the required size.
- 3. Apply 100 percent coverage of manufacturer adhesive on the metal surface then the insulation.
- 4. Apply manufacturer adhesive to the cut surfaces along 100 percent of the longitudinal seam. Press together the seam at the ends and then the middle. Close the entire seam starting from the middle.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

- 1. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- 2. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
- 3. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
- 4. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not over-compress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
- 5. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- 6. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

7. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 8. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for **100** percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.07 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF FIRE WRAP INSULATION

- A. Install Fire Wrap insulation per the manufacturer's instructions to comply with the zero clearance requirements.
- B. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- C. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- D. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.09 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below.
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.010 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Reference duct schedule on drawings

- B. Items Not Insulated:
1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
 2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Liner shall not be allowed in outside air ductwork.
 3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
 4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
 5. Flexible connectors.
 6. Vibration-control devices.
 7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.011 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Reference duct schedule on drawings

3.012 OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Reference duct schedule on drawings

END OF SECTION 230713

**SECTION 230719
HVAC PIPING INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation" for duct insulation.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
- C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation Materials: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 2. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 3. Jacket Materials for Pipe: 12 inches long by NPS 2.
 - 4. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches square.
 - 5. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or craft training program, certified by the Department of Labor, or Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.07 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by a testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.02 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials do not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

- F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Comply with ASTM C552.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Type II, Class 1, unfaced.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Jacket: Type II, Class 2, with factory-applied ASJ, ASJ-SSL, or ASJ+ jacket.
 - 3. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450, ASTM C585, and ASTM C1639.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between minus 70 deg F and 220 deg F. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I, for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
- H. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A, unfaced with factory-applied ASJ, ASJ-SSL, or ASJ+ jacket.
 - 2. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 3. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Glass-Fiber, Pipe and Tank: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F and 850 deg F, in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C1393.
 - 1. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ, FSK, or ASJ+ jacket.
 - 2. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.03 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C196.
- C. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

2.04 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F.
- C. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
 - 1. Flame-spread index is 25 or less and smoke-developed index is 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

- E. ASJ Adhesive and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- F. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

2.05 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements, with supplier listing on DOD QPD - Qualified Products Database.
 - 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Indoor Use: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Outdoor Use: Suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.06 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.07 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
 - b. Color: White or gray.

- C. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: Aluminum.
- D. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 3. Color: White.

2.08 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
 - 4. ASJ+: Aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136, Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.

2.09 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 53-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.

- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.10 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mil.
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 6 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
 1. Width: 2 inches.
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.11 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 2. Aluminum: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4 inch wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
 4. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 5. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 6. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.

3.04 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with all code requirements for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.05 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using prefabricated fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece is butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with prefabricated fitting insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using prefabricated fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using prefabricated fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation

- and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers. Installation conforms to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.

2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation. Where voids are difficult to fill with block insulation, fill the voids with a fibrous insulation material suitable for the specific operating temperature.
 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered or routed sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install prefabricated sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install sections of pipe insulation and miter if required in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install prefabricated valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
 2. When prefabricated valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.08 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL WOOL INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.09 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 - 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 - 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
 - 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless steel jackets.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections: Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection is limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- F. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Underground piping.
 - 2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Reference drawings for piping insulation schedule

3.14 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Reference drawings for pipe jacket schedule

END OF SECTION 230719

**SECTION 230923
CONTROL VALVES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ball-style control valves.
 - 2. Globe-style control valves.
 - 3. Electric and electronic control valve actuators.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cv: Valve coefficient.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. EPT: Ethylene-propylene terpolymer rubber.
- D. HNBR: Hydrogenated nitrile butadiene rubber.
- E. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.
- F. PEEK: Polyether Ether Ketone rubber.
- G. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- H. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.
- I. RTFE: Glass-fiber-reinforced PTFE.
- J. TFM: A chemically modified PTFE.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
 - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
 - 4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.

2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

C. Delegated Design Submittals:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators, including the following:
 - a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
 - b. Pressure differential drop across valve at project design flow condition.
 - c. Maximum system pressure differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at project minimum flow condition.
 - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
 - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
 - f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
 - g. Torque required at worst-case condition for sizing actuator.
 - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are indicated and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Control valve installation location indicated in relationship to room, duct, pipe, and equipment.
 2. Size and location of wall access panels for control valves installed behind walls.
 3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control valves installed above inaccessible ceilings.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Code Compliance: Comply with governing energy code.
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to size products where indicated as delegated design.
- F. Ground Fault: Properly ground products to prevent failing due to ground fault conditions.

- G. Backup Power Source: Serve control valve actuators from a backup power source where associated with systems and equipment served by a backup power source.
- H. Environmental Conditions: For actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated, house in protective secondary enclosures complying with requirements.
- I. Selection Criteria:
 - 1. Suitable for operation throughout full range of system operating conditions encountered.
 - a. Chilled Water: 150 psi, 35 degrees F-60 degrees F.
 - b. Heating Hot Water: 150 psi, 60 degrees F-200 degrees F.
 - 2. Control Valve Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less leakage, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Control Valve Pattern: Straight-through or Three-way, as indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Control Valve Flow Characteristics, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
 - a. Modulating, Two-Way Pattern: Equal percentage.
 - b. Modulating Three-Way Pattern: Linear flow. Total flow through the valve to be constant regardless of the valve's position.
 - 5. Fail-Safe Positions, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
 - a. Chilled Water: Last position.
 - b. Heating Hot Water: Open.
 - 6. Stable Operation: Select control valves and actuators for stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design Cv at design flow to minimum Cv.
 - 7. Control Valve Styles:
 - a. Hydronic Systems:
 - 1) Pipe Sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball or globe style control valves.
- J. Sizing Criteria: Unless otherwise indicated, select control valve size using the following:
 - 1. ISA Standards:
 - a. Control Valve Sizes and Flow Coefficients: ISA 75.01.01.
 - b. Control Valve Characteristics and Rangeability: ISA 75.11.01.
 - 2. Correction Factors: Consider viscosity, flashing, and cavitation corrections when selecting control valves.
 - 3. Ball-Style Control Valves: Select valve size with design Cv at design flow between 65 and 75 degrees of valve full open position and minimum Cv between 15 and 25 percent of open position.
 - 4. Butterfly-Style Control Valves: Select valve size with design Cv at design flow between 65 and 75 degrees of valve full open position and minimum Cv between 15 and 25 percent of open position.
 - 5. Globe-Style Control Valves: Select valve size to pass the design Cv at design flow with not more than 95 percent of stem travel.
 - 6. Modulating Control Valves in Hydronic Systems:
 - a. Select modulating control valve sizes at terminal equipment for a design Cv based on a pressure drop of 5 psig at design flow.
 - b. Calculate control valve minimum Cv at 10 percent of control valve design flow, with a coincident pressure differential equal to the system design pump head.
 - 7. Two-Position Valves: Select two-position control valves for full pipeline size.

2.02 BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

- A. Ball Valves with Threaded Ends, Two Way:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain threaded end two-way ball valves from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Modified equal percentage.

- d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less.
- e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Nominal 600 psig.
 - 2) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2 (DN 38 through DN 50): Nominal 400 psig.
 - 3) Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
 - 4) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psig.
- f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
- 3. Construction for Ball Valves with Threaded Ends, Two Way:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded (NPT) ends.
 - d. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - 1) Material to match ball.
 - 2) Blowout-proof design.
 - 3) For valves installed in insulated piping systems, provide stem extension extending beyond OD of insulation.
 - 4) Provide sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation and the insulation vapor barrier seal.
 - g. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- B. Ball Valves with Flanged Ends, Two Way:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain flanged end two-way ball valves from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Modified equal percentage.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class VI or less.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: ASME B16.34, Class 150.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure: Equal to rating.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psi.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
 - 3. Standards for Ball Valves with Flanged Ends, Two Way: ASME B16.34, MSS SP-72.
 - 4. Features:
 - a. Full port.
 - b. Replaceable ball, seat and stem packing.
 - c. Pressure equalized between body cavity and the line flow.
 - d. Mounting pad for actuator.
 - 5. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 12.
 - b. Body: Cast steel; two pieces.
 - c. End Connections: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
 - d. Ball: Stainless steel; vented.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Stem: Material to match ball; blowout-proof design.
 - g. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure.

- C. Ball Valves with Threaded Ends, Three Way:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain threaded end three-way ball valves from single manufacturer.
 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Modified linear flow.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Nominal 600 psig.
 - 2) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2 (DN 38 through DN 50): Nominal 400 psig.
 - 3) Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
 - 4) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psig.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded (NPT) ends.
 - d. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - 1) Material to match ball.
 - 2) Blowout-proof design.
 - 3) For valves installed in insulated piping systems, provide stem extension extending beyond OD of insulation.
 - 4) Provide sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation and the insulation vapor barrier seal.
 - g. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- D. Ball Valves with Characterized Disk and Threaded Ends, Two Way:
1. Source Limitations: Obtain two-way ball valves, with characterized disk and threaded ends, from single manufacturer.
 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Nominal 600 psig.
 - 2) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/2 through NPS 2 (DN 38 through DN 50): Nominal 400 psig.
 - 3) Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
 - 4) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psig.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
 - g. Rangeability: 300 to 1.
 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded (NPT) ends.
 - d. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.

- f. Characterizing Disk: Glass-filled PTFE, Noryl, polyphthalamide resin, Tefzel or stainless steel.
 - g. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - 1) Material to match ball.
 - 2) Blowout-proof design.
 - 3) For valves installed in insulated piping systems, provide stem extension extending beyond OD of insulation.
 - 4) Provide sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation and the insulation vapor barrier seal.
 - h. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- E. Ball Valves with Characterized Disk and Flanged Ends, Two Way:
- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain two-way ball valves, with characterized disk and flanged ends, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: In accordance with ASME B16.1, Class B.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure:
 - a) Class 125: 175 psig.
 - b) Class 250: 310 psig.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psig.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
 - g. Rangeability: 300 to 1.
 - 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6.
 - b. Body: Cast iron, Class B in accordance with ASME B16.1.
 - c. End Connections: Flanged, Class 125 or 250 in accordance with ASME B16.1.
 - d. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Characterizing Disk: Stainless steel.
 - g. Stem and Stem Extension: Material to match ball; blowout-proof design.
 - h. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- F. Ball Valves with Characterized Disk and Threaded Ends, Three Way:
- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain three-way ball valves, with characterized disk and threaded ends, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristics:
 - 1) A-Port: Equal percentage.
 - 2) B-Port: Modified for constant common port flow.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV or less for A-port; one percent for B-port.

- e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating for Sizes NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Nominal 600 psig.
 - 2) Rating for Sizes NPS 1-1/4 through NPS 2 (DN 32 through DN 50): Nominal 400 psig.
 - 3) Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
 - 4) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 50 psig.
- f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 0 to 250 deg F.
- g. Rangeability: 300 to 1.
- 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded (NPT) ends.
 - d. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
 - e. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Characterizing Disk: Glass-filled PTFE, Noryl, polyphthalamide resin, Tefzel or stainless steel.
 - g. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - 1) Material to match ball.
 - 2) Blowout-proof design.
 - 3) For valves installed in insulated piping systems, provide stem extension extending beyond OD of insulation.
 - 4) Provide sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation and the insulation vapor barrier seal.
 - h. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
- G. Ball Valves with Segmented Ball, Two Way:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain two-way ball valves, with segmented ball, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage or modified equal percentage.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class VI.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: ASME B16.34, Class 150.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure: 250 psig.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): Approximately 1/3 inlet pressure.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Rating: 0 to 250 deg F.
 - g. Rangeability: 300 to 1.
 - 3. Standards: ASME B16.10, ASME B16.34.
 - 4. Features:
 - a. Stem and ball pinned and welded.
 - b. Replaceable ball, seat and packing.
 - 5. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1 to NPS 12.
 - b. End Connections: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges. Female threaded (NPT) ends are also acceptable for valve sizes NPS 2 and smaller.
 - c. Face-to-Face Dimensions: ASME B16.10 or ISA S75.08.02.
 - d. Body: Cast carbon steel.
 - e. Ball: Stainless steel.

- f. Seat: TFM or reinforced PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Stem Packing: PTFE V-rings.
 - i. Label each valve with following:
 - 1) Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2) Body size.
 - 3) Flow directional arrow.
- H. Ball Valves with Segmented Ball, Three Way:
- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain three-way ball valves, with segmented ball, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Arrangement: Two single-port valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical linkage or a single three-way valve with two ports.
 - 3. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Rotary, 0 to 90 degrees.
 - b. Controllable Flow Range: 75 percent open.
 - c. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
 - d. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class VI.
 - e. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: ASME B16.34, Class 150.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure: 250 psig.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): Approximately one-third inlet pressure.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Rating: 0 to 250 deg F.
 - g. Rangeability: 300 to 1.
 - 4. Standards: ASME B16.10, ASME B16.34.
 - 5. Features:
 - a. Stem and ball pinned and welded.
 - b. Replaceable ball, seat and shaft packing.
 - 6. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 3 to NPS 12
 - b. End Connections: Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
 - c. Face-to-Face Dimensions: ASME B16.10 or ISA S75.08.02.
 - d. Body: Cast carbon steel.
 - e. Ball: Stainless steel.
 - f. Seat: TFM or graphite reinforced PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Stem Packing: PTFE V-rings and graphite packing follower.
 - i. Label each valve with following:
 - 1) Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2) Body size.
 - 3) Flow directional arrow.

2.03 GLOBE-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
- 1. Body Dimensions: Comply with ISA 75.08.01.
 - 2. Field Service: Construct the valves to be serviceable from the top with replaceable seats and plugs.
 - 3. Field-Interchangeable Trim:
 - a. Cage Guided Valves: Available with field-interchangeable trim for different valve flow characteristics, such as equal percentage, linear, and quick opening.
 - b. Industrial Valves NPS 1 and Larger: Available with reduced trim one nominal size smaller.
 - 4. Nameplate: Corrosion-resistant, indicating the following:

- a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body and trim size.
 - c. Arrow indicating direction of flow.
- B. Globe Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, Two Way:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain two-way globe valves, NPS 2 and smaller, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Linear stem travel.
 - b. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.
 - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
 - d. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: In accordance with ASME B16.15, Class 250.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure: Equal to pressure rating at maximum temperature.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 30 psig.
 - e. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
 - f. Process Temperature Range:
 - 1) Hydronic: 35 to 248 deg F.
 - 2) Steam: Temperature at saturated steam pressure.
 - g. Rangeability: 100 to 1.
 - 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass; ASME B16.15, Class 250.
 - c. End Connections: Female NPT threaded ends, Unions with solder ends, or Unions with threaded ends.
 - d. Bonnet: Bronze or brass, threaded.
 - e. Plug: Top guided.
 - f. Retain "Brass Trim" Subparagraph below for valves with brass trim.
 - g. Brass Trim:
 - 1) Packing: Self-adjusting Ethylene Propylene Rubber (EPR) rings or PTFE V-ring.
 - 2) Plug: Brass.
 - 3) Seat: Bronze or molded elastomeric disk.
 - 4) Stem: Stainless steel.
- C. Globe Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, Three Way:
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain three-way globe valves, NPS 2 and smaller, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Performance:
 - a. Stem Action: Linear stem travel.
 - b. Flow Characteristic: Linear.
 - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
 - d. Hydronic Pressure:
 - 1) Rating: In accordance with ASME B16.15, Class 250.
 - 2) Close-off Pressure: Equal to pressure rating at maximum temperature.
 - 3) Pressure Differential (Maximum): 30 psig.
 - e. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
 - f. Hydronic Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F.
 - g. Rangeability: 100 to 1.
 - 3. Construction:
 - a. Size Range: NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - b. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass; ASME B16.15, Class 250.
 - c. End Connections: Female NPT threaded ends, Unions with solder ends, or Unions with threaded ends.

- d. Bonnet: Bronze or brass, threaded.
- e. Plug: Top guided.
- f. Brass Trim:
 - 1) Packing: Self-adjusting Ethylene Propylene Rubber (EPR) rings or PTFE V-ring.
 - 2) Plug: Brass
 - 3) Seat: Bronze or molded elastomeric disk.
 - 4) Stem: Stainless steel.

2.04 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

- A. Furnish control valves with factory-installed actuators from control valve manufacturer. Actuators manufactured by listed control valve manufacturers are acceptable subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Actuators for Control Valves in Hydronic Systems: Select actuators to close off against system pump shutoff head.
- C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- D. Voltage:
 - 1. Voltage selection is delegated to professional designing control system.
 - 2. Actuator to deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
 - 3. Actuator to function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- E. Construction:
 - 1. Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
 - 2. 100 up to 400 W: Ground steel gears, oil immersed; shaft-hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy, or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains are to be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel, or cast-aluminum housing.
 - 3. Greater Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- F. Local Field Adjustment: Make spring-return actuators easily switchable from fail-safe open to fail-safe closed in the field without replacement.
- G. Local Manual Override: Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.
- H. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring-return or reversing type.
- I. Modulating Actuators:
 - 1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
 - 2. Control Input Signal:
 - a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position, and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
 - b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportionally to input signal, modulates throughout its angle of rotation, and is suitable for zero to 10 V dc and 4 to 20 mA signals.

- c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to a pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry-contact closure, triac sink, or source controller.
 - d. Programmable Multifunction:
 - 1) Control input, position feedback, and running time are to be factory or field programmable.
 - 2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
 - 3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.
- J. Position Feedback:
 - 1. Where indicated, equip two-position actuators with limit switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
 - 2. Where indicated, equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
 - 3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.
- K. Fail-Safe:
 - 1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
 - 2. Internal spring-return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
 - 3. Batteries, capacitors, and other nonmechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
- L. Integral Overload Protection:
 - 1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
 - 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.
- M. Valve Attachment:
 - 1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve stem without the need for connecting linkages.
 - 2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
 - 3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.
- N. Temperature and Humidity:
 - 1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
 - 2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range is to be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
- O. Enclosure:
 - 1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
 - 2. NEMA 250, Type 2 or Type 4 for indoor and protected applications.
 - 3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
 - 4. NEMA 250, Type 7 or Type 9 for hazardous applications requiring explosion-proof construction.
 - 5. Provide actuator enclosure with a heater and controller where required by application.
- P. Stroke Time:

1. Select operating stroke time to be compatible with equipment and system operation.
 - a. Operate valve from fully closed to fully open position within 30 seconds.
 - b. Operate valve from fully open to fully closed position within 30 seconds.
 - c. Move valve to fail-safe position within 15 seconds.
- Q. Sound: Where actuators are located in tenant-occupied rooms with a room sound level criteria of NC-35 or lower, comply with the following sound levels:
 1. Spring Return: 45 dBA.
 2. Nonspring Return: 45 dBA.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Control Valves:
 1. Select from valves specified in "Control Valves" Article to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support control valves and actuators, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a seismic event, wind, or others forces common to the application.
- D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- F. Fastening Hardware:
 1. Wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.

2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- H. Corrosive Environments:
1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they will be subjected.
 2. Use Type 316 stainless steel tubing and fittings when in contact with a corrosive environment.
 3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
 4. Where control devices are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.04 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Install pipe reducers for control valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to control valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.
- B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- C. Drain Valves:
1. Install drain valves in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve larger than NPS 4.
 2. Install drain valves in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve installed in a three-valve manifold.
- D. Test Plugs: Install pressure temperature test plugs in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve larger than 4 inches.
- E. Valve Orientation:
1. Where possible, install ball and globe valves that are installed in horizontal piping, with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
 2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
 3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping, with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.
- F. Clearance:
1. Locate valves for easy access, and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
 2. Install valves with at least 12 inches of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.
- G. Threaded Valves:
1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
 2. Align threads at point of assembly.

3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.

H. Flanged Valves:

1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt-tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Use same designation at each end for each piece of wire, cable, and tubing for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve and on face of ceiling directly below valves concealed above ceilings.

3.06 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install electrical power to field-mounted control devices requiring electrical power.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Furnish and install raceways.
- E. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.07 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control signal wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control signal wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.08 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed surfaces.

3.09 STARTUP

- A. Control Valve Checkout:
 - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
 - 2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
 - 3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
 - 4. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 5. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 6. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
 - 7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
 - 8. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
 - 9. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

3.10 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 15 seconds.
- C. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923

SECTION 231123
FACILITY NATURAL GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.
 - 5. Pressure regulators.
 - 6. Concrete bases.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: Not more than 2 psig.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code.

1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
 - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
 - 5. Dielectric fittings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
 - 2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for pressure regulator assembly.

1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Owner's written permission.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
 - 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
 - 6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - c. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - d. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1/CSA 6.26.
 - 1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.

- a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84 by qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
 - 3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
 - 5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections are to comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
 - 6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.
- C. PE Pipe: ASTM D2513, SDR 11.
 - 1. PE Fittings: ASTM D2683, socket-fusion type or ASTM D3261, butt-fusion type with dimensions matching PE pipe.
 - 2. PE Transition Fittings: Factory-fabricated fittings with PE pipe complying with ASTM D2513, SDR 11; and steel pipe complying with ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 3. Anodeless Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet.
 - b. Casing: Steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, black steel, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating covering. Vent casing aboveground.
 - c. Aboveground Portion: PE transition fitting.
 - d. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 - 4. Transition Service-Line Risers: Factory fabricated and leak tested.
 - a. Underground Portion: PE pipe complying with ASTM D 2513, SDR 11 inlet connected to steel pipe complying with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B, with corrosion-protective coating for aboveground outlet.
 - b. Outlet shall be threaded or flanged or suitable for welded connection.
 - c. Bridging sleeve over mechanical coupling.
 - d. Factory-connected anode.
 - e. Tracer wire connection.
 - f. Ultraviolet shield.
 - g. Stake supports with factory finish to match steel pipe casing or carrier pipe.
 - 5. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe.
 - a. PE body with molded-in, stainless-steel support ring.
 - b. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - c. Acetal collets.
 - d. Electro-zinc-plated steel stiffener.
 - 6. Plastic Mechanical Couplings, NPS 2 and Larger: Capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - a. Fiber-reinforced plastic body.
 - b. PE body tube.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Acetal collets.
 - e. Stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers.
 - 7. Steel Mechanical Couplings: Capable of joining plain-end PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.

- a. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
- b. Buna-nitrile seals.
- c. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
- d. Factory-installed anode for steel-body couplings installed underground.

2.02 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
 - 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
 - 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
 - 4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
 - 5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
 - 6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
 - 7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 8. Maximum Length: 72 inches.
- B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
 - 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
 - 2. Nitrile seals.
 - 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
 - 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
 - 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.
- C. Y-Pattern Strainers:
 - 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 - 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
 - 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- D. Basket Strainers:
 - 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
 - 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
 - 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- E. T-Pattern Strainers:
 - 1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
 - 2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
 - 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
 - 4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.
- F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.03 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.04 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 5. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
 - 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 - 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 - 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 - 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 - 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 4. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
 5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- G. Valve Boxes:
1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
 2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
 3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
 4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
 5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.05 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
 3. Elevation compensator.
 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
 11. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
- C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.

2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
 5. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 7. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
 8. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
 9. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
 10. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
- D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
 2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
 3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
 4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
 6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
 7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.06 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.07 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.03 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Install pressure gage downstream from each service regulator.

3.04 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations (as allowed per code) unless otherwise indicated, except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures

- such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.05 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground on concrete bases.
- B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
- C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.
- D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
- E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
- F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
- G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

3.06 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.
- E. Do not install valves in return-air plenums.

3.07 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- F. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.08 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 - 5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.09 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.
- B. Identify gas piping with labels every 8'.

3.11 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel flat.
 - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex flat.
 - d. Color: black.
 - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd flat.
 - d. Color: black.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.14 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. See Drawings.

3.15 UNDERGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Connections to Existing Gas Piping: Use valve and fitting assemblies made for tapping utility's gas mains and listed by an NRTL.
- B. Underground:
 - 1. PE valves.

3.16 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 231123

**SECTION 232113
HYDRONIC PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
 - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 2. Steel pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Plastic pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Piping joining materials.
 - 5. Transition fittings.
 - 6. Dielectric fittings.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Other building services.
 - 3. Structural members.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
 - 2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.

2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
 3. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
 4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
 5. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L, ASTM B 88, Type M.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 1. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
 2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 1. Housing: Copper.
 2. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 4. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- F. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.03 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM or nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Housing: Steel.
 - 2. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 - 3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 - 4. Minimum 300-psig working-pressure rating at 230 deg F.
- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.04 PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- B. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM D 2466 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.

2.05 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - a. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
 - a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.06 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:
 - 1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.07 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- B. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- D. Dielectric Nipples:
 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.08 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Mechanical Piping: Reference Mechanical Piping Material Schedule on drawings.
- B. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- Q. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.03 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples or unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges, flange kits, or nipples.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.04 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or

- longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
- 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
 - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
 - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
 - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.
- D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
- 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- E. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- F. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- G. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.05 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal

- threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- K. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
- L. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.06 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections.

3.07 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. Revise this value if closed system

- contains glycol.
- 5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
 - a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
 - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
 - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
- 6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
- 7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
- 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
- 9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
- 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
- 11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
- B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.
 - 1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
 - 2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
 - 3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
- E. Fill systems that have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
 - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: Minimum of <Insert number> percent [ethylene] [propylene] glycol.
 - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: Minimum of <Insert number> percent [ethylene] [propylene] glycol.
 - 3. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: Minimum of <Insert number> percent [ethylene] [propylene] glycol.
 - 4. Glycol Cooling-Water Piping: Minimum of <Insert number> percent [ethylene] [propylene] glycol.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
1. Open manual valves fully.
 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

**SECTION 232300
REFRIGERANT PIPING**

PART - 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, and drawings, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - 1. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 2. Solenoid valves.
 - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - 4. Filter dryers.
 - 5. Strainers.
 - 6. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.08 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.09 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

PART - 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.02 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
 - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
 - 4. Seat: Nylon.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
 3. Operator: Rising stem.
 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Check Valves:
1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
 2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
 3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
 4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
 6. Superheat: Adjustable.
 7. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- H. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.

2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
 3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- I. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
 3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
 4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
- L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina or charcoal.
- M. Mufflers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- N. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.
1. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
 5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- O. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

2.03 REFRIGERANTS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
 - 2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
 - 3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
 - 4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
- C. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART - 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction, Hot-Gas, and Liquid Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Suction, Hot-Gas, and Liquid Lines NPS 3-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.02 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- F. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

- G. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- H. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- I. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
 - 1. Solenoid valves.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 3. Compressor.
- J. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- K. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.03 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 3. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.04 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 2. Use Type BA_g, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.05 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide hanger, support, and anchor products
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.

4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.

D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.07 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.08 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 232513
WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems:
 - 1. Manual chemical-feed equipment.
 - 2. Chemicals.
 - 3. Flushing and Cleaning

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TDS: Total dissolved solids consist of salts and other materials that combine with water as a solution.
- B. TSS: Total suspended solids include both organic and inorganic solids that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
 - 1. Bypass feeders.
 - 2. Water meters.
 - 3. Chemical-treatment test equipment.
 - 4. Chemical material safety data sheets.
 - 5. Chemical Inhibitors for Water
 - 6. Chemicals for Inhibitors and cleaning
 - 7. Corrosion Coupon Rack
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical-treatment equipment, showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to hydronic systems.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Water-Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- D. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider, capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide all hardware, chemicals, and other material necessary to maintain HVAC water quality in all systems, as indicated in this Specification. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating below 250 deg F, dual-temperature water, and chilled water shall have the following water qualities:
 - 1. pH: Maintain a value within 9.0 to 10.5.
 - 2. Total Dissolved Solids: Maintain a value within 1500 to 2400ppm as CaCO₃.
 - 3. Steel Corrosion Inhibitors: Provide sufficient inhibitors to limit mild steel corrosion to 0.5 mils per year.
 - 4. Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Provide sufficient copper and brass corrosion inhibitors to limit copper corrosion to 0.1 mils per year.
 - 5. Scale Control: Provide softened water for initial fill and makeup. Where softened water is not used, provide sufficient scale inhibitors to prevent formation of scale and maintain all scale-forming material in solution.

6. Dispersants: Provide sufficient dispersants to prevent sedimentation of fine particulate matter.
7. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1,000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

2.2 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Provide steel feeders for each closed loop system with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm to lock the top on the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel.
 1. Capacity: 5 gal.
 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

2.3 CHEMICAL-TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounted cabinet for testing pH, corrosion inhibitors, alkalinity, hardness, and other properties recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
 1. Two-station rack for closed-loop systems. Provide mild steel and copper coupons.

2.4 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer, compatible with piping system components and connected equipment, and able to attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical-application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units, so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate. Install all chemical application equipment within a spill-containment area without floor drain.
- B. Install water-testing equipment on wall near water-chemical-application equipment.
- C. Bypass Feeders: Install in each closed hydronic systems, including hot-water heating, chilled water, dual-temperature water and equip with the following:
 - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.
 - 2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
 - 3. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below the feeder inlet.
 - 5. Install a swing check on the inlet after the isolation valve.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirement are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet.

3.4 FLUSHING AND CLEANING

- A. All Systems: Confirm system is operational, filled, started, and vented prior to cleaning. Place terminal control valves in open position during cleaning. Add cleaning chemicals as recommended by equipment manufacturer.
- B. Flush and clean all new and reused piping.
- C. Provide a flush/clean plan for approval. Provide and later remove all temporary bypasses, drains, vents, etc. required to flush and clean the system. Temporary components for flushing and cleaning are not indicated on the drawings.
- D. Flush and clean all closed loop mechanical systems. Provide and install all required cleaning chemicals.
- E. Verify that adequate cleaning chemical was added, that cleaning was effective, and test that cleaning chemicals were properly rinsed from the system. Provide a report certifying that cleaning and rinsing was properly executed.

- F. Provide chemical treatment immediately after each system has been cleaned and flushed. Systems shall not stand filled with fluids for periods longer than 48 hours without beginning flushing and cleaning which shall immediately be followed by the chemical treatment process.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
 - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
 - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of hydronic systems' startup procedures.
 - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
 - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
 - 7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
 - 8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. At six-week intervals following Substantial Completion (for a one year duration), perform separate water analyses on hydronic systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis, advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.
- F. Comply with ASTM D3370 and with the following standards:
 - 1. Silica: ASTM D859.
 - 2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D1067.
 - 3. Iron: ASTM D1068.
 - 4. Water Hardness: ASTM D1126.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above, to inhibit corrosion and scale formation for hydronic piping and

equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:

1. Initial water analysis and HVAC water-treatment recommendations.
2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
3. Periodic field service and consultation.
4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
5. Laboratory technical analysis.
6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232513

**SECTION 233113
METAL DUCTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Sheet metal materials.
 - 4. Duct liner.
 - 5. Hangers and supports.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
 - 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
 - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
 - 6. Fittings.
 - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
 - 8. Seam and joint construction.
 - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
 - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.

12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:
1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For ducts indicated to be constructed of stainless steel, construct of type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.02 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For ducts indicated to be constructed of stainless steel, construct of type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.03 BLACK IRON RECTANGULAR DUCTWORK (TYPE I KITCHEN GREASE EXHAUST)

- A. Ductwork: ASTM B209, hot rolled carbon steel, 0.0598 inch minimum thickness.
- B. Kitchen Exhaust: Kitchen exhaust systems shall meet requirements of NFPA 96 - Removal of Smoke and Grease-Laden Vapors from Commercial Cooking Equipment.
- C. Access Doors and Panels: Access doors or panels for inspection and cleaning purposes, equipped with tight fitting sliding or swinging doors and latches shall be provided in horizontal sections and at each change in direction. Openings shall be in sides of duct with 20 feet maximum spacing. In horizontal sections, lower edge of opening shall be 1-1/2 inches minimum above bottom of duct.
- D. Joints and Seams: Seams, joints and penetrations shall have a liquid tight continuous external weld except where duct stub collar of hood or a listed ventilator is connected to exhaust duct following method illustrated in NFPA 96.
- E. Residue Trap: Provide residue trap with provisions for cleanout at base of each vertical riser.

2.04 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

2.05 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:
 - 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
 - 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 - 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 - 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 - 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 - 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
 - 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 - 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
 - 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform

distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.

- a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.06 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- D. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers.

3.02 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Reference duct schedule on drawings for duct seal class.

3.03 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. If duct system does not pass visual inspection test, test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.07 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.

3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 4. Coils and related components.
 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
 7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.08 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.09 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel
- B. Supply Ducts:
1. See Drawings
- C. Return Ducts:
1. See Drawings
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
1. See Drawings
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
1. See Drawings
- F. Liner:
1. See Drawings
- G. Elbow Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal

and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

- a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
- H. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch:
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 fpm or Higher: high efficiency take off.
 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 fpm or Higher: high efficiency take off.

END OF SECTION 233113

**SECTION 233300
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Manual volume dampers.
 - 2. Control dampers.
 - 3. Static fire dampers.
 - 4. Dynamic fire dampers.
 - 5. Ceiling radiation dampers.
 - 6. Smoke dampers.
 - 7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 8. Corridor dampers.
 - 9. Flange connectors.
 - 10. Duct silencers.
 - 11. Turning vanes.
 - 12. Remote damper operators.
 - 13. Duct-mounted access doors.
 - 14. Duct access panel assemblies.
 - 15. Flexible connectors.
 - 16. Duct security bars.
 - 17. Duct accessory hardware.
 - 18. Non-Insulated flexible ducts.
 - 19. Insulated flexible ducts.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop, dynamic insertion loss, and self-generated noise data. Include breakout noise calculations for high-transmission-loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show sizes and locations of all duct accessories on ductwork shop drawings. Reference section 233113 Metal Ducts for additional ductwork shop drawing requirements.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.02 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers (used where galvanized duct is specified):
 - 1. Performance:
 - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against differential static pressure specified in duct construction schedule for the system in which the damper is installed.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 - 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, galvanized steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge thick minimum.
 - 5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 - 6. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
 - 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
 - 8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers (used where aluminum ductwork is specified):
 - 1. Performance:
 - a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft. against differential static pressure specified in duct construction schedule for the system in which the damper is installed.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Linkage out of airstream.
 - b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 - 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat-shaped, aluminum sheet channels.
 - b. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.

- d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- thick (minimum) aluminum sheet.
- e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- thick (minimum) extruded aluminum.
- 5. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
- 6. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Stainless steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.
- 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- 8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

2.03 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed-blade configuration.
 - 2. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
- B. Performance:
 - 1. Leakage:
 - a. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 2. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
 - 3. Velocity: Up to 3000 fpm.
 - 4. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length, but not less than the duct pressure classification on the duct construction schedule.
- C. Construction:
 - 1. Linkage out of airstream.
 - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 - 3. Frames:
 - a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
 - b. 0.08-inch- thick extruded aluminum, 16-gauge- thick, galvanized sheet steel, or 18-gauge- thick stainless steel. Match damper material with duct material shown in duct construction schedule.
 - c. Mitered and welded or Interlocking, gusseted corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
 - b. Galvanized steel, Stainless steel, or Aluminum. Match damper material with duct material shown in duct construction schedule.
 - c. 16-gauge- thick single skin or 14-gauge-thick air foil dual skin.
 - 5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a.
 - b. Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
 - 6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
 - a.
 - b. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch diameter; galvanized or stainless steel. Match damper material with duct material shown in duct construction schedule.

7. Blade-Linkage Hardware: Zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of air stream.
 8. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
- D. Damper Actuator - Electric:
1. Electric.
 2. UL 873, plenum rated.
 3. Two position or Fully modulating with fail-safe spring return. Reference drawings to determine if damper actuator shall be two position or fully modulating.
 - a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
 4. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
 5. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
 6. Environmental enclosure: Select NEMA rating of enclosure based on the environment for which the enclosure is placed, per NEC requirements.
 7. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with a single-point wiring connection.

2.04 STATIC FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Static and rated and labeled in accordance with UL 555 by an NRTL.
- B. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- C. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- D. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- E. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- F. Blades: Roll-formed galvanized sheet steel, full-length steel blade connectors. Material gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.
- G. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless steel closure spring.
- H. Heat-Responsive Device:
 1. Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.05 DYNAMIC FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled in accordance with UL 555 by an NRTL.
- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000 fpm velocity.

- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream or Multiple-blade type; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed galvanized sheet steel, full-length steel blade connectors. Material gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device:
 - 1. Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

2.06 CEILING RADIATION DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Labeled according to UL 555C by an NRTL.
 - 2. Comply with construction details for tested floor- and roof-ceiling assemblies as indicated in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- B. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, round or rectangular, style to suit ceiling construction; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- C. Blades: Galvanized sheet steel with refractory insulation; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- D. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.
- E. Fire Rating: 1, 2, and 3 hour(s).

2.07 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Label to indicate conformance to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
 - 2. Label to indicate conformance to NFPA 80 and NFPA 90A by an NRTL.
 - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration.
 - 4. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.
 - 5. Factory install damper actuator by damper manufacturer as integral part of damper assembly. Coordinate actuator location, mounting, and electrical requirements with damper manufacturer.
- B. Performance:
 - 1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 511.
 - 2. Leakage:
 - a. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.

3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
4. Velocity: Up to 3000 fpm.
5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.

C. Construction:

1. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
2. Linkage out of airstream.
3. Frame:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. Galvanized sheet steel with welded corners and mounting flange.
 - c. Gauge in accordance with UL listing.
4. Blades:
 - a. Roll-formed, horizontal, v-groove or airfoil, galvanized sheet steel or extruded aluminum.
 - b. Maximum width and gauge in accordance with UL listing.
5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. Silicone rubber.
6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage is to be mounted out of airstream.
8. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve.

D. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - 120 V ac.
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.
4. Two position with fail-safe spring return.
 - a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
 - c. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
5. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
6. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
7. Environmental Enclosure: NEMA 2.
8. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with single-point wiring connection.

E. Accessories:

1. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

2.08 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Label to indicate conformance to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
2. Label to indicate conformance to NFPA 80 and NFPA 90A by an NRTL.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration.

- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000 fpm velocity.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours. All dampers shall be 1-1/2 hour unless noted as 3 hours on drawings.
- D. Performance:
 - 1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCE Publication 511.
 - 2. Leakage:
 - a. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
 - 3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 in. wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inch damper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
 - 4. Velocity: Up to 3000 fpm.
 - 5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.
- E. Construction:
 - 1. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
 - 2. Linkage out of airstream.
 - 3. Frame:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. Galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
 - c. Gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.
 - 4. Blades:
 - a. Roll-formed, horizontal, v-groove or airfoil, galvanized sheet steel or extruded aluminum.
 - b. Maximum width and gauge in accordance with UL listing.
 - 5. Blade Edging Seals:
 - a. Silicone rubber.
 - 6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
 - 7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of airstream.
 - 8. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, or Oil-impregnated stainless steel sleeve.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device:
 - 1. Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links or fire-closure device.
- G. Damper Actuator - Electric:
 - 1. Electric - 120 V ac.
 - 2. UL 873, plenum rated.
 - 3. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.
 - 4. Two position with fail-safe spring return.
 - a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
 - c. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
 - 5. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
 - 6. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
 - 7. Environmental Enclosure: NEMA 2.

8. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with single-point wiring connection.

H. Accessories:

1. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

2.09 CORRIDOR DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:

1. Label to indicate conformance to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
2. Label to indicate conformance to NFPA 90A by an NRTL.

B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000 fpm velocity.

C. Fire Rating: 1, 1-1/2, or 2 hours. Damper shall be 1-1/2 hours unless specified otherwise on the drawings.

D. Performance:

1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA Publication 511.
2. Leakage:
 - a. Class 1: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.

E. Construction:

1. Frame: Hat shaped, galvanized sheet steel, with welded, interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
2. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking or overlapping, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.

F. Heat-Responsive Device:

1. Resettable or Replaceable, rated, fusible links or fire-closure device.
2. Electric resettable link and switch package, factory installed, rated.

G. Damper Actuator - Electric:

1. Electric - 120 V ac.
2. UL 873, plenum rated.
3. Designed to operate in smoke-control systems complying with UL 555S requirements.
4. Two position with fail-safe spring return.
 - a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
 - b. Maximum 15-second full-stroke closure.
 - c. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
5. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
6. Environmental Operating Range:
 - a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.
 - b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.
7. Environmental enclosure: NEMA 2.
8. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with single-point wiring connection.

H. Accessories:

1. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.

2.10 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.11 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Factory fabricated.
 - 2. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Shape:
 - 1. Rectangular straight with splitters or baffles.
 - 2. Round straight with center bodies or pods.
 - 3. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.
 - 4. Round elbow with center bodies or pods.
 - 5. Rectangular transitional with splitters or baffles.
- C. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel, 0.034 thick.
- D. Round Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A653/A653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units up to 24 Inches in Diameter: 22 gauge thick.
 - 2. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 26 through 40 Inches in Diameter: 20 gauge thick.
 - 3. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 42 through 52 Inches in Diameter: 18 gauge thick.
 - 4. Sheet Metal Thickness for Units 54 through 60 Inches in Diameter: 16 gauge thick.
- E. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 galvanized sheet metal, 22 gauge thick, and with 1/8-inch-diameter perforations.
- F. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:
 - 1. Controlled impedance membranes and broadly tuned resonators without absorptive media.
 - 2. Dissipative type with fill material.
 - a. Fill Material: Inert and vermin-proof fibrous material, packed under not less than 5 percent compression or Moisture-proof nonfibrous material.
 - b. Erosion Barrier: Polymer bag enclosing fill, heat-sealed before assembly.
 - 3. Lining: Mylar or Tedlar.
- H. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.
 - 1. Joints: Lock formed and sealed, Continuously welded, or flanged connections.

2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
 3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.
- I. Source Quality Control:
1. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least **2000 fpm** face velocity.

2.12 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- C. Vane Construction:
 1. Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.13 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- B. Tubing: Brass, Copper, or Aluminum.
- C. Cable: Stainless steel.
- D. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- E. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Stainless steel.

2.14 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS – FOR DUCTS OTHER THAN TYPE I OR TYPE II EXHAUST

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel door panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - a. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum frame.
 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges or Continuous and two sash locks.

- c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges or Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges or Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.15 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES – TYPE I AND TYPE II EXHAUST

- A. Access panels used in cooking applications:
 - 1. Labeled compliant to NFPA 96 for grease duct access doors.
 - 2. Labeled in accordance with UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- B. Panel and Frame: Match duct material and thickness.
- C. Fasteners: Steel matching duct material. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96, grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10 inches wg positive or negative.

2.16 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- G. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

2.17 DUCT SECURITY BARS

- A. Description: Field- or factory-fabricated and field-installed duct security bars.
- B. Configuration:

1. Flat frame of 2 by 1/4 inch.
2. Sleeve: 3/16-inch, continuously welded steel frames with 1-by-1-by-3/16-inch angle frame factory welded to one end. To be poured in place or set with concrete block or welded or bolted to wall, one side only. Duct connections on both sides.
3. Horizontal Bars: 1/2 inch.
4. Vertical Bars: 1/2 inch.
5. Bar Spacing: 6 inches.
6. Mounting: Ductwork or other framing.

2.18 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.19 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A480/A480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No. 2 finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, one-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft or control dampers at outlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.
- E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- F. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- G. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.
- H. Install fire, smoke, and combination fire/smoke dampers in accordance with UL listing.
- I. Duct security bars:
 - 1. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
 - 2. Secure duct security bar assembly to building structure as indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.
- J. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors.
- K. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream or downstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. For grease ducts, install at locations and spacing as required by NFPA 96.
 - 8. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 9. Elsewhere as indicated.
- L. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- M. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- N. Label access doors to indicate the purpose of access door.

- O. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- P. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- Q. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors, and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
 - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation, and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.
 - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 233300

**SECTION 233600
AIR TERMINAL UNITS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.
 - 2. Parallel fan-powered air terminal units.
 - 3. Series fan-powered air terminal units.
 - 4. Casing liner.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

2.02 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- B. Casing: Minimum 22-gauge-thick galvanized steel.
 - 1. Casing Liner: Provide casing liner shown on drawings. Reference casing liner subsection in this specification for more information on each liner type.
 - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.

- 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
- D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- E. Attenuator Section (if specified on drawings): Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide absorptive attenuator integral with the air terminal unit, with noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.
- F. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
- G. Direct Digital Controls:
 - 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes. Controller shall be capable of providing the sequence of operation and points listed on the drawings.
- H. Control Sequence: See drawings for control sequences.

2.03 PARALLEL FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Description: Volume-damper assembly and centrifugal fan in parallel arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- B. Casing: Minimum 22-gauge-thick galvanized steel.
 - 1. Casing Liner: Provide casing liner shown on drawings. Reference casing liner subsection in this specification for more information on each liner type.
 - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
 - 5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal, located at plenum air inlet.
- C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
- D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- E. Fan Motor:
 - 1. Type: Electronically commutated motor.
 - 2. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
 - 3. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG-1.
 - 4. Motor Speed: Variable speed.
 - a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with electronic controls.

- F. Filters:
 - 1. Flat, Nonpleated Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide MERV 6 filter with minimum efficiency reporting value is to be in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.
- G. Attenuator Section (if specified on drawings): Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide absorptive attenuator integral with the plenum inlet and discharge outlet of the air terminal unit, of noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.
- H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Locate coil in discharge-air outlet airstream. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
- I. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
 - 1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
 - 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs will match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.
- J. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
- K. Direct Digital Controls:
 - 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller with integrated actuator and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes. Controller shall be capable of providing the sequence of operation and points listed on the drawings.
- L. Control Sequence: See Drawings for control sequences.

2.04 SERIES FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Description: Volume-damper assembly and centrifugal fan in series arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- B. Casing: Minimum 22-gauge-thick galvanized steel.
 - 1. Casing Liner: Provide casing liner shown on drawings. Reference casing liner subsection in this specification for more information on each liner type.
 - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
 - 5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal, located at plenum air inlet.
- C. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.

- D. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- E. Fan Motor:
 - 1. Type: Electronically commutated motor.
 - 2. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
 - 3. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG-1.
 - 4. Motor Speed: Variable speed.
 - a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with electronic controls.
- F. Filters:
 - 1. Flat, Nonpleated Glass Fiber: Factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filter with holding frames. Provide MERV 6 filter with minimum efficiency reporting value is to be in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.
- G. Attenuator Section (if specified on drawings): Casing material and thickness matching associated air terminal unit casing. Provide absorptive attenuator integral with the plenum inlet and discharge outlet of the air terminal unit, of noise transmission loss performance as required in schedules on Drawings.
- H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Locate coil in discharge-air outlet airstream. Provide hydronic heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
- I. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
 - 1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
 - 2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs will match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized in accordance with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted fuse type.
- J. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.
- K. Direct Digital Controls:
 - 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller with integrated actuator and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes. Controller shall be capable of providing the sequence of operation and points listed on the drawings.
- L. Control Sequence: See Drawings for control sequences.

2.05 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner, Fibrous Glass: Fibrous-glass duct liner, complying with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B, and with NAIMA AH124.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: Reference Drawings
 - 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to surface of liner that will form interior surface of duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial

compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.

4. Foil-Faced Liner: Minimum 0.001-inch reinforced, nonporous aluminum foil applied to matted insulation airstream face. Encapsulate all insulation edges with sheet metal angles and channels, or tape.
 5. Solid Metal Liner: Solid galvanized sheet metal encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
 6. Perforated Metal Liner: Perforated galvanized sheet metal encapsulating matted insulation face from airstream.
 7. Solvent or Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.
- B. Casing Liner, Flexible Elastomeric: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C534/C534M, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Minimum Thickness: Reference Drawings
 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 880: Test and rate assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.
- B. Water Coils: Factory pressure test to 300 psig in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.
- B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.
- C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats / sensors.

3.02 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and connect heating coils to supply piping with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return piping with balancing valve and union or flange.

3.03 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.

- B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.04 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.05 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and coil type. Comply with requirements in general mechanical notes.

3.07 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
 - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
 - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
 - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
 - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

SECTION 233713
DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Diffusers
 - 2. Registers
 - 3. Grilles
 - 4. Security Registers and Grilles
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Reference GRD schedule on drawings

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

**SECTION 235216
CONDENSING BOILERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates:
 - 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Where "prorated" is indicated, the boiler manufacturer will cover the indicated percentage of cost of replacement parts. With "prorated" type, covered cost decreases as age of equipment increases.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Wall Hung Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
 - a. Heat Exchanger: 10-years from purchase date.
 - b. Parts: 5-years from purchase date.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 6.8.1-6 and other requirements in Ch. 6 of ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. ASHRAE 90.2 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Ch. 6 of ASHRAE 90.2.

2.02 WALL-HUNG, FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, forced-draft, condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls.
- B. Heat Exchanger: Corrosion-resistant stainless steel.
- C. Combustion Chamber and Flue Pipes: Corrosion-resistant stainless steel or aluminum.
- D. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- E. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner-firing sequence and to prepurge and postpurge the combustion chamber.
- F. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- G. Ignition: Direct-spark ignition or silicone carbide hot-surface ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff and electronic flame supervision.
- H. Integral Circulator (if specified on drawings): Cast-iron body and stainless steel impeller sized for minimum flow required in heat exchanger.
- I. Casing:
 - 1. Jacket: Sheet metal or Plastic, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
 - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
 - 3. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch- thick, insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
 - 4. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.

2.03 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.1 or ASME B31.9
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit with automatic reset.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch- diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- F. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- G. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.

- H. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.
- I. Circulation Pump: Nonoverloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.
- J. ASME CSD-1 required safety components.

2.04 CONTROLS

- A. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
 - 1. Set-Point Adjust: All set points shall be adjustable.
 - 2. Electric, factory-fabricated and factory-installed panel to control burner-firing rate, to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature.
 - a. Include automatic, alternating-firing sequence for multiple boilers to ensure maximum system efficiency throughout the load range and to provide equal runtime for boilers.
- B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
 - 1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
 - 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be automatic-reset type.
 - 3. Blocked Inlet Safety Switch: Manual-reset pressure switch factory mounted on boiler combustion-air inlet.
 - 4. Audible Alarm: Factory mounted on control panel with silence switch; shall sound alarm for above conditions.
- C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
- D. Remote Shutdown Switch: Provide field installed, manually operated remote shutdown switch located just outside the boiler room door and marked for easy shutdown. Provide at every entry/exit door to the boiler room.

2.05 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
 - 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 - 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
 - 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
 - 4. Field power interface shall be to circuit breaker.

2.06 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing capsule assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections.

Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.

- B. Capsule features:
 - 1. All corrosion-resistant material.
 - 2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
 - 3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
 - 4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
 - 5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.
- C. Capsule Configuration:
 - 1. Low-profile design for applications where boiler condensate drain is close to the floor.
 - 2. Easily removed and opened for neutralizing agent replacement.
 - 3. Multiple units may be used for larger capacity.

2.07 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
 - 1. All boiler rooms over 500 square feet shall have a minimum of two (2) exits and shall be located at opposite ends of the boiler room.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 - 2. Install wall-hung boilers where indicated on Drawings using suitable hangers. Comply with manufacturer's mounting instructions.
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service.
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- F. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- G. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapplings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- H. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

3.04 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Boiler Venting:
 - 1. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.
 - 2. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
 - 3. Field fabricate and install boiler vent and combustion-air intake.
 - 4. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
 - 5. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions

3.05 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.06 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
 - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- D. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers.
 - 1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
 - 2. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
 - 3. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 4. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
 - 5. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 235216

SECTION 237416
PACKAGED ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Packaged rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs)
 - 2. Electrical power connections.
 - 3. Controls.
 - 4. Roof curbs.
 - 5. Accessories.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. RTU: Rooftop unit. As used in this Section, this abbreviation means packaged, rooftop air-conditioning units. This abbreviation is used regardless of whether the unit is mounted on the roof or on a concrete base on ground.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 - 8. Include gas furnaces or electric heaters with performance characteristics.
 - 9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System startup reports.
- B. Test and balance reports.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.
 - 2. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged, rooftop air-conditioning unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years (for aluminized steel heat exchangers) and not less than 10 years (for stainless steel heat exchangers) from date of Substantial Completion. Reference RTU schedule for heat exchanger material. If stainless steel heat exchangers are not specified, it should be assumed that aluminized steel heat exchangers can be provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

2.02 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Reference RTU schedule on drawings for capacities and characteristics.

2.03 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU to have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.04 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls: Provide basic unit controls for any units not required to be integrated into the building automation system.
 - 1. Control-voltage transformer.
 - 2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:

- a. Heat-cool-off switch.
 - b. Fan on-auto switch.
 - c. Fan-speed switch.
 - d. Automatic changeover.
 - e. Adjustable deadband.
 - f. set point.
 - g. Degree F indication.
 - h. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
 - i. Data entry and access port to input temperature and humidity set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature and humidity, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.
3. Wall-mounted humidistat or sensor with the following features shall be provided if the unit is equipped with hot gas reheat:
 - a. Set point.
 - b. Indication.
 4. Annunciator Panel for Each Unit:
 - a. Configuration: Unit-mounted.
 - b. Lights to indicate power on, cooling, heating, fan running, filter dirty, and unit alarm or failure.
- B. Controller: Provide BACnet capable DDC controller for any units required to be integrated into the building automation system as indicated on the design drawings.
1. Type: DDC (BACnet)
 2. Controller to have volatile-memory backup.
 3. Safety Control Operation:
 - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire-alarm control panel.
 - b. Fire-Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface to coordinate with operating sequence described in the fire alarm specifications.
 - c. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply-air temperature is less than 40 deg F.
 4. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied schedule of operation.
 5. Unoccupied Period:
 - a. Heating Setback: Reference setpoints on drawings
 - b. Cooling Setback: Reference setpoints on drawings
 - c. Override Operation: Two hours.
 6. Supply Fan Operation:
 - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
 - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
 7. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
 - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor per the control sequence of operations on the drawings. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.
 - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle compressors and condenser fans to maintain setback temperature.
 - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.
 8. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:
 - a. Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycles the compressor.
 9. Gas Furnace Operation:
 - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle, Stage, or Modulate burner to maintain temperature per the sequence of operations.

- b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle, Stage, or Modulate burner to maintain setback temperature.
 - 10. Electric-Heating-Coil Operation:
 - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle, Stage, Modulate coil to maintain temperature per the sequence of operations.
 - b. Unoccupied Periods: Energize coil to maintain setback temperature.
 - c. For Heat Pumps: Operate supplemental electric heating coil with compressor for heating with outdoor temperature below 25 deg F.
 - 11. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
 - a. Occupied Periods: Open to position determined during balancing to provide minimum required outdoor airflow.
 - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.
 - 12. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
 - a. Reference sequence of operations on drawings for economizer operation.
 - 13. Carbon Dioxide Sensor Operation:
 - a. Reference sequence of operations on drawings for economizer operation.
 - 14. Terminal-Unit Relays:
 - a. Provide heating- and cooling-mode changeover relays compatible with terminal control system.
- C. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
- 1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
 - 2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation and diagnostic code storage.
 - 3. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
 - a. Adjusting set points.
 - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
 - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity (as required on drawings).
 - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
 - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
 - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
 - g. Monitoring cooling load.
 - h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
 - i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

2.05 ROOF CURBS

- A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
- 1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Materials: ASTM C1071, Type I or II.
 - b. Thickness: 1-1/2 inch.
 - 2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
 - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
 - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
 - c. Liner materials applied in this location to have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.

- B. Curb Dimensions: Height of curb shall be tall enough to ensure top of curb is a minimum of 8 inches above the top of the finished roofing material at all points on the curb.

2.06 ACCESSORIES

- A. Safeties:
 - 1. Smoke detector.
 - 2. Condensate overflow switch.
 - 3. Phase-loss protection.
 - 4. High and low pressure control.
 - 5. Airflow-proving switch.
- B. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire (for all vertical condenser coil surfaces)
- C. Door switches to disable heating or reset set point when open.
- D. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.
- E. Oil separator.
- F. All other accessories listed on drawings.

2.07 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
 - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 - 2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
 - 3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
 - 4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
 - 2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
 - 3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb (for roof mounted RTU's): Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." and AHRI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in roofing specifications. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- B. Unit Support (when RTU is noted on drawings to be installed on roof rails): Install unit level on structural curbs or steel supports. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. Equipment Mounting (for grade mounted RTU's):
 - 1. Install RTUs on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect condensate drain pans to condensate piping and extend to nearest equipment drain, roof drain, or dry sump. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- D. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union, shutoff valve, and dirt leg with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
 - 1. Where gas line pressure is higher than the burner maximum pressure, install pressure regulator and test port. Regulator shall be downstream of the isolation valve. Test port shall be downstream of the regulator.

3.04 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:

1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.
5. Caulk all gaps between duct openings and roof deck to ensure minimal sound transmission.

3.05 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to electrical specifications.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 1. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
 2. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.06 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to electrical specifications.

3.07 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 3. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
 4. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
 5. Inspect internal insulation.
 6. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
 7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 9. Verify that filters are installed.
 10. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
 11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
 12. Connect and purge gas line.
 13. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
 14. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
 15. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
 16. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 17. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 18. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Start refrigeration system.
 - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.

- c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
- 19. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
- 20. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
- 21. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency:
 - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
 - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
 - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
 - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
 - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
 - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
- 22. Calibrate thermostats.
- 23. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
- 24. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
- 25. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
 - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
- 26. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
- 27. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Return-air volume.
 - c. Relief-air volume.
 - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
- 28. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
 - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
- 29. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
 - a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
 - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
 - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
 - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
 - e. Relief-air fan operation.
 - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
- 30. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

3.08 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.09 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416

SECTION 260519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
 - 4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
 - 5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 2. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 and ASTM B496 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.02 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 2. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.03 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 2. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. RoHS compliant.
 - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Circuits:
 - 1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
 - 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

- H. Armor: Aluminum, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.04 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
 - 2. CommScope, Inc.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.05 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. 3M Electrical Products.
 - 2. NSi Industries LLC.
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: Copper.
 - 2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.
 - 3. Termination: Crimp.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
 - 1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and

larger.

- B. Branch Circuits:
 - 1. Copper, Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.02 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Use of MC cable is strictly limited to locations approved in writing, in advance by engineer of record. All other installations shall be wire in raceway as listed above.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.04 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system.
 - a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 - 4. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch (25-mm) conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.07 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.08 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260523
CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backboards.
 - 2. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 3. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
 - 4. RS-485 cabling.
 - 5. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 6. Control-circuit conductors.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
 - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
 - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As

determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.

- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

2.02 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches (19 by 1220 by 2440 mm). Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with flat black alkyd paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

2.03 CATEGORY 5e BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 2. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: thermoplastic.

2.04 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
 - 2. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
- C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

- D. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- E. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
 - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 - 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 - 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch (1200-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
 - 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 - 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
 - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 - 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
 - 3. Standards.
 - a. Category 5e, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-2.
 - b. Category 5e, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-3.
 - c. Category 6, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-4.
 - d. Category 6, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.5.
 - e. Category 6a, unshielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7-41.
 - f. Category 6a, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
 - 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

- K. Faceplate:
1. Four port, vertical single gang faceplates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
 2. Eight port, vertical double gang faceplates designed to mount to double gang wall boxes.
 3. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
 4. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
 5. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
- L. Legend:
1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
 2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.05 TWIN-AXIAL DATA HIGHWAY CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. Paired, pairs, No. 20 AWG, stranded (7x28) tinned-copper conductors.
 2. Plastic insulation.
 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 4. Plastic jacket.
 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.06 RS-232 CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Belden Inc.
 2. Southwire Company.
- B. PVC-Jacketed, TIA 232-F:
1. Nine, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 2. Polypropylene insulation.
 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
 4. PVC jacket.
 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 6. NFPA 70 Type: Type CM.
 7. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- C. Plenum-Type, TIA 232-F:
1. Nine, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 2. PE insulation.
 3. Aluminum foil-polyester tape shield with 100 percent shield coverage.
 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 5. Conductors are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.07 RS-485 CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
- Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building
SW 23-01-01
06/06/2025
260523 - 4

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.08 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 1. Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 2. PVC insulation.
 3. Unshielded.
 4. PVC jacket.
 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.09 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. Encore Wire Corporation.
 2. Southwire Company.
- B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- E. Class 2 Control Circuits and Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits That Supply Critical Circuits: Circuit Integrity (CI) cable.
 1. Smoke control signaling and control circuits.

2.010 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. Superior Essex Inc.
 2. West Penn Wire.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.011 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test balanced twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- B. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
 2. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 4 inches (102 mm) square by 2-1/8 inches (53 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits 12 inches (75 mm) above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch (2440-mm) dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 11. Support: Do not allow cables to lay on removable ceiling tiles.
 12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
 13. Provide strain relief.
 14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
 15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- E. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches (760 mm) apart.
 3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.
- F. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
 2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
 3. Below each feed point, neatly coil a minimum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of cable in a coil

not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter.

3.04 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

3.05 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
 - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
 - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

3.06 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with code requirements for firestopping.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

3.07 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
- C. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

SECTION 260526
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
 - 1. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of system described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - a. Test wells.
 - b. Ground rods.
 - c. Ground rings.
 - d. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 2. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS and NFPA 70B.
 - a. Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.02 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Emerson Electric Co. (Automation Solutions - Appleton - O-Z/Gedney).
 - 2. Hubbell Incorporated (Burndy).
 - 3. ILSCO.

2.03 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
 - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.04 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual,

tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt or socket set screw.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one-piece clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.
 - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.05 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m).
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 30 inches (750 mm) below grade.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.02 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.03 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.04 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.05 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.

7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 9. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.06 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of **1500 feet (450 m)** except as follows:
1. Fences within 100 Feet (30 m) of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of **750 feet (225 m)**.
 - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet (45 m) on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.

3.07 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.

2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
 - 2. Conduit and cable support devices.
 - 3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
 - 4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
 - 5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
 - 6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.
 - 1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
 - 2. Slotted support systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.
 - 4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.
 - 1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

2.02 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Atkore International (Unistrut).
 - b. Eaton (B-line).
 - c. nVent (CADDY).
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel Type 304, or Stainless steel Type 316.
 - 4. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **zinc-coated or stainless** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1) Eaton (B-line).
 - 2) Hilti, Inc.

- 3) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M).
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.03 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 1. NECA 1.
 2. NECA 101
 3. NECA 102.
 4. NECA 105.
 5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with code requirements for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.02 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533
RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits and fittings.
 - 2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
 - 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 5. Surface raceways.
 - 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
 - b. Atkore International (Allied Tube & Conduit).
 - c. Emerson Electric Co. (Automation Solutions - Appleton - O-Z/Gedney).
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
 4. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
 5. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
 6. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
 7. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
 8. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
 9. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- B. Metal Fittings: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 3. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 4. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: Compression.
 5. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 6. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.02 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Nonmetallic Conduit:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Cantex Inc.
 - b. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated (Raco Taymac Bell).
 - d. Kraloy Fittings.
 - e. Lamson & Sessions.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
1. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
 2. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
 3. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- C. Nonmetallic Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Cantex Inc.
 - b. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated (Raco Taymac Bell).
 - d. Kraloy Fittings.

- e. Lamson & Sessions.
- 2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
- 3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- 4. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- 5. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.03 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
 - 2. Eaton (B-line).
 - 3. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiegmann).
 - 4. nVent (Hoffman).
 - 5. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1, Type 3R, Type 4X, or Type 12 as required by installation use/location unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
 - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.04 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
 - 2. Eaton (B-line).
 - 3. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiegmann).
 - 4. nVent (Hoffman).
 - 5. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.05 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
 2. Eaton (Crouse-Hinds).
 3. Emerson Electric Co. (Automation Solutions - Appleton - EGS).
 4. Emerson Electric Co. (Automation Solutions - Appleton - O-Z/Gedney).
 5. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 6. Hubbell Incorporated (Raco Taymac Bell).
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
1. Material: sheet metal.
 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 4. Covers: Flush in-use.
 5. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb (32 kg).
1. Listing and labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- M. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep), 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep).
- N. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1, Type 3R, Type 4X, or

Type 12 as required by installation use/location, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

P. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1, Type 3R, Type 4X, or Type 12 as required by installation use/location, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.06 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Quazite).
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of polymer concrete.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Quazite).
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".

7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC, IMC, or EMT.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried. Provide long-radius GRC elbows for all underground bends.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4X.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: IMC.
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC or IMC.
 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

hangers and supports.

- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to GRC or IMC before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive

compound prior to assembly.

- P. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- Q. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35-mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 - 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 - 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- V. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per degree C) of temperature change for PVC conduits.
 - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260533 - 8

- expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- W. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between the box and cover plate or the supported equipment and box.
- Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- AA. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- BB. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- CC. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- DD. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- EE. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-up at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260533 - 9

- b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
- 6. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.04 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, Insert depth of frost line below grade at Project site below grade.
- E. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.05 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.06 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260544

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Round sleeves.
 - 2. Rectangular sleeves.
 - 3. Sleeve seal systems.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Pourable sealants.
 - 6. Foam sealants.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ROUND SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves, Steel:
 - 1. Description: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.
- B. Pipe Sleeves, PVC:
 - 1. Description: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- C. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Round:
 - 1. Description: Galvanized-steel sheet; thickness not less than 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm); round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

2.02 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

- A. Sheet Metal Sleeves, Galvanized Steel, Rectangular:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

b. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
- 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than 50 inches (1270 mm) or with one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness must be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.03 SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.
1. Sealing Elements: Nitrile (Buna N) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.04 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
1. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.05 POURABLE SEALANTS

- A. Description: Single-component, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

2.06 FOAM SEALANTS

- A. Description: Multicomponent, liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam. Foam expansion must not damage cables or crack penetrated structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

- a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless sleeve seal system is to be installed or criteria require different clearance.
- 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- D. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral waterstops. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Install sleeve during construction of floor or wall.
 - 2. Install steel pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve seal system. Grout sleeve into wall or floor opening.

3.02 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
- B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
- C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
- D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
 - 2. Labels.
 - 3. Bands and tubes.
 - 4. Tapes and stencils.
 - 5. Tags.
 - 6. Signs.
 - 7. Cable ties.
 - 8. Paint for identification.
 - 9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material

surfaces.

2.02 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green or Green with a yellow stripe.
 - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green two or more yellow stripes.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."
- E. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Black letters on a white field.

2.03 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Champion America.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameter and that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260553 - 2

the following:

- a. Brady Corporation.
- b. Panduit Corp.

- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, polyester flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - 2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 - 3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: Polyester, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
 - 2. Minimum Nominal Size:
 - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
 - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
 - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.04 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameter and that stay in place by gripping action.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Panduit Corp.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameters of and shrunk to fit firmly around item being identified. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Panduit Corp.

2.05 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Champion America.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - c. Panduit Corp.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. LEM Products Inc.
 - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with **yellow and black** stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 3. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
 - 4. Tag: Type I:

- a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - c. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
 - d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
 - e. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 30 lbf (133.4 N) and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).
5. Tag: Type ID:
- a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - b. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).
 - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
 - e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
 - f. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 70 lbf (311.3 N) and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

2.06 TAGS

- A. Write-on Tags:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. LEM Products Inc.
 - b. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
 - 2. Polyester Tags: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
 - 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.07 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - b. Champion America.
 - 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 - 3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
 - 4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Champion America.
 - 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-

- inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
- 3. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
- 4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).

C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
- 2. Engraved legend.
- 3. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.08 CABLE TIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Panduit Corp.
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260553 - 6

interior).

- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- K. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and/or load shedding.
- L. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- M. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."

3. "UPS."
- N. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- O. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Self-Adhesive Labels:
1. On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- R. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- U. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- V. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- W. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- X. Underground Line Warning Tape:
1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- Y. Write-on Tags:
1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
 2. Secure using UV-stabilized cable ties.
- Z. Baked-Enamel Signs:
1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.

AA. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.

BB. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.

CC. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.02 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 2. "POWER."
 3. "UPS."
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use snap-around labels to identify the phase.
 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive wraparound labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260553 - 9

heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.

- H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- J. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- K. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- L. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Baked-enamel warning signs.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- N. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- O. Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs.
- P. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Baked-enamel warning signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer and/or load shedding.
- Q. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Indoor Equipment: Baked-enamel signs.
 - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260923
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Time switches.
 - 2. Photoelectric switches.
 - 3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
 - 4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 - 5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy and vacancy sensors
 - 6. Digital timer light switches.
 - 7. High-bay occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 - 8. Outdoor motion sensors.
 - 9. Lighting contactors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show installation details for the following:
 - a. Occupancy sensors.
 - b. Vacancy sensors.
 - 2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample warranty.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
- B. Software and firmware operational documentation.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Intermatic, Inc.
 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 4. NSi Industries LLC.
- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Contact Configuration: SPST DPST DPDT.
 3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 277-V ac.
 4. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 5. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 6. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.
 7. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with a skip-a-day weekly schedule.
 8. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week.
 9. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 10. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week, plus four seasonal schedules that modify the basic program and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 11. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
 12. Astronomic Time: All channels.
 13. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
 14. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.
- C. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Contact Configuration: SPST, DPST, SPDT, DPDT.
 3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 277-V ac.
 4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
 5. Astronomic time dial.
 6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
 7. Skip-a-day mode.
 8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

2.02 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

260923 - 2

products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
4. NSi Industries LLC.

- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST, DPST dry contacts rated for 1000 W incandescent or 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
- C. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts rated for 24 V ac at 1 A, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with luminaire, power pack, and/or lighting control panelboard.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 4. Mounting: 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded male conduit.
 5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
 6. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.
 - b. Plenum rated.
 7. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting four RJ45 inputs with two outputs rated for 20-A incandescent or LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 16-A ballast or LED at 120- and 277-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - a. With integral current monitoring.
 - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
 - c. Plenum rated.

2.03 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 3. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 4. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 5. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
 6. Sensor Switch, Inc.

- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. Wall and/or Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
 2. Dual technology.
 3. Separate power pack.
 4. Hardwired connection to switch and BAS; and BAS and lighting control system.
 5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 6. Operation:
 - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 8. Power: Line voltage.
 9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 10. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm).
 2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 square feet (220 square meters) when mounted 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.
- D. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
 2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet (4.3 m).
 6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 square feet (220 square meters) when mounted 84 inches (2100 mm) above finished floor.
- E. Dual-Technology Type: Wall and/or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
 4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 2000 square feet (220 square meters) when mounted 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.

2.04 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Legrand North America, LLC (WattStopper).
 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 6. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
 7. Sensor Switch, Inc.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox, with provisions for connection to BAS using hardwired connection.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application, and shall comply with California Title 24.
 2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
 4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA ballast or LED load at 120 V, 1200-VA ballast or LED load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag DT:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 2100 sq. ft (196 sq. m).
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
 3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
 4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
 5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc

- (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
 9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
 10. Color: White.
 11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.
- D. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag IR:
1. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
 2. Sensing Technology: PIR.
 3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
 4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
 5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
 9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
 10. Color: White.
 11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.05 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Legrand North America, LLC (WattStopper).
 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
 5. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 6. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
 7. Sensor Switch, Inc.
- B. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in 10 minute increments.
1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 amps at 277-V ac for ballast or LED, and 1/4 horsepower at 120-V ac.
 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 3. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage.
 4. Color: White.
 5. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.06 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. Legrand North America, LLC (WattStopper).
 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.

5. Sensor Switch, Inc.

B. Description: Solid-state outdoor motion sensors.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application, and shall comply with California Title 24.
2. Dual-technology (PIR and ultrasonic) type, weatherproof. Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm). Comply with UL 773A.
3. Switch Rating:
 - a. Luminaire-Mounted Sensor: 1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent/LED.
 - b. Separately Mounted Sensor: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off." With bypass switch to override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
5. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage type.
6. Detector Coverage:
 - a. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
 - b. Long Range: 180-degree field of view and 110-foot (34-m) detection range.
7. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
8. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
9. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
10. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and help eliminate false "off" switching.
11. Operating Ambient Conditions: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F (minus 40 to plus 54 deg C), rated as "raintight" according to UL 773A.

2.07 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. ABB (Electrification Products Division).
2. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
3. Eaton.
4. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).

B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
4. Provide with control and pilot devices matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.08 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and

Cables."

- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- D. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.02 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.06 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262416
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- B. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
 - 7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
 - 10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in

materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Kitchen/Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
- E. Incoming Mains Location: Bottom.
- F. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- G. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- H. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- I. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or

manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.

- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.03 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type ("hybrid" lighting/power panels not allowed).
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 - 1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only as indicated on drawings.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

2.04 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only as indicated on drawings.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit.

- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- G. Column-Type Panelboards: Single row of overcurrent devices with narrow gutter extension and overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

2.05 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 - 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 - 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
 - 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
 - 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Communication Capability: Integral communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - h. Shunt Trip: 120-V or 24-V as required. Insert voltage trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 75 percent of rated voltage.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

262416 - 4

- i. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - j. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
 - 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified.

2.06 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

2.07 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- C. Mount top of trim 80 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- E. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- F. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- G. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- I. Stub four 1-inch (27-EMT) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (27-EMT) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- J. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.02 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 2. USB receptacles.
 - 3. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
 - 4. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
 - 5. Decorator-style devices, 20 A.
 - 6. Occupancy sensors.
 - 7. Digital timer light switches.
 - 8. Residential devices.
 - 9. Wall-box dimmers.
 - 10. Wall plates.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As specified in construction drawings.
 - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: Red.
 - 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
 - 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: Orange.
- F. Wall Plate Color: As specified in construction drawings.

- G. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.02 COMMERCIAL-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
- B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- C. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.
- D. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.03 USB RECEPTACLES

- A. USB Charging Receptacles:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
 3. USB Receptacles: Dual and quad, USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 1310 and USB 3.0 devices.
- B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex and USB Charging Receptacles:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the line voltage receptacle.
 3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding; NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. USB Receptacles: Dual USB Type A, 5 V dc, and 2.1 A per receptacle (minimum).
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 1310, USB 3.0 devices, and FS W-C-596.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

2.04 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

- A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Type: Feed through.
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
- B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - b. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).

2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Type: Feed through.
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
 4. Type: **Non-feed** through.
 5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
 6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.05 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

- A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- B. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- C. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- D. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- E. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Hubbell Premise Wiring).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is off.
 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.06 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 20 A

- A. Decorator Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- B. Decorator Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- C. Decorator, Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.

4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
 5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.
- D. Decorator Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Comply with UL 20.
- E. Decorator Single-Pole Lighted Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Square face illuminated when circuit is switched off.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.

2.07 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Wall Switch Sensor Light Switch, Dual Technology:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual (ultrasonic and passive infrared) technology.
 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
 4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
 5. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
 6. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
 7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).
 8. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
 9. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
 10. Connections: Integral wireless networking.
- B. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Passive Infrared:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Cooper Industries.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Hubbell Premise Wiring).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using passive infrared technology.

3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: Hard wired.
6. Connections: Wireless.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
10. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

C. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Ultrasonic:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using ultrasonic technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
6. Connections: Integral wireless networking.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of 10 minutes.
10. Able to be locked to Automatic-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux).

2.08 TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

A. Digital Timer Light Switch:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in 10-minute increments.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Integral relay for connection to BAS.

2.09 DIMMERS

A. Wall-Box Dimmers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Eaton (Wiring Devices - Arrow Hart).
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated (Wiring Device-Kellems).
 - c. Legrand North America, LLC (Pass & Seymour).
 - d. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - e. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.

2. Description: Modular, full-wave, solid-state dimmer switch with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
3. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1472.
5. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 - a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices.
6. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.
7. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.010 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- (1-mm-) thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 1. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 2. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 3. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Device Installation:
 1. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
 2. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- D. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
 2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
- E. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- F. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.
- G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
- C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262816
ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Receptacle switches.
 - 4. Shunt trip switches.
 - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 6. Molded-case switches.
 - 7. Enclosures.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.02 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 1. Single throw.
 2. Three pole.
 3. 240 and 600-V ac.
 4. 1200 A and smaller.
 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate fuses per equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.03 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).

- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 and 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.04 RECEPTACLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 240 and 600-V ac, 30, 60, and 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate fuses per equipment manufacturer's recommendations; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: 240 and 600-V ac, 30, 60, and 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between the receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in the on position, inserting any plug other than specified, and turning switch on if an incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into the receptacle.
- E. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
 - 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.05 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton (Bussmann & Edison).
 2. Littelfuse, Inc.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1, UL 50, and UL 98, with Class J fuse block and 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating.
- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 240 and 600-V ac, 30, 60, and 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate fuses per equipment manufacturer's recommendations; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Three Pole, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: 240 and 600-V ac, 30, 60, and 100 A; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; integral shunt trip mechanism; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power source of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, pilot, indicating and control devices.
- F. Accessories:
 1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
 2. Oiltight green ON pilot light.
 3. Isolated neutral lug; 100 percent rating.
 4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
 5. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; coil voltage shall match fire-alarm system.
 6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.
 7. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 8. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 9. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 10. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.06 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. Schneider Electric USA (Square D).
- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which

provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.

- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be series rated. Circuit breaker/circuit breaker combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- F. Lugs shall be suitable for 194 deg F (90 deg C) rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F (75 deg C) temperature rating in NFPA 70.
- G. Standards: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- J. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 2. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 3. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- K. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- L. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 - 3. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - 5. Alarm Switch: One NO contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

2.07 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited

on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1) gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel) copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9).

- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1) directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9). The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Kitchen /Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 9 with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances

for equipment access doors and panels.

- C. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges to values indicated on the Drawings.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS

Table 100.12.

- h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
- j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

E. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

- a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
- c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- d. Verify that the unit is clean.
- e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
- f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

- g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
 - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:
 - 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
 - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
 - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
 - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- F. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
 - 3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263213.13
DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Engine-generator assembly.
2. Diesel engine.
3. Diesel fuel-oil system.
4. Control and monitoring.
5. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
6. Generator paralleling.
7. Alternator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
8. Load bank.
9. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
10. Remote radiator motors.
11. Vibration isolation devices.
12. Finishes.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. ECM: Engine control module.
- B. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- C. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
- D. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour (liters per hour) at 0.8 power factor at 50, 75, and 100 percent of generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute (cubic meters per minute) at 0.8 power factor at 122 deg F cooling system rating. Provide radiator air flow restriction data for ambient rating.

7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.
8. Include calculations confirming submitted model capability at load profile indicated in construction drawing panel schedules.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports.
4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For installer, manufacturer, and testing agency.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified Summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
4. Report of sound generation.
5. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
6. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
 - b. Training plan.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Replaceable Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two

- of each.
- 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
- 4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:

- 1. ISO 9001 certified for design, development, production and service complete product line.
- 2. Produced this type of equipment for a period of at least 10 years.
- 3. Actively maintaining a 24-hour parts and service organization regularly engaged in maintenance contract programs to perform preventive maintenance and service on equipment similar to that specified.
- 4. Furnish a service agreement that includes system operation under simulated operating conditions; adjustment to the generator set, transfer switch, and switchgear controls as required, and certification in the owner's maintenance log of repairs made and functional tests performed on all systems.
- 5. Engine-driven generator assembly furnished by a single manufacturer, responsible for design, coordination, and testing of the complete system.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

- 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- 2. The generator set to include a standard warranty covering three (3) years or unlimited hours standby (United States-only) or two (2) years or 8700 hours prime, whichever occurs first (hours or years), to warrant against defective material and workmanship in accordance with the manufacturer's published warranty from the date of initial startup.
- 3. Extended limited warranties that can be obtained include: Stationary Standby five (5) year or 3000 hours, Stationary Standby five (5) year or 3000 hours comprehensive, and Stationary Standby ten (10) year or 3000-hour major components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide engine generator as specified in construction drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- 1. Caterpillar, Inc.; Electric Power Division.
- 2. Cummins Power Generation.
- 3. MTU Onsite Energy Corporation.
- 4. Kohler Power Systems.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- B. NFPA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 30.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 37.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200 "Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies."
- D. CSA Compliance: Comply with CSA.
- E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 2 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- F. Noise Emission: Comply with requirements for acceptable noise level at adjacent property boundaries.
 - 1. Maximum sound pressure emitted by engine generator within sound-attenuating enclosure as specified in drawings at a distance of 23 ft. (7 m) while operating at 100 percent load and including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- G. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system to withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: 5 deg F (Minus 15 deg C) to 77 deg F (25 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 ft..

2.03 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, liquid-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- C. Power Rating: Standby.
- D. EPSS Class: Engine generator to be classified as described in construction drawings in accordance with NFPA 110.
- E. Nameplate Rating: As indicated in construction drawings. Specified size is based on engineer's calculations for basis of design product. Substituted equipment must meet requirements for loads as indicated in construction drawings. All substitutions require full load calculations to be provided with product data submittal. Equipment provider is responsible for ensuring submitted equipment will meet performance requirements under loads indicated in construction drawings
- F. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- G. Frequency: 60 Hz.
- H. Voltage: As indicated in construction drawings.

- I. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire, wye.
- J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- K. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
- L. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
 - 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- M. Engine Generator Performance:
 - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
 - 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease and meets ISO8528-5, Class G2 for standard loads. Voltage to recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within six seconds.
 - 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
 - 4. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease and meets ISO8528-5, Class G2 for standard loads. Frequency to recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
 - 5. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral may not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined in accordance with NEMA MG 1, may not exceed 50.
 - 6. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system to supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
 - 7. Start Time:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.
- N. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:
 - 1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
 - a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
 - 2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
 - 3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 15 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease and meets ISO8528-5, Class G3 for sensitive loads. Voltage to recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within four seconds.
 - 4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.

5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 7 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease and meets ISO8528-5, Class G3 for sensitive loads. Frequency to recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line and line to neutral may not exceed 5 percent total or 3 percent for a single harmonic. Telephone influence factor, determined in accordance with NEMA MG 1, may not exceed 50.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system to supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
8. Excitation System: Performance to be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
9. Start Time:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.

2.04 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D975, diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Minimum Standby Load Factor Rating: 85 percent.
- D. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.
 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to particles that may damage engine per manufacturer's written instructions while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit to be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Closed Crankcase Ventilation: System: Prevents crankcase oil vapor from draining or escaping the engine.
 4. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- E. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-tank type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with UL 499 and with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- F. Integral Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
 1. Modular radiator cores for ease of maintenance, repair, or replacement.
 2. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 3. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant to 110 percent of capacity.
 4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 5. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 6. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant material.

- a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 215 deg F (102 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24-V dc electric, with negative ground.
 1. Redundant Starting System: As indicated in construction drawings, supply with redundant starting motor, battery, and battery charger fully independent from the main starting system. Generator controls to alternate between starting systems six times before entering a fault condition. Best battery system is not an acceptable alternative.
 2. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
 3. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
 4. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 5. Battery Heater: Thermostatically controlled heater to be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F (10 deg C) regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
 6. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and continuous rating per manufacturer's standard.
- I. Battery Charger:
 1. Source Limitations: Obtain battery charger from engine-driven generator manufacturer.
 2. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1236 for Category BBHH.
 3. CE Certified.
 4. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 110.
 5. Environmental Conditions: Battery charger to withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C) with full charger output available up to 122 deg F (50 deg C).
 - b. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
 - c. Altitude: Meets full performance requirements from sea level to 5000 ft. (1600 m). Chargers installed at higher altitudes may automatically derate output power to prevent overheating of internal components but remain operable.
 6. Charger Operation: Current-limited, constant-voltage, automatic-boost-type charger designed for lead-acid batteries, with the following features:
 - a. Automatic three-stage charge cycle for up to three independent batteries simultaneously per charger.
 - b. Output Voltage Regulation: Charger regulates output to within plus or minus 0.5 percent of manufacturer-provided voltage settings despite variations of input voltage, input frequency, and output current.
 - c. Battery Thermal Compensation: Battery temperature compensation with adjustable slope, factory set at minus 0.18 percent per degree C, and equipped for sensing battery temperature. Include battery temperature sensor mounted on battery negative terminal.
 - d. AC Input: Charger operates from any 45- to 65-Hz ac source with voltage ranging

from 105- to 264-V rms.

7. LCD Digital Display: AC input voltmeter, DC output voltmeter, and ammeter (1 percent accuracy).
8. LED Lamp Indicators: Current limit, AC ON, and charger fail.
9. Charger Fail Alarm Contact: Voltage-free (dry type) form "C" output.
10. Filtered output for type VRLA AGM batteries.
11. Charger Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 (IP20), wall mounted and rated for generator duty with charger enclosure vibration resistance.

2.05 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Piping: Fuel-oil piping to be Schedule 40 black steel.
Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel may not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- B. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- C. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- D. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- E. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Complying with UL 142 and including the following features:
 1. Steel Channel Support System: Reinforced steel box channel for generator support. Full height gussets at either end of channel and at generator mounting locations.
 2. Fuel Level Gauge: Direct-reading, UL-listed, magnetic fuel level gauge with a hermetically sealed, vacuum-tested dial.
 3. Low-Fuel Alarm Contact: Float-type switch for remote or local annunciation of a low-fuel-level condition.
 4. Fill Tube: 2-inch (25-mm) NPT opening with lockable cap.
 5. Leak detection in interstitial space.
 6. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
 7. Fill-pipe spill containment, minimum capacity 5 gal. (19 L).
 8. Emergency inner- and outer-tank UL-listed relief vents sized in accordance with American Petroleum Institute Standard No 2000 with an opening pressure of 0.5 psig (3.5 kPa) and full opening pressure of 2.5 psig (17 kPa).
 9. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.06 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of the same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When the engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.
- B. Comply with UL 508A.

C. Configuration:

1. Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gauges to be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method to isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel must be powered from the engine generator battery.

D. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated 7-inch graphical touch screen TFT display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Controller Face Ingress Protection: IP 65.
3. Operating Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 70 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 21 deg C).
4. Maximum Operating Humidity: 95 percent non-condensing.
5. Corrosion Resistant: Tested in accordance with ASTM B117 (salt spray test).
6. Controller Features:
 - a. Mode Selector: Allowing selection of one of the following modes:
 - 1) Off/Reset: Prohibits the generator from starting and resets shutdowns. In this mode the controller does not respond to remote start and stop commands.
 - 2) Manual: Allows user to locally start and stop to operate the generator. In this mode the controller does not respond to remote start and stop commands.
 - 3) Auto: Allows generator to start and stop based on remote commands. In this mode the generator does not respond to manual start and stop commands.
 - b. Emergency Stop Switch: Latch-type remote stop switch, red in color with mushroom-type head. Depressing the stop button will immediately stop the generator set and lock out any automatic remote starting.
 - c. Audible Alarm: Horn sounds for specific warning and shutdown conditions.
 - d. Alarm Silence/Lamp Test Pushbutton: Silences audible alarm when depressed. All controller indicating lights are simultaneously illuminated while actuated.
 - e. Fault Light: LED indicating abnormal conditions:
 - 1) Yellow: Active warning condition or mode selector switch not in automatic.
 - 2) Red: Active shutdown condition.
 - f. Real-time clock and calendar for time stamping events.
 - g. Load Management:
 - 1) Programmable outputs to command the connect and disconnect of loads based on system state:
 - a) Loads connected based on available capacity.
 - b) Loads disconnected at system startup.
 - c) Loads disconnected based on a maximum kW setting or under frequency setting.
 - 2) Support up to 16 load steps.
 - h. Engine Control Features:
 - 1) Programmable engine start delay.
 - 2) Programmable engine cool-down delay.
 - 3) Programmable warm-up delay based on time or engine temperature.
 - 4) Programmable idle speed.
 - 5) Programmable cyclic cranking with adjustable on time, off time, and number of cycles.

- i. Event Logging:
 - 1) Maintain record of a minimum of 1,000 events with date and time locally for warning and shutdown faults.
 - 2) Event log easily available for download onto USB storage device or PC.
 - 3) Event Snapshot: Capture 15 seconds of critical data around the time of a fault or warning. Data to be viewable on the controller and downloadable.
 - j. Data Logging: Capable of time-based recording of customized parameters.
 - 1) Parameters selectable from all monitored parameters.
 - 2) Sample period configurable from one second to one day.
 - 3) Collected data stored on USB storage device plugged into the control panel.
 - k. Minimum of three user access levels.
 - l. Password protection to prevent unauthorized modification to system parameters.
 - m. Customizable Interface:
 - 1) Overview Screen: Dedicated screen allowing user to display up to 16 parameters for immediate access.
 - 2) Favorites: User customizable menu set up for enhanced usability.
7. Monitoring Instruments: Accessible through the digital engine generator controller and viewable during operation.
- a. Engine-coolant temperature.
 - b. Battery voltage.
 - c. Running-time meter.
 - d. Engine speed.
 - e. Oil pressure.
 - f. Fuel level (with optional sensor).
 - g. Fuel pressure.
 - h. Fuel consumption rate.
 - i. Crankcase pressure.
 - j. Oil temperature.
 - k. Coolant level.
 - l. Coolant pressure.
 - m. Common rail fuel pressure.
 - n. Fuel temperature.
 - o. Intake air temperature.
 - p. Exhaust temperature (with optional sensor).
 - q. Charge air pressure.
 - r. Charge air temperature.
 - s. Ambient temperature.
 - t. AC output voltage including all phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral quantities, 0.25 percent accuracy.
 - u. AC output current for each phase, 0.25 percent accuracy.
 - v. AC frequency, 0.25 percent accuracy.
 - w. Power factor total and per phase with leading/lagging indication.
 - x. kW total and per phase, 0.5 percent accuracy.
 - y. kVARS total and per phase, 0.5 percent accuracy.
 - z. kVA total and per phase, 0.5 percent accuracy.
 - aa. kW hours.
 - bb. Generator duty level (actual kW loading divided by kW nameplate).
8. Service Data: Stored in the controller and available for display.
- a. Generator model number and serial number.

- b. ECM serial number.
 - c. Alternator part number.
 - d. Engine model number and serial number.
 - e. Controller serial number and firmware version.
- 9. Operational Records: Stored in controller beginning at system startup.
 - a. Total run-time hours.
 - b. Total loaded hours.
 - c. Total unloaded hours.
 - d. Total kW hours.
 - e. Controller hours.
 - f. Controller run-time hours.
 - g. ECM run-time hours.
 - h. Number of starts.
 - i. Number of crank attempts.
 - j. Last crank duration.
 - k. Last start runtime duration.
 - l. Last start date and time.
 - m. Last stop date and time.
- 10. Maintenance Records: Stored in controller beginning at system startup, user resettable to zero.
 - a. Total run-time hours since last maintenance.
 - b. Total loaded hours since last maintenance.
 - c. Total unloaded hours since last maintenance.
 - d. Total kW hours since last maintenance.
- 11. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm indication, including the following:
 - a. Mode selector switch not in automatic position.
 - b. Overcrank shutdown.
 - c. Low lubricating-oil pressure warning.
 - d. Low lubricating-oil pressure shutdown.
 - e. Low coolant temperature warning.
 - f. High engine temperature warning.
 - g. High engine temperature shutdown.
 - h. Overspeed shutdown.
 - i. High fuel level warning.
 - j. Low fuel main tank.
 - 1) Low-fuel-level alarm to be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
 - 2) Critically low-fuel-level warning.
 - k. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 - l. Coolant high-temperature warning.
 - m. Coolant high-temperature shutdown.
 - n. ECM Digital Trouble Codes warnings.
 - o. ECM Digital Trouble Codes shutdown.
 - p. Loss of ECM Communications shutdown.
 - q. ECM mismatch shutdown.
 - r. Battery high-voltage warning.
 - s. Battery-charger malfunction warning.

- t. Battery low-voltage warning.
- u. Remote manual stop shutdown.
- v. Local manual stop shutdown.
- w. Alternator protection shutdown.
- x. Overcurrent warning.
- y. Overcurrent shutdown.
- z. Under frequency warning.
- aa. Under frequency shutdown.
- bb. Over frequency warning.
- cc. Over frequency shutdown.
- dd. Over power warning.
- ee. Over power shutdown.
- ff. Under voltage warning.
- gg. Under voltage shutdown.
- hh. Over voltage warning.
- ii. Over voltage shutdown.
- jj. User-defined input warning.
- kk. User-defined input shutdown.
- ll. No oil pressure signal shutdown.
- mm. No speed sensor signal shutdown.
- nn. Fail-to-start shutdown.

E. Connection to Datalink:

- 1. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via ModBus RTU, ModBus TCP, BACnet, or SNMP ensuring compatibility with installed BAS.

F. Supporting Items: Sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices located on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

G. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated. Push button must be permanently labeled and protected from accidental operation.

H. Remote Alarm Annunciator: LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions must identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal must sound for each alarm condition in accordance with NFPA 110. The silencing switch in face of panel must silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Controls to include "Lamp Test" momentary switch wired to illuminate all LED indicator lights regardless of alarm state while switch is on. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

I. Start Signal Wiring Integrity Monitor: UL-listed modular system to monitor condition of generator remote start circuit(s), annunciate faults, and start generator in accordance with NFPA 70, Article 700.10(D)(4).

- 1. Output Contacts: Two form "C" contacts, one for engine start and one for start circuit alarm.

2.07 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices to be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS to be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices considers both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
 2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS to be accessible only to authorized personnel.
- B. Generator Overcurrent Protective Device:
1. Molded-case circuit breaker, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489:
 - a. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 - b. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 - c. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices as indicated in construction drawings.
 - d. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.
- C. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit to continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch opens the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:
1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts to be available for load shed functions.
 2. Tested to AC output short-circuit requirements in accordance with UL 6200.
 3. Energy Reduction Maintenance Switch/Mode: Where required by and in accordance with NFPA 70, Article 240.87.
- D. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.

2.08 ALTERNATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Maximum Temperature Rise: 130 deg C at full load.
- C. Drive: Alternator shaft to be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter to be rotated integrally with alternator rotor.
- D. Electrical Insulation: Class H.
- E. Construction to prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation.
- F. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

- H. Voltage Regulator: Microprocessor-based, high-speed digital voltage regulator, separate from exciter, with three-phase, true RMS sensing, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
 - 1. Maintain steady-state voltage within 0.25 percent from no load to full load.
 - 2. Adjusting Feature on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 10 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- I. Alternator Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

2.09 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

- A. Description:
 - 1. Prefabricated or pre-engineered, aluminum-clad, integral structural-steel-framed, enclosure; erected on concrete foundation.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosure from engine-driven generator manufacturer.
- C. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads up to 186 mph.
- D. Minimum Snow Load Rating: 70 psf.
- E. Sloped roof to prevent pooling.
- F. Stainless steel latches, hinges, and hardware on external panels of enclosure.
- G. Access doors and panels rubber sealed to prevent water intrusion and minimize noise.
- H. Hinged Doors: Lockable; keyed alike with recessed locks.
- I. External, weatherproof, recessed-mounted emergency stop pushbutton.
- J. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation with adjustable louvers offering down flow and horizontal air tuning.
- K. Load Center: 200 A, three-phase, 120/208 V ac, 12 space with main circuit breaker.
- L. Convenience Outlets: Two 20 A, 125 V ac, GFCI-protected duplex receptacles.
- M. AC Lighting: Provide weather-resistant LED lighting with 30 fc average maintained with control switches at each access door.
- N. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.
- O. Insulation Flammability Classification: UL 94 HF1.
- P. Muffler Location: Complete exhaust system located within enclosure.
- Q. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits.

1. Inlet Plenum: Vertically louvered and acoustic-lined plenum, constructed from a minimum of 0.125-inch- (3-mm-) thick formed heavy-duty aluminum panels.
 2. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Stormproof and drainable louvers limiting entry of rain and snow.
 3. Outlet Plenum: Acoustic-lined plenum, constructed from a minimum of 0.125-inch- (3-mm-) thick formed heavy-duty aluminum panels with 90-degree angle to discharge air up.
 4. Optional: Automatic motorized, aluminum cooling-air inlet dampers and galvanized-steel, gravity-activated dampers at discharge. Dampers to be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
- R. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.
1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
- S. Convenience Outlets: Factory-wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.
- T. Catwalk: Full-length 48" wide catwalk with stairs and railings for access to all doors along both sides level with the bottom of the enclosure is required for maintenance. Treads to be slip-resistant. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.23.

2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
1. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.
- B. Vibration isolation devices may not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.11 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Heavy-duty, high-durability, fade-, scratch- and corrosion-resistant finish achieved through a multi-stage finishing process from the genset manufacturer including:
1. Pre-cleaning: Enclosure components cleaned with a multi-stage cleaning process to remove grease, grit, and grime from parts then subjected to a conversion coating process to prepare the metal for paint adhesion.
 2. Primer: All enclosure parts to receive primer.
 3. Finish Coating: A combination of powder and/ or liquid baked paint for superior finish, durability, and appearance.
 4. Minimum Enclosure Corrosion Resistance: 1000 to 3000 hours salt spray test in accordance with ASTM B117.
 5. Powder and/ or liquid coat for fading and abrasion resistance.
- B. Subbase Tank: Coating for corrosion protection and adequate surface grip from the genset manufacturer.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with IEEE 115 and with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
 1. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
 2. Load Test: 25, 50, 75 and 100 percent rated load.
 3. Single-step load pickup.
 4. Safety shutdown.
 5. Overcrank.
 6. Locked rotor.
 7. Mechanical Readings: Oil pressure, ambient temperature, and coolant temperature.
 8. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than two working days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without written permission.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

- D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- E. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- C. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.05 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator whether neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location or is installed as a separately derived source per NFPA 70.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
 - 1) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
 - 2) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
 - 2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
 - 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

- a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
 6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 percent step-load increases and decreases and verify that performance is as specified.
 7. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at eight locations 23 ft. from edge of the generator enclosure, and compare measured levels with required values.
- C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
 - D. Test instruments to have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
 - E. Leak Test: After installation, inspect exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
 - G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.
 - J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
 - K. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load.
 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies

detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.07 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service to include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts to be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.08 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213.13

SECTION 265200
SOLID STATE LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

- A. Section includes, but is not necessarily limited to, the furnishing and installation of solid state lighting (SSL) Luminaires (herein referred to as Luminaires) applied to the illumination of interior and exterior spaces. Luminaires shall be listed in accordance with national recognized testing laboratories (NETLs) approved by the United States Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.02 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Specification Section 260923 – “Lighting Control Devices”.

1.03 DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS

- A. The terms and standards used or referenced herein are defined as follows:
1. ANSI-C78.377 - American National Standard for Electric Lamps – Specifications for the Chromacity of Solid State Lighting (SSL) Products.
 2. ANSI-C82.11 - American National Standard for Lamp Ballasts – High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts.
 3. ANSI-C82.SSL1 - SSL Drivers (in ANSI development)
 4. CALiPER - Commercially Available LED Product Evaluation and Reporting ‘A’ US DOE program for the testing and monitoring of commercially available LED Luminaires and lights.
 5. CCT - Correlated Color Temperature: Visible light characteristic of comparing a light source to a theoretical, heated black body radiator; measured in Kelvin.
 6. Cd - Candela: Unit of measurement of light intensity. Chromaticity The property of color of light.
 7. Fc - foot-candle. Unit of illuminance.
 8. IEC-EN-61000-6-3 - International Electrotechnical Commission – Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Generic Standards – Emission Standard for residential, commercial and light-industrial environments.
 9. IEEE C62.41.1 - IEEE Guide on the Surge Environment in Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits.
 10. IEEE C62.41.2 - IEEE Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000V and less) AC Power Circuits.
 11. IES-LM-79-08 - Illuminating Engineering Society – Approved Methods: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products.
 12. IES-LM-80-08 - Illuminating Engineering Society – Approved Methods: Measuring Lumen Maintenance of LED Light Sources.
 13. IES LM-82-12 - Illuminating Engineering Society – Approved Methods: Characterization of LED Light Engines and LED Lamps for Electrical and Photometric Properties as a Function of Temperature.
 14. IES-TM-21 - Method for determining an LED luminaire or integral replacement lamp’s expected operating life, based on initial performance data collected per IES- LM-80.
 15. L80 - The extrapolated life in hours of the luminaire when the luminous output depreciates 20 percent from initial values.
 16. LED - Light Emitting Diode.
 17. METS - Material Engineering and Testing Services of the Translab. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association.

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

265200 - 1

18. NVLAP - National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program. A program under the US DOE to accredit independent testing laboratories to qualify.
 19. Power Factor - The ratio of the real power component to the total (complex) power component.
 20. Rated power - Power consumption that the luminaire was designed and tested for at ambient temperature.
 21. SPD - Surge Protection Device. A subsystem or component(s) that can protect the unit against short duration voltage and current surges.
 22. SSL - Solid-State Lighting.
 23. THD - Total Harmonic Distortion. The amount of higher frequency power on the power line.
- B. Except as herein specified or as indicated on the Drawings, the work of this section shall comply with the following:
1. ANSI-UL Standards
 - a. 924 – Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
 - b. C78.377 – Chromacity of Solid State Lighting (SSL) Products
 - c. C82.11 – High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts
 - d. C82.SSL1 – SSL Drivers
 2. IEC
 - a. EN-61000-6-3 – EMC Emission Standards
 3. NFPA
 - a. 70-NEC
 - b. 101-Life Safety
 4. Standards as listed and referenced in this Specification.

1.04 FIXTURE SCHEDULE

- A. Provide fixtures as specified in light fixture schedule.
- B. Substitutions of equal manufacturers will be accepted; prior approval is not required. The lighting equipment specified herein has been carefully chosen for its ability to meet luminous performance requirements of this project. Substitutions are the responsibility of the contractor to ensure aesthetics, lighting performance, and electrical performance match that of the specified fixtures. Architect and engineer reserve the right to reject substituted fixtures and require resubmittal with no cost change to owner.
- C. Site photometric calculations must be provided in conjunction with lighting substitutions to verify luminous performance vs. specified fixtures and the substituted luminaires accordance with local ordinances.
- D. This Contractor shall include in his Base Bid spare materials for all lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballast installed on the project. Refer to drawings for additional information regarding spare stock. Turn this equipment over to the Owner at completion of the project. Provide a typewritten label on each fixture with lamp ordering code number for Owner's future maintenance replacement. Locate label so that it can be seen from normal viewing angle.
- E. Once Bids and Shop Drawings are approved, all lighting is to be ordered according to construction schedule and lead times.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings and manufacturers' data for the following items in accordance with the conditions of the contract and as specified below.

1. Shop drawings shall be submitted with product datasheets that include the following information:
 - a. General device descriptions
 - b. Dimensions
 - c. Wiring details
 - d. Nomenclature
 - e. Operating temperature range
 - f. System efficacy
 - g. Rated life
 - h. Rated output
 - i. Input wattage
 - j. Inrush current
 - k. THD
 - l. Power factor
 - m. Warranty
 - n. CCT
 - o. The rated life
 - p. Lumen output
 - 1) This information shall be provided for the actual lumen package and driver combination specified. Provide information regarding the effects of temperature on the rated life and lumen output. If applicable, the submittal shall also include the US Department of Energy Lighting Facts label.
2. Shop drawings shall include a complete listing of all luminaires on a single sheet. This listing shall contain the luminaire type, manufacturer's catalog number, applied voltage, and wattage.

1.06 WARRANTY

- A. The manufacturer shall provide a warranty against loss of performance and defects in materials, finishes, and workmanship for the Luminaires and all components for a minimum period of 5 years after acceptance of the Luminaires. Replacement Luminaires shall be provided promptly after receipt of Luminaires that have failed at no cost to the customer. All warranty documentation shall be provided to customer prior to random sample testing.
- B. Failure of the LED light source shall be defined as failure or negligible output of 10% or more individual LEDs within the LED array, bar, etc.

1.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect lighting fixtures and work against dirt, water or mechanical damage before, during, and after installation. Damage to fixtures prior to final acceptance shall be repaired or replaced at no cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND FIXTURES

- A. General
 1. Provide all lighting fixtures in accordance with Lighting Fixture Schedule and as indicated and required on Drawings.
 2. Fixture catalog numbers only indicate type and style. Provide each fixture complete with proper fixture trim, levelers, mounting brackets, flanges, plaster rings, glassware and accessories for complete installation as required for type of ceiling and room finish schedules.
 3. All plastic diffusers used in lighting fixtures shall be manufactured of 100 percent virgin

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

265200 - 3

- acrylic plastic, polycarbonate, or as otherwise noted.
4. Provide approved fireproof enclosures UL rated (UL 0529) where recessed in fire rated ceilings.
 5. Provide gaskets as required to prevent light spill between frames and ceilings.
 6. Provide "wet" labels on all fixtures installed outdoors or in moist areas.
 7. Provide continuity of ground on all fixtures used as raceways and mounted end to end.
 8. All metal parts to be chemically treated with a rust resistant phosphatized solution, internal components and reflecting surfaces to have a factor of minimum 90%.
 9. Provide luminaires, completely factory-assembled and wired and equipped with necessary light sources, drivers, wiring, shielding, reflectors, channels, lenses, etc., and deliver to job ready for installation.
 10. Luminaire Reflector Care: Luminaires with Alzak reflectors shall be installed with Mylar cover over reflectors. Cover shall be UL listed for temporary lighting. Upon completion of work, remove Mylar cover with white glove and blow clean reflectors.
 11. Finish: Porcelain or baked enamel finish matte white on interiors with minimum test reflectance of 90% matte white finish or as specified in visible exterior. Thoroughly clean base metal and bonderize after fabrication.
 12. Where utilized as raceway, luminaires shall be suitable for use as raceways. Provide feed through splice boxes where necessary. Wiring shall be rated for 90 degrees Centigrade.

B. Luminaires:

1. Each luminaire shall consist of an assembly that utilizes LEDs as the light source. In addition, a complete luminaire shall consist of a housing, LED array, and electronic driver (power supply). If required, components such as the LED array and driver shall be modular and replaceable without removing the luminaire.
2. Each luminaire shall be rated for a minimum operational life as specified on lighting fixture schedule or per basis of design luminaire, as defined by IES LM-80 and TM-21.
3. Each luminaire shall be designed to operate at an average operating temperature of 25°C.
 - a. The typical operating temperature range shall be -10°C to +25°C, unless otherwise specified on lighting fixture schedule and Drawings.
 - b. Some parameters and tests (such as IESNA standard LM-80-08) shall be conducted at different ambient temperatures.
4. Each luminaire shall meet all parameters of this specification throughout the minimum operational life when operated within the rated temperature range.
5. The individual LEDs shall be connected such that a catastrophic loss or the failure of one LED will not result in the loss of the entire luminaire.
6. Each luminaire shall be listed with a nationally recognized testing laboratory (including but not limited to UL, CSA, ETL) under UL 1598 and UL 8750, or an equivalent standard from a recognized testing laboratory.

C. LEDs:

1. The light source of the luminaires shall consist of LED arrays or bars. If required, the LED arrays or bars shall be removeable.
2. The LEDs shall be either white or RGB, according to the light fixture schedule and Drawings. For luminaires specified with white light, it is not acceptable to provide RGB LEDs mixed to produce white light.
3. Refer to the light fixture schedule and Drawings for the specified correlated color temperature (CCT) of each luminaire.
4. Individual LEDs shall be binned by manufacturer to comply with ANSI C78.377.
5. The LEDs shall be manufactured by Cree, Philips, Toshiba, Osram, Samsung, or Nichia, unless otherwise noted.

D. Drivers:

1. The driver or power supply for the luminaire shall be modular and replaceable.
2. The rated life of the driver shall match the rated life of the LEDs and luminaire.

3. In general, the drive current rating of the driver shall be minimized, while still maintaining the required lumen output, to improve luminaire efficiency and life.
 4. The driver shall meet the emission standards of IEC EN-61000-6-3 at a minimum. For healthcare or other applications with EMI sensitive equipment, provide drivers that meet more stringent standards as required.
- E. Exit Lighting
1. Exit lighting system shall be as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Equipment shall be complete with LED light sources.
 3. Where indicated as such, provide battery pack and charger with self-diagnostics for illumination under power failure conditions.
 4. Equipment shall meet BOCA, OSHA, NFPA and NEC illumination standards.

2.02 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: ½ inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, ½ inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.

PART 3 - TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

3.01 ELECTRICAL

- A. Power Consumption: Maximum power consumption allowed for the luminaire shall be per basis of design light fixture listed on lighting fixture schedule.
- B. Operation Voltage
 1. The luminaire shall operate from a 60 HZ ±3 HZ AC line over a voltage ranging from 110 VAC to 277 VAC as specified on the drawings. The fluctuations of line voltage shall have no visible effect on the luminous output.
 2. The standard operating voltages are as shown on drawings.
- C. Current: The inrush current for the luminaire shall be published on the luminaire data sheet and shall be less than that of the basis of design fixture listed on the light fixture schedule.
- D. Power Factor: The luminaire shall have a power factor of 0.90% or greater at all standard operating voltages.
- E. THD: Total harmonic distortion (current and voltage) induced into an AC power line by a luminaire shall not exceed 20 percent at any standard input voltage. The luminaire shall comply with ANSI C82.11, or equivalent ANSI LED Standard C82.SSL1.
- F. Surge Suppression: The luminaire shall include surge protection to withstand high repetition noise and other interference.
 1. The surge protection which may reside within the driver shall protect the luminaire from damage and failure for transient voltages and currents as defined in ANSI/IEEE C64.41 for Location Category A Low. Where failure does not mean a momentary loss of light during the transient event.
 2. Surge protection performance shall be tested per the procedures in ANSI/IEEE C62.45

based on ANSI/IEEE C62.41 definitions for standard and optional waveforms for Location Category A-Low

- G. Operational Performance: The LED circuitry shall prevent perceptible flicker to the unaided eye over the voltage range specified above.
- H. RF Interference: The luminaire and associated on-board circuitry must meet Class A emission limits referred in IEC EN-61000-6-3 and Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Title 47, Subpart B, Section 15 regulations concerning the emission of electronic noise.
- I. Dimming: Where dimming is specified on the drawings, the luminaire shall be capable of continuous dimming without perceivable flicker over a range of 100% to 5% of rated lumen output. Dimming shall be controlled by a 0-10V signal, unless otherwise noted or specified.
 - 1. Dimming switches and other control system components shall be compatible with the LED driver type – constant current reduction (CCR) or pulse-width modulation (PWM). The device(s) shall be rated to accommodate full load, as well as inrush current and repetitive peak currents.
 - 2. The luminaire and dimming controls shall produce a smooth change in lumen output, without any visible flicker.
 - 3. The luminaire shall be capable of dimming without any visible change in CCT and color rendition.
- J. Multi-Level Control: Where specified on drawings, the luminaire shall be provided with multiple power supplies, multi-level power supply, or other similar means to facilitate multi-level control of luminaire.
- K. Temperature Range: The luminaire shall have the capability of operating and maintaining rated lumen output and rated life within the temperature range specified on the lighting fixture schedule and Drawings, or within that of the basis of design luminaire if no temperature range is specifically listed.
- L. Lumen Output and Performance:
 - 1. The luminaire shall maintain the lumen output specified on the lighting fixture schedule and Drawings, or that of the basis of design luminaire if no minimum lumen output is specifically listed.
 - 2. The lumen output shall be maintained regardless of ambient temperature fluctuations, within the rated temperature range. The luminaire data sheets shall specify any effect or variation on lumen output from temperature.
 - 3. The luminaire shall be capable of continuously monitoring system performance to allow for constant lumen management/compensation, if specified in lighting fixture schedule, Drawings, or basis of design luminaire.
 - 4. The luminaire shall provide a total system efficacy that meets or exceeds that of the basis of design luminaire listed on the light fixture schedule and Drawings.
- M. Rated Life: The luminaire shall have a rated life that meets or exceeds that listed on the lighting fixture schedule and Drawings, or that of the basis of design luminaire if no rated life is specifically listed.

3.02 PHOTOMETRIC REQUIREMENTS

- A. Light Output
 - 1. The minimum initial lumen output of the luminaire exiting the luminaire in the 0-90 degree zone - as measured by IESNA Standard LM-79-08 shall be as specified in the lighting

- fixture schedule and Drawings, or that of the basis of design luminaire if no lumen output is specifically listed.
2. The lumen output shall not decrease by more than 30% over the minimum operational life (or L70 shall be at least the minimum number of hours specified).
 3. The measurements shall be calibrated to standard photopic calibrations.
- B. Light Color/Quality.
1. Corrected Color temperature (CCT) range shall be correlated to chromaticity as defined by the absolute (X,Y) coordinates on the 2-D CIE chromaticity chart.
 2. The color rendition index (CRI) shall be 80 or greater for interior applications, and 70 or greater for exterior applications.

3.03 THERMAL MANAGEMENT

- A. The thermal management (of the heat generated by the LEDs) shall be of sufficient capacity to assure proper operation of the luminaire over the expected useful life.
1. The LED manufacturer's maximum junction temperature for the expected life shall not be exceeded at the average operating ambient.
 2. The LED manufacturer's maximum junction temperature for the catastrophic failure shall not be exceeded at the maximum operating ambient.
 3. The luminaire shall have an UL IC rating, if applicable.
- B. The Driver manufacturer's maximum case temperature shall not be exceeded at the maximum operating ambient. Thermal management shall be passive by design.
1. The use of fans or other mechanical devices shall not be allowed.

3.04 PHYSICAL AND MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. The luminaire shall be a single, self-contained device, not requiring on-site assembly for installation. The power supply for the luminaire shall be integral to the unit, unless otherwise specified.
- B. The assembly and manufacturing process for the SSL luminaire shall be designed to assure all internal components are adequately supported to withstand mechanical shock and vibration.
- C. The optical assembly of the luminaire shall be constructed so that individual LED images shall not be visible to the occupant.
- D. The electronics/power supply enclosure shall be internal to the SSL luminaire and be accessible per UL requirements.
- E. The circuit board and power supply shall be contained inside the luminaire.
- F. Electrical connections between normal power, driver and LED boards must be modular utilizing a snap fit connector. All electrical components must be easily accessible after installation from the room side and all electrical components must be able to be replaced without removing the fixture from the ceiling.
- G. For LED retrofit lamps, the weight of the unit shall be in compliance with weight ratings of the lamp sockets/bases.

3.05 MATERIALS

- A. Housings shall be fabricated from material indicated on lighting fixture schedule.

- B. If applicable, refractor or lens shall be made from UV inhibited high impact plastic (such as acrylic or polycarbonate) or heat and impact resistant glass.
- C. If applicable, polymeric materials of enclosures containing either the power supply or electronic
- D. components of the luminaire shall be made of UL94VO flame retardant materials. The lenses of the luminaire are excluded from this requirement.

3.06 LUMINAIRE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Each luminaire shall have the manufacturer's name, trademark, model number, serial number, date of manufacture (month-year), and lot number as identification permanently marked inside the each unit and the outside of each packaging box.
- B. The following operating characteristics shall be permanently marked inside each unit: rated voltage and rated power in Watts and Volt-Ampere.
- C. Provide identification mark for fixtures wired to emergency backup systems. Coordinate with Project Manager.

3.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The luminaires shall be manufactured in accordance with a manufacturer quality assurance (QA) program. The QA program shall include two types of quality assurance: (1) design quality assurance and (2) production quality assurance. The production quality assurance shall include statistically controlled routine tests to ensure minimum performance levels of the modules built to meet this specification, and a documented process of how problems are to be resolved.
- B. QA process and test results documentation shall be kept on file for a minimum period of seven years.
- C. LED luminaire designs not satisfying design qualification testing and the production quality assurance testing performance requirements described below shall not be labeled, advertised, or sold as conforming to this specification.

D. DESIGN QUALIFICATION TESTING

1. Design Qualification Testing shall be performed by a National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) testing facility. Such testing may be performed by the manufacturer or an independent testing lab hired by the manufacturer on new luminaire designs, and when a major design change has been implemented on an existing design. A major design change is defined as a design change (electrical or physical) which changes any of the performance characteristics of the luminaire, results in a different circuit configuration for the power supply, or changes the layout of the individual LED's in the module.
2. A quantity of two units for each design shall be submitted for Design Qualification Testing.
3. Product submittals shall be accompanied by product specification sheets or other documentation that includes the designed parameters as detailed in this specification. These parameters include (but not limited to):
4. Maximum power in Watts
5. Maximum Designed Junction Temperature
6. L70 in hours, when extrapolated for the average operating temperature
7. Product submittals shall be accompanied by performance data that is derived in accordance with appropriate IESNA testing standards and tested in a laboratory that is NVLAP accredited for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
8. Product submittals shall be accompanied by a test report showing surge protection

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

265200 - 8

- performance as tested per the definitions and procedures in ANSI/IEEE C62.41 1991
9. Thermal testing data and reporting shall be provided based in the sensor input as defined below:
 - a. Temperature sensors shall be mounted on the LED solder pads as close to the LED as possible.
 10. Burn-In: Before any customer design qualification testing is performed, the sample Luminaires shall be energized for a minimum of 24 hours, at 100 percent on-time duty cycle, at a temperature of +70 degrees F (+21 degrees C).
 11. Any failure of the luminaire, which renders the unit non-compliant with the specification after burn-in, shall be cause for rejection.
 12. The luminaire shall be tested as described herein.
 - a. Luminaire performance shall be judged against the specified minimum illuminance in the specified pattern for a particular application.
 - b. The luminaire lighting performance shall be adjusted (depreciated) for the minimum life expectancy.
 - 1) The performance shall be adjusted (depreciated) by using the LED manufacturer's data or the data from the IESNA Standard LM-80-08 test report, which ever one results in a higher level of lumen depreciation.
 - c. The luminaire may be determined to be compliant photometrically, if:
 - 1) The initial minimum illuminance level is achieved in 100% of the area of the specified lighting pattern, and
 - 2) The depreciated minimum illuminance is maintained in at least 95% of the area of the specified lighting pattern, and
 - 3) The minimum length of the depreciated iso-footcandle curve is equal or greater than the length of the specified iso-footcandle curve.

3.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE TESTING (RANDOM SAMPLE TESTING)

- A. Random sample testing may be performed on all shipments.
- B. Testing shall be completed within 30 days.
- C. All parameters of the specification may be tested on the shipment sample.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.01 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION

- A. General
 1. Install outlets, surface mounted, recessed or semi-recessed fixtures to maintain the alignment, spacings, layout and general arrangements indicated in the Drawings. Obtain approval of Engineer for all changes in layout required to avoid interferences with other trades.
 2. Install one light fixture of each type and mounting for approval of Owner and Engineer prior to mounting all light fixtures.
- B. Coordination
 1. Work incorporating with ceiling trades in locating and framing recessed fixtures in acoustical tile pattern or grid system to conform to layout.
 2. Inform affected trades of the location and framing details necessary for the installation of flush fixtures and deliver all framing rings of these fixtures that become a part of the ceiling construction.
 3. Before equipment is ordered, electrical contractor to review luminaire and ceiling mechanical compatibility in each area and verify luminaire on the drawings. Contractor shall be responsible for all fixture quantities, lengths and clearances required and shall

Stormwater Maintenance and Operations Building

SW 23-01-01

06/06/2025

265200 - 9

inform the Owner of the job conditions at variance with the fixture(s) specified or detailed which affect installation or location. (All stages of installation.)

4. Mechanical and electrical contractors are to review and coordinate lighting locations in relationship to mechanical systems to minimize conflicts prior to installation.
5. This contractor is responsible for coordinating the characteristics and the U.L. labeling of the luminaires and their components with the ambient conditions, which will exist when the luminaires are installed. No extra compensation will be permitted for failure to coordinate the luminaires with their ambient conditions.

C. Mounting and Supports

1. Install luminaires in mechanical and unfinished areas after ductwork and piping installation.
2. Where luminaires are surface mounted, they shall be labeled for such and a minimum of one-half (1/2) inch air space and shall be maintained between top of luminaire and mounting surface by an approved means.
3. Pendant mounted units shall comply with the following:
 - a. Where luminaires are mounted in a continuous row, luminaires, eight feet in length shall have stems placed within 2'-0" of end of fixture. Stems shall be spaced symmetrically. A fixture, four feet or three feet in length, placed in a row, shall have a stem connected to center luminaire.
 - b. Individual luminaires, four feet in length, shall have two stems placed approximately 3 inches from each end.
 - c. Individual luminaire, three feet in length, shall have dual stems and a single canopy.
 - d. Each stem shall have a brass or steel swivel or other self-aligning device of type approved by the Engineer.
4. Where luminaires are mounted on surface-mounted outlet boxes in surface mounted conduit runs, this Contractor shall furnish and install a luminaire canopy sufficiently deep to permit exposed conduits to pass through. Canopy shall have proper openings cut by luminaire manufacturer through which conduits may pass. Submit sample of canopy for approval before installation.
5. Prior to final payment, this contractor shall clean all luminaires and replace any burned out LED modules. He shall also touch up all scratch marks, etc. in an approved manner.
6. Provide a minimum of two support points for all surface, pendant or recessed mounted luminaires. The supports shall be tied to the building structural system. The support points shall be totally independent of the ceiling system.
7. Recessed luminaires to be installed in metal panel or acoustic modular ceilings shall be modified as required to fit into openings in ceiling construction. Shop Drawings showing details shall be submitted for approval.

D. Emergency Systems Raceway and Hook-up

1. Circuit wiring for the emergency systems shall be installed in separate raceway and kept entirely independent of all other wiring and equipment.

4.02 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. At project completion, before final approval:

1. Aim adjustable fixtures as directed by Engineer and observe and adjust at night as required.
2. Clean interior of all fixtures, all lenses and LED modules.

END OF SECTION 265200

SECTION 283111
DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
 - 3. System smoke detectors.
 - 4. Non-system smoke detectors.
 - 5. Heat detectors.
 - 6. Notification appliances.
 - 7. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
 - 8. Magnetic door holders.
 - 9. Remote annunciator.
 - 10. Addressable interface device.
 - 11. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.
 - 12. Radio alarm transmitter.
 - 13. System printer.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- B. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.
- B. Noncoded addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors and multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. General Submittal Requirements:
 - 1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
 - 2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician, Level III minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- C. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
 3. Include battery-size calculations.
 4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 6. Include voice/alarm signaling-service equipment rack or console layout, grounding schematic, amplifier power calculation, and single-line connection diagram.
 7. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For smoke and heat detectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Drawings showing the location of each smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the detector.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
 3. Record copy of site-specific software.
 4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:
 - a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.
 7. Copy of NFPA 25.
- F. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician.
- C. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer. Components shall be compatible with, and operate as, an extension of existing system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.
- F. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.
- G. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 in the form of a placard by an FMG-approved alarm company.
- H. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Construction Manager's written permission.

1.08 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.
- B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.09 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.
 - 1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.010 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
 - 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
 - 3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors, and Flame Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.
 - 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.
 - 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamper-proofed components.
 - 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
 - 7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Commercial Products Group/CPG Life Safety Signals.
 - 2. Faraday; Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.
 - 3. Fire Control Instruments, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
 - 4. Fire Lite Alarms; a Honeywell company.
 - 5. Gamewell; a Honeywell company.
 - 6. GE Infrastructure; a unit of General Electric Company.
 - 7. Gentex Corporation.
 - 8. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company.
 - 9. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
 - 10. Silent Knight; a Honeywell company.

2.02 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
 - 1. Manual stations.
 - 2. Heat detectors.
 - 3. Smoke detectors.
 - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
 - 5. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
 - 6. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
 - 1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
 - 2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 - 3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
 - 4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
 - 5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 - 6. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
 - 7. Activate stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
 - 8. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 - 9. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas supplies.
 - 10. Record events in the system memory.

- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1. Valve supervisory switch.
- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 - 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 - 3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
 - 4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
 - 5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
 - 6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
 - 7. Failure of battery charging.
 - 8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
 - 9. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
 - 10. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or pre-action sprinkler system.
- E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.

2.03 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

- A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
 - 1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - 2. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
 - 3. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
 - 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 1 line 40 characters, minimum.
 - 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- C. Circuits:
 - 1. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.
 - a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style D.
 - b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
 - c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 2.
 - d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
 - 2. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class B.
 - a. Initiating Device Circuits: Style A.
 - b. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style W.
 - c. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 0.5.
 - d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
 - 3. Serial Interfaces: Two RS-232 ports for printers.
- D. Stairwell Pressurization: Provide an output signal using an addressable relay to start the

stairwell pressurization system. Signal shall remain on until alarm conditions are cleared and fire-alarm system is reset. Signal shall not stop in response to alarm acknowledge or signal silence commands.

1. Pressurization starts when any alarm is received at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Alarm signals from smoke detectors at pressurization air supplies have a higher priority than other alarm signals that start the system.

E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

F. Notification Appliance Circuit: Operation shall sound in a temporal pattern complying with ANSI S3.41.1

G. Elevator Recall:

1. Smoke detectors at the following locations shall initiate automatic elevator recall. Alarm- initiating devices, except those listed, shall not start elevator recall.
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
2. Elevator lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor.
3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
 - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.

H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

I. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

J. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power- supply module rating.

K. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

L. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.04 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Single-action mechanism, breaking-glass type. With integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 3. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 4. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.
 5. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.05 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power- on status.
- B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Ionization Smoke Detector:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

- D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
 - 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 - 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 - 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.
 - 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
 - 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
 - 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit. Verify with Mechanical Drawings and specifications that shutdown in subparagraph below is required; if not required, delete subparagraph.
 - 7. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.06 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.07 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single- mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- D. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
- E. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of

90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

- F. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch-high letters on the lens.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 75 cd.
 - b. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
 - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.

2.08 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
 - 1. Electromagnet: Requires no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
 - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
 - 4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.09 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire- alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 - 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.010 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall.

2.011 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire- alarm control unit and automatically capture one or two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall

be transmitted. If service on line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
 - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2. Programming device.
 - 3. LED display.
 - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
 - 1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
 - 2. Address Zone of the supervisory signal.
 - 3. Address Zone of the trouble-initiating device.
 - 4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
 - 5. Low battery.
 - 6. Abnormal test signal.
 - 7. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.012 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 - 1. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of device.
 - 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install fire-alarm control unit on finished floor with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B in NFPA 72.
 - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 3 feet from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture.

- D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.
- E. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.
- F. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector and each sprinkler water- flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
- I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling.
- J. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- K. Fire-Alarm Control Unit: Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.
- L. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than 72 inches above the finished floor.
- M. Antenna for Radio Alarm Transmitter: Mount to building structure where indicated. Use mounting arrangement and substrate connection that will resist 100-mph (160-km/h) wind load with a gust factor of 1.3 without damage.

3.02 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.03 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.

- b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 - 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
- C. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- D. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- G. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 312000 EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
- B. Refer to Oklahoma Department of Transportation Standard Specifications, 2019 and subsequent revisions and special provisions for the following:
 - 1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
 - 2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, and preparation for planting areas.
 - 3. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
 - 5. Subbase course for asphalt paving.
 - 6. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material used to fill an excavation.
- B. Aggregate Base: Aggregate layer below building slabs.
- C. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- D. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
 - 2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, will be without additional compensation.
- F. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- G. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other fabricated stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- H. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Test Reports.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- B. Do not commence earth-moving operations until plant-protection measures are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Existing Soils: Soil Classification Groups A-1, A-2-4, A-2-5, and A-3 according to AASHTO M 145, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
 - 1. Liquid Limit: 40 Maximum.
 - 2. Plasticity Index: 8 to 18.
- C. Aggregate Base: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve, not more than 15 percent passing a No. 200 sieve, and a maximum plasticity index of 6.
- D. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a **1-1/2-inch** sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a **No. 200** sieve.
 - 1. Liquid Limit: 40 Maximum.
 - 2. Plasticity Index: 18 Maximum.
 - 3. Maximum Rock Size: 3 inches.
- E. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a **1-1/2-inch** sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a **No. 8** sieve.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of **6 inches** wide and **4 mils** thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to **30 inches** deep; colored as follows:

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.
 - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

3.3 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete framework, for installing services and other construction. and for inspections.

3.4 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired dump truck to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
- B. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.5 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of **2500 psi**, may be used when approved by Architect.

3.6 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without

intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.7 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

3.8 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.9 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than **8 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than **4 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D1557:
 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top **12 inches** of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

3.10 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
- B. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of **1/2 inch** when tested with a **10-foot** straightedge.

3.11 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
 - 1. Place drainage course that exceeds **6 inches** in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than **6 inches** thick or less than **3 inches** thick.
 - 2. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.13 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.14 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

**SECTION 313116
TERMITE CONTROL**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Soil treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles for termite control products.
 - 2. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of termite control product.
- B. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
 - 1. Date and time of application.
 - 2. Moisture content of soil before application.
 - 3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
 - 4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
 - 5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
 - 6. Areas of application.
 - 7. Water source for application.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Soil Treatment:
 - 1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with

- requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bayer Environmental Science
 - b. Ensystex, Inc
 - c. Syngenta Crop Protection, LLC
 - d. Or approved equal.
 2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than three years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment(s). Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.
 - 1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
 - 2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
 - 3. Masonry: Treat voids.
 - 4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.
- B. Post warning signs in areas of application.
- C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- B. Protect termiticide solution dispersed in treated soils and fills from being diluted by exposure to water spillage or weather until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

END OF SECTION 313116

